

THE COMPLETE MIDDLE SCHOOL STUDY GUIDE



EVERYTHING
YOU NEED TO ACE
**WORLD
HISTORY**
IN ONE BIG FAT
NOTEBOOK™

From the
BRAINS
behind
BRAIN
QUEST!



Notes borrowed from the **SMARTEST KID** in **CLASS**
(double-checked by an **AWARD-WINNING** teacher)

WORLD HISTORY



Copyright © 2016 by Workman Publishing Co., Inc.

By purchasing this workbook, the buyer is permitted to reproduce pages for classroom use only, but not for commercial resale. Please contact the publisher for permission to reproduce pages for an entire school or school district. With the exception of the above, no portion of this book may be reproduced—mechanically, electronically, or by any other means, including photocopying—without written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data is available.

eISBN 978-0-7611-9701-0

Writer Ximena Vengoechea Illustrators Blake Henry, Tim Hall
Series Designer Tim Hall Designers Gordon Whiteside, Tim Hall

Art Director Colleen AF Venable

Editors Nathalie Le Du, Daniel Nayeri Production Editor Jessica Rozler

Production Manager Julie Primavera

Concept by Raquel Jaramillo

SPECIAL DISCOUNT FOR EDUCATORS:

The Big Fat Notebooks are available at special discounts when purchased in bulk for classroom, premium, and fund-raising use. Special editions and book excerpts can also be created to specification. For more information, please contact the Special Sales Director at the address below, or send an email to specialmarkets@workman.com.

Workman Publishing Co., Inc.

225 Varick Street

New York, NY 10014-4381

workman.com

WORKMAN, BRAIN QUEST, and BIG FAT NOTE-BOOK are registered trademarks of Workman Publishing Co., Inc.

THE COMPLETE MIDDLE SCHOOL STUDY GUIDE



EVERYTHING
YOU NEED TO ACE

WORLD
HISTORY

IN ONE BIG FAT
NOTEBOOK

Borrowed from the smartest kid in class
Double-checked by Michael Lindblad

WORKMAN PUBLISHING
NEW YORK

EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW TO ACE

WORLD HISTORY

HI!



These are the notes from my world history class.
Oh, who am I? Well, some people said I was the
smartest kid in class.



I wrote everything you need to ace

WORLD HISTORY, from the
FIRST HUMANLIKE CREATURES

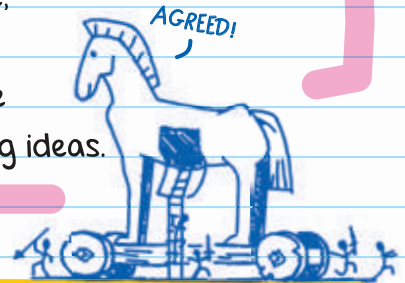
to the **INTERNET AGE**.



and only the really important stuff in between—you
know, the stuff that's usually on the test!

I tried to keep everything organized, so I almost always:

- Highlight vocabulary words in **YELLOW**.
- Color in definitions in **green highlighter**.
- Use **BLUE PEN** for important people, places, dates, and terms.
- Doodle a pretty sweet Trojan Horse and whatnot to visually show the big ideas.



If you're not loving your textbook and you're not so great at taking notes in class, this notebook will help. It hits all the major points. (But if your teacher spends a whole class talking about something that's not covered, go ahead and write that down for yourself.)

zzz...WHAT?



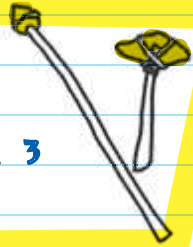
Now that I've aced world history, this notebook is **YOURS**. I'm done with it, so this notebook's purpose in life is to help **YOU** learn and remember just what you need to ace **YOUR** world history class.



CONTENTS

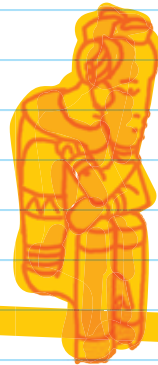
UNIT 1: The FIRST HUMANS: PREHISTORY-3500 BCE 1

1. The First Humans and the Paleolithic Era 3
2. The Neolithic Era 17



UNIT 2: FIRST CIVILIZATIONS: 3500 BCE-300 CE 31

3. Mesopotamia 32
4. Ancient Africa 43
5. The Phoenicians and the Israelites 65
6. Ancient India 73
7. Ancient China 90
8. Ancient Greece 105
9. Ancient Rome 126



UNIT 3: The MIDDLE AGES: 400 CE-1500 CE 145

10. The Byzantine Empire **146**
11. The Rise of Islam in the Middle Ages **151**
12. Early Civilizations of the Americas **159**
13. Medieval India **170**
14. The Golden Age of China **177**
15. Medieval Japan **185**
16. Europe in the Middle Ages **193**
17. The European Crusades in the Muslim World **205**



UNIT 4: RENAISSANCE and REFORMATION: 1350-1650 213

18. The Renaissance Begins **214**
19. The Reformation **224**



UNIT 5: The AGE of EXPLORATION: 1400-1800 235

20. Europe Sets Sail **236**
21. Europe Explores Asia (or Tries to) **248**
22. American Colonies **255**



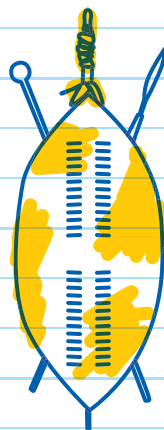
UNIT 6: REVOLUTION and ENLIGHTENMENT: 1500-1865 265

- 23. The Scientific Revolution and the Enlightenment **266**
- 24. Monarchies Rise in Europe **277**
- 25. The American Revolution **287**
- 26. The French Revolution **297**
- 27. Nationalism Across Europe and Independence
Movements in South America and Haiti **307**
- 28. The American Civil War **315**
- 29. The Industrial Revolution **325**
- 30. The Women's Movement **338**



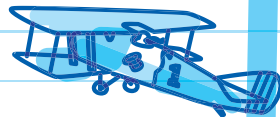
UNIT 7: The ERA of IMPERIALISM: 1800-1914 343

- 31. European Imperialism **344**
- 32. The Scramble for Africa **353**
- 33. Japan Modernizes **361**
- 34. The Spanish-American War **369**
- 35. Reactions to Colonization **377**



UNIT 8: WORLD CONFLICTS in the **EARLY TWENTIETH CENTURY: 1914-1945** **387**

- 36. World War I **388**
- 37. The Great Depression **409**
- 38. Political Shifts After the War **415**
- 39. World War II **427**



UNIT 9: POST-WORLD WAR II: **The WORLD from 1945 to TODAY** **449**

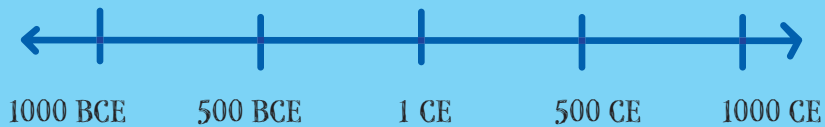
- 40. Changes in Europe and the Middle East After World War II **450**
- 41. The Cold War **461**
- 42. Nationalist and Independence Movements After World War II **475**
- 43. Modern Global Transformations **485**
- 44. Global Security and Major World Events of Today **495**

Index **503**



BCE = BEFORE the COMMON ERA
(or before the year was 1)

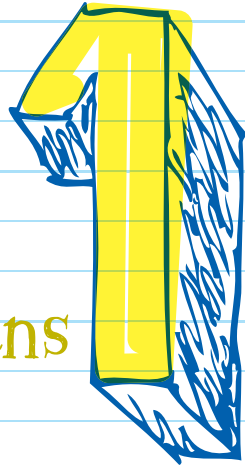
CE = the COMMON ERA
(or the year 1 and after)



BCE dates sorta work like negative numbers.

For example, 1000 BCE is further in the past than 500 BCE.

Unit



The First Humans Prehistory- 3500 BCE

What was life like 10,000 or a 100,000 years ago? How have people and cities changed over time? These are some of the questions history tries to answer.

HISTORIANS are the scholars who study our past, using written records and historic art to find the answers. They read letters, look at written laws, and study religious documents and community records.



What if there are **NO** written records of a culture? How can we study **PREHISTORY**, the time before writing was invented?

PREHISTORY
history before
written records

The study of prehistory relies on **ARCHEOLOGY** and two groups of people:

ARCHEOLOGY

the study of human history and prehistory through things people made, used, and left behind

OFTEN FOUND BY DIGGING AROUND IN ANCIENT SITES

Archaeologists are scientists who study objects made by humans, called **ARTIFACTS**, to better understand human activity. Artifacts can be tools, instruments, or anything made by humans in past civilizations.



Anthropologists are scientists who also study artifacts but are more interested in the cultural aspects of human society:

- what people in a particular culture wore
- what they ate
- how they learned and created the customs they followed
- how they developed languages



All the things happening now—the presidents of today, the global issues, climate change, cultural change, the sort of lives **WE** lead—will be

considered part of history someday. Maybe someone will study our "artifacts" and culture. But before that happens, let's go back to the beginning—to the very first humans.

THAT SHOE YOU LOST UNDER YOUR BED—IF FOUND THOUSANDS OF YEARS FROM NOW BURIED IN WHAT USED TO BE YOUR BEDROOM, THAT WOULD BE AN ARTIFACT, TOO.

★ Chapter 1 ★

THE FIRST HUMANS AND THE PALEOLITHIC ERA

STARTING ROUGHLY
6 TO 7 MILLION
YEARS AGO

The first humans looked nothing like us. In fact, scientists think we most likely descended from early forms of apes and the earliest humanlike creatures looked like a cross between them and us.

WHERE FIRST HUMANS LIVED



These first humanlike creatures are called **HOMINIDS**. Hominids had some human attributes, such as the ability to walk upright and **OPPOSABLE** thumbs (able to move toward and touch the other fingers of the same hand). The earliest hominids lived in Africa four million years ago, evolving over time.

There are many different types of hominids, but here are a few famous types:

THIS SYMBOL MEANS "ABOUT."

Australopithecus (~4 million years ago):

AUSTRALOPITHECUS means "southern ape,"

which tells us that these humanlike apes were probably from eastern or southern

Africa. **LUCY** is a famous *Australopithecus* hominid—she was discovered in 1974 and changed the way scientists looked at the evolution of humankind. It is believed that Lucy is a common ancestor for different types of hominids. She had a very small brain but walked on two legs, nearly two million years before other hominids would walk upright. Walking allowed Lucy to keep her hands free, but she used sticks and stones to dig or break open food instead of making tools. Archeologists once believed that the ability to walk upright led hominids to make tools, but Lucy showed this wasn't true.



LOOK, MA,
NO HANDS!



SHOW-OFF!





Homo habilis (~2 million years ago):

HOMO HABILIS means "able man." This short hominid lived in East Africa and had a larger brain than the species *Australopithecus* and was the first *Homo* species to use stone tools.

Homo erectus (~1.5 million years ago):

HOMO ERECTUS, or "upright man," was a more advanced hominid. Even though Lucy and older hominids walked upright, *Homo erectus* had longer arms and legs and looked more like a human. About 500,000 years ago, *Homo erectus*



learned to make fire, probably from rubbing two sticks together or by striking stones together to create a spark. This was a huge help for hunting, protection from animals, cooking, and keeping warm. Fire also meant that these hominids could move to areas with colder climates, which is why *Homo erectus* was probably the first hominid type to leave warm Africa.



Homo sapiens (~400,000 years ago):

HOMO SAPIENS, or "wise man," was a new species of human that quickly became the main species. They made tools from stones, animal bones, and horns. With these tools, they developed new farming and hunting techniques.



Homo sapiens had large brains and small jaws. Their limbs were even longer and straighter than those of *Homo erectus*, and closer to what we look like today.

There are two kinds of *Homo sapiens*: **NEANDERTHALS** and **HOMO SAPIENS SAPIENS**. Neanderthals lived in and around present-day Europe and parts of Turkey. They maybe made clothes from animal skins, to keep warm, and were the earliest people to bury their dead. They had large brains but heavier builds and were more slow moving than *Homo sapiens sapiens*, who eventually replaced the Neanderthals.

Homo sapiens sapiens (~200,000 years ago):

Homo sapiens sapiens means "wise, wise human" and is the group that includes today's humans. They first appeared in Africa and then spread out around the world about 100,000 years ago. *Homo sapiens sapiens* had a slow journey out of Africa—archeologists say they may have moved only two or three miles in a whole generation!



THE PALEOLITHIC LIFE

The first humans lived in the **PALEOLITHIC ERA**, or the Old Stone Age (~2,500,000 BCE to around 10,000 BCE). Humans made simple tools from hard stones such as flint. They made:

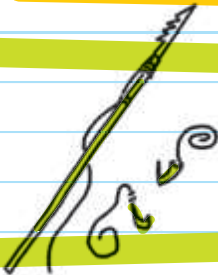
hand axes and stone spearheads attached to wooden poles, which made hunting large animals easier



the bow and arrow



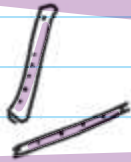
harpoons and fishhooks of bone, to catch fish and other sea animals





baskets to gather and carry food, and rope from vines twisted together

small statues from stone and ivory and



bone flutes

The Paleolithic people were hunters and gatherers. They probably divided labor to feed themselves, with men

hunting and women gathering berries, nuts, and plants.

They were **NOMADS**, moving from place to place to survive in small groups. They followed grazing animals, and they changed location based on the growing season—when plants stopped growing, they would move again. Paleolithic people had no permanent homes and built new shelters wherever they went.

NOMAD
person who has no permanent home and travels to find food

THIS WOULD BE LIKE MOVING AROUND FROM SCHOOL TO SCHOOL WITH YOUR ENTIRE HISTORY CLASS.



The GREAT MIGRATION

The **GREAT MIGRATION** was a time of vast movement and long-distance travel for humans, who were beginning to explore other continents. Most humans followed the animals they hunted across the continents, often moving toward wet climates with lakes and fertile lands. The **ICE AGE** pushed humans toward warmer regions and connected



the continents through land bridges that were uncovered as sea levels lowered. Humans walked from Africa until they reached every continent except Antarctica. It took roughly one million years!

The **ICE AGE** was the most recent glacial period, when much of the earth was covered by ice and oceans were frozen over. It lasted about 100,000 years and ended around 10,000 BCE.

MAJOR EVENTS IN

6-7 million years ago:

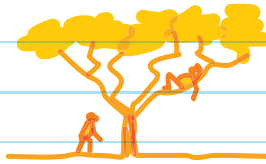
First humanlike species appears, which has a chimpanzee-sized brain.

WE'RE RELATED!



4 million years ago:

Walking upright but also still climbing trees



6 million years ago:

We start walking upright around now.



2.6 million years ago:

Technology! We start using stone flakes and cores to cut and crush food.



HUMAN EVOLUTION

500,000 years ago:

We discover fire, which changes our diet, gives us a warm hangout, and helps us to stay safe from predators.

FIRE GOOD.

SOMEONE SHOULD INVENT MARSHMALLOWS...



80,000 years ago:

We leave Africa and begin the Great Migration.

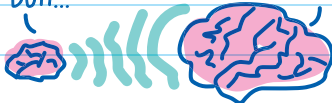


200,000-800,000 years ago:

Our brains rapidly grow bigger, so we communicate better and more of us survive in the harsh environment.

DUH...

INDUBITABLY.

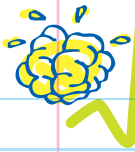


ART was one form of communication for the nomadic Paleolithic people, probably used for telling stories and sharing myths. Sometimes, hunting strategies were drawn on the walls of a cave. Stone lamps filled with animal fat would light the caves while the Paleolithic people painted. Animal fat was also used to make paint: Mixed with various mineral ores, artists used fat to create reds, yellows, and blacks for their work. Artists would use their fingers to draw on the walls of the caves or they would use sticks, leaves, and hollow reeds to blow paint through. Sometimes they left handprints, maybe as a signature. Most cave paintings show animals during a hunt, and some anthropologists think the paintings were created as rituals to ensure a good hunt.



PETROGLYPH

a carving or inscription on a rock



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was the Great Migration and how long did it take?
2. What are some reasons why early humans made cave paintings?
3. How do scientists learn about things that happened in prehistory?
4. When was the Paleolithic era?
5. What effect did the Ice Age have on the planet?
6. What sorts of objects did Paleolithic people make?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The Great Migration was a time when humans traveled from Africa and began to explore every continent except Antarctica. They hunted across the continents and found places with fresh water and fertile lands. The Great Migration took roughly one million years.
2. Early humans used cave paintings to communicate and probably to tell stories and share myths. They also drew hunting strategies and probably used the paintings as part of rituals they hoped would guarantee a good hunt.
3. Scientists learn about prehistory through artifacts, which are objects such as tools, instruments, buildings, pottery, or anything else made by humans. They use these objects to find clues about prehistoric life.
4. The Paleolithic era, or the Old Stone Age, spanned about 2,500,000 BCE to around 10,000 BCE.
5. The cold weather of the Ice Age pushed humans toward warmer regions. Also, sea levels were lower, so land bridges connected continents, and humans used these to travel to distant places.
6. Paleolithic people made simple tools, such as hand axes, stone spearheads, bows, arrows, harpoons, bone fishhooks, baskets, rope, statues, and flutes.

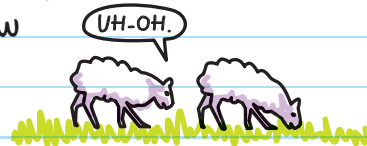
★ Chapter 2 ★

THE NEOLITHIC ERA

8000 BCE–4000 BCE

During the Great Migration, humans looked for new, warmer regions with fertile soil to grow their own food and settle down. Early humans were nomads, moving from place to place, but the development of **SYSTEMATIC AGRICULTURE** in the **NEOLITHIC ERA** marked a change to a more **SEDENTARY** lifestyle for most humans. The **NEOLITHIC REVOLUTION** was a fundamental change in the way many humans lived. Humans could now keep animals and grow food on a regular basis, with recurring and more reliable harvests.

SEDENTARY
staying in one place



AGRICULTURAL CHANGES

About 9,000 years ago, farmers started planting **STAPLE** crops—crops people would rely on most for food.



In China, people planted rice and other crops.

In Central America, people planted corn, beans, and squash.



In Africa, people planted tubers, such as yams.

Many crops were important in ancient religions and creation stories. Early farmers discovered that grinding grains makes flour, which can be used to make bread. People figured out where soil was fertile—where plants would grow better. Areas with long springs and summers were popular farming sites, since their climate helped crops thrive. Lakes and rivers were good places to settle too, because they had water and provided an extra source of nutrition through fish and other seafood.

When planting crops, farmers chose seeds from the biggest, best-looking, best-tasting plants. Then they would repeat

that the next time. Slowly but surely, each harvest would bring up a better, stronger, tastier round of crops. This process is called the

DOMESTICATION OF PLANTS

This was a huge leap forward—some might even say, revolutionary.



DOMESTICATE

to tame or adapt for your own use

The **AGRICULTURAL REVOLUTION** (sometimes called the **NEOLITHIC REVOLUTION**) refers to the period when humans transitioned from hunting and gathering to agriculture.

This shift led to sedentary communities, the establishment of social classes, and the rise of civilizations.

The **DEVELOPMENT** of **SEEDENTARY COMMUNITIES**

ANIMAL DOMESTICATION began when humans tamed wild animals like sheep, goats, and pigs for meat, milk, and wool. Most likely, the dog was one of the first animals to be domesticated, helping humans hunt larger animals long before humans settled down. In some parts of the world, bigger animals were domesticated. In India, for example, wild elephants were tamed.

EVEN DOGS WERE ONCE WILD. THEY HAD TO FIND REAL BONES BY THEMSELVES TO CHEW ON.

Farming techniques like the **IRRIGATION SYSTEM** were also crucial for settling early communities. Irrigation systems were a series of canals built to bring water to the land.

Because sedentary communities grew their own food, they often ended up with a **SURPLUS**, or more than was needed.

A food surplus could feed many more people, so communities could expand and didn't have to follow herds around.

LIKE WHEN YOU PUT LEFTOVERS IN A DOGGY BAG

The **EARLY VILLAGES**

As more people lived around farms and food surpluses increased, people started to have free time to work on projects that didn't involve just finding or growing food.

This led to more **DIVISION OF LABOR**: people specializing in different roles within a society.

People started to become **ARTISANS**, workers skilled in a particular craft. They made baskets, tools, pottery, or fabric.

Metal tools made from copper and then from **BRONZE** became more sophisticated. Iron was later used to make strong, durable tools. The **WHEEL** was also invented around this time. Like fire, the wheel changed everything.

A MIXTURE OF COPPER AND TIN

WOW! BUT WHAT'S THE POINT?



Think of all the things we use **WHEELS** for—cars, bikes, strollers, shopping carts, trains, and buses too! Life would be a lot harder without the wheel!

With so many new goods, people started to buy and sell what they had made. Merchant ships began traveling across seas and rivers to trade goods. Trading with others meant that new technology and farming techniques could be exchanged among cultures. Goods could be **BARTERED**, which means that they were exchanged without money.

BARTER

to exchange one good for another

LIKE TRADING LUNCHES IN THE CAFETERIA

EARLY GOVERNMENT

Governments eventually formed to regulate trade and other aspects of human activity in these new villages. Villages grew into towns and cities, which sometimes had walls for protection. Villages were probably led by the chiefs of the **CLANS** or **TRIBES** (groups of families who lived together).

MONARCHS (kings and queens) likely led large groups of cities or groups of tribes. Their job was to keep the kingdom in order through lawmaking.

DIVINE RIGHT

belief that the right to rule comes directly from a god, not from the consent of the people

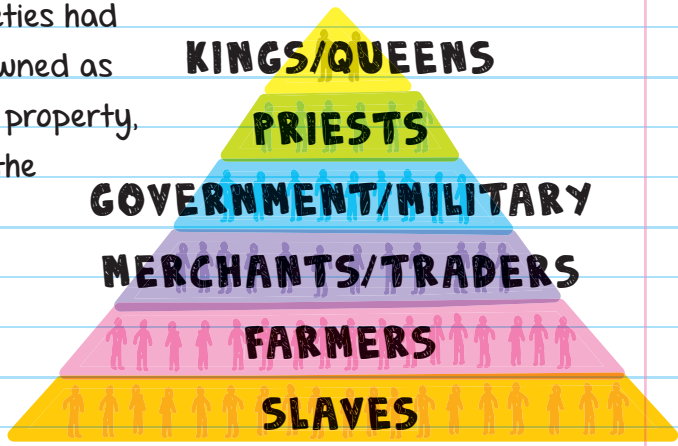
Many monarchs claimed to have power based on **DIVINE RIGHT** (the right to rule granted by their **DEITY** or deities).

DEITY

god, goddess, or divine being

Religious buildings, such as the ziggurats of Babylon and the pyramids of Egypt, were built. City walls were perhaps less artistic, but more practical, and built for defense purposes.

Societies began dividing according to **SOCIAL CLASS** (groupings of people ranked by social status). Kings and queens were at the top, with priests and religious authorities beneath them. Next in line were government and military officials. Then came artisans, merchants, and small traders. Farmers (who started it all) were ironically lower still. And finally, some societies had **SLAVES**, people owned as though they were property, at the bottom of the social order.



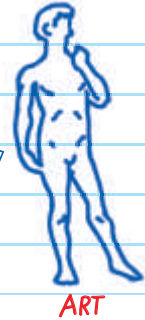
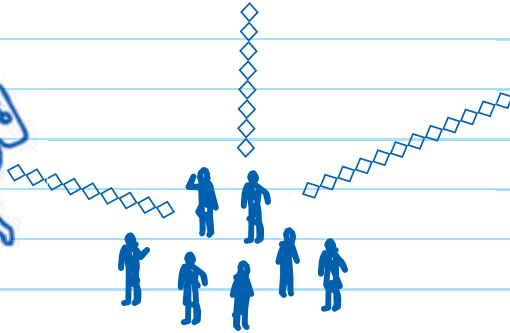
The **FIRST CIVILIZATIONS**

As the first **CIVILIZATIONS** developed, the leisure time people gained after settling down and getting a food surplus freed them up for just . . . thinking. People began working out big ideas in mathematics, astronomy, writing, and lawmaking.

CIVILIZATION
society organized around a centralized government, a means of food production, a system of writing, art and architecture, and job specialization

$$E\psi(r) = \left[\frac{-\hbar^2}{2\mu} \nabla^2 + V(r) \right] \psi(r)$$

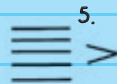
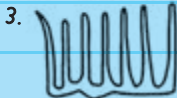
MATHEMATICS



Writing was particularly important for keeping records of food harvested and goods to be traded. Rulers, priests, merchants, and artisans used writing to keep track of laws, prayers, or their family tree. Writing was used to record the poems, stories, and information that people had passed down through **ORAL TRADITION**, or to create new stories. Painters and sculptors also told stories by illustrating tales about religion or nature and by decorating temples and city buildings.

ORAL TRADITION

passing down information from generation to generation through spoken word and memorization instead of by writing it down

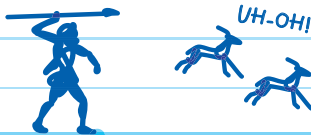


EARLY
WRITING
SAMPLES

THE LAST 100,000 YEARS

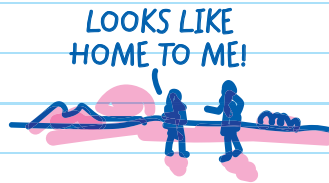
100,000 YEARS AGO:

We hold burials and create tools to capture prey that runs faster than we do.



40,000-50,000 YEARS AGO:

Humans have migrated far enough from Africa to settle in Europe and Australia.



77,000 YEARS AGO:

The first evidence appears that shows we are making marks in objects to count or record information.



35,000 YEARS AGO:

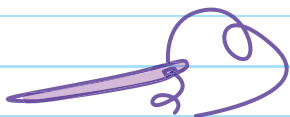
Music to our ears! Basic three-holed flutes provide entertainment and culture. We also continue drawing.



IN HUMAN EVOLUTION

**30,000-23,000
YEARS AGO:**

We begin using
needles made from
bone to sew clothes
that fit us better.



8,000 YEARS AGO:

The first written documents are
created using symbols. During the
next few thousand years, symbols
will be replaced with words.

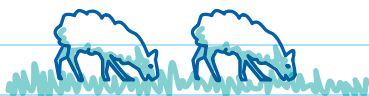
IT SAYS, "TURN
LEFT AT THE
BIG ROCK"!

NO, IT SAYS,
"LOOK OUT
FOR BEARS"!



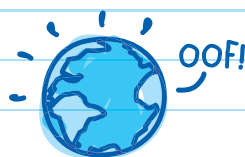
**9,000
YEARS AGO:**

We start domesticating
plants and animals,
which leads to
sedentary communities.

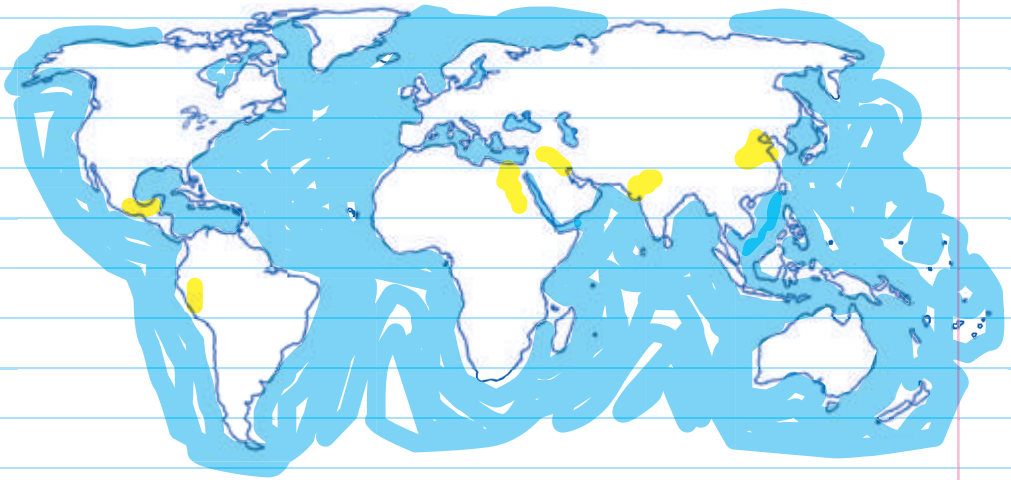


**20
YEARS AGO:**

Human population
doubles in just 40
years, from 3 billion
to 6 billion people.



The first civilizations formed mostly in and around Mesopotamia, Egypt, the Indus Valley, China, and Central America, beginning in about 4500 BCE.

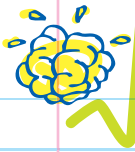


RECIPE FOR CIVILIZATION

INGREDIENTS:

- workers
- art
- writing
- government

Put them all together, and let cook for a few thousand years.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why did people abandon their nomadic lifestyle during the Neolithic era?
2. What new farming techniques did the Neolithic people use?
3. What do we mean when we say "division of labor"?
4. Give an example of bartering.
5. What was the role of monarchs in these new societies?
6. How did having leisure time advance civilizations?
7. What is a surplus, and why was it so important for the development of civilizations?
8. Where were the first civilizations mostly found?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

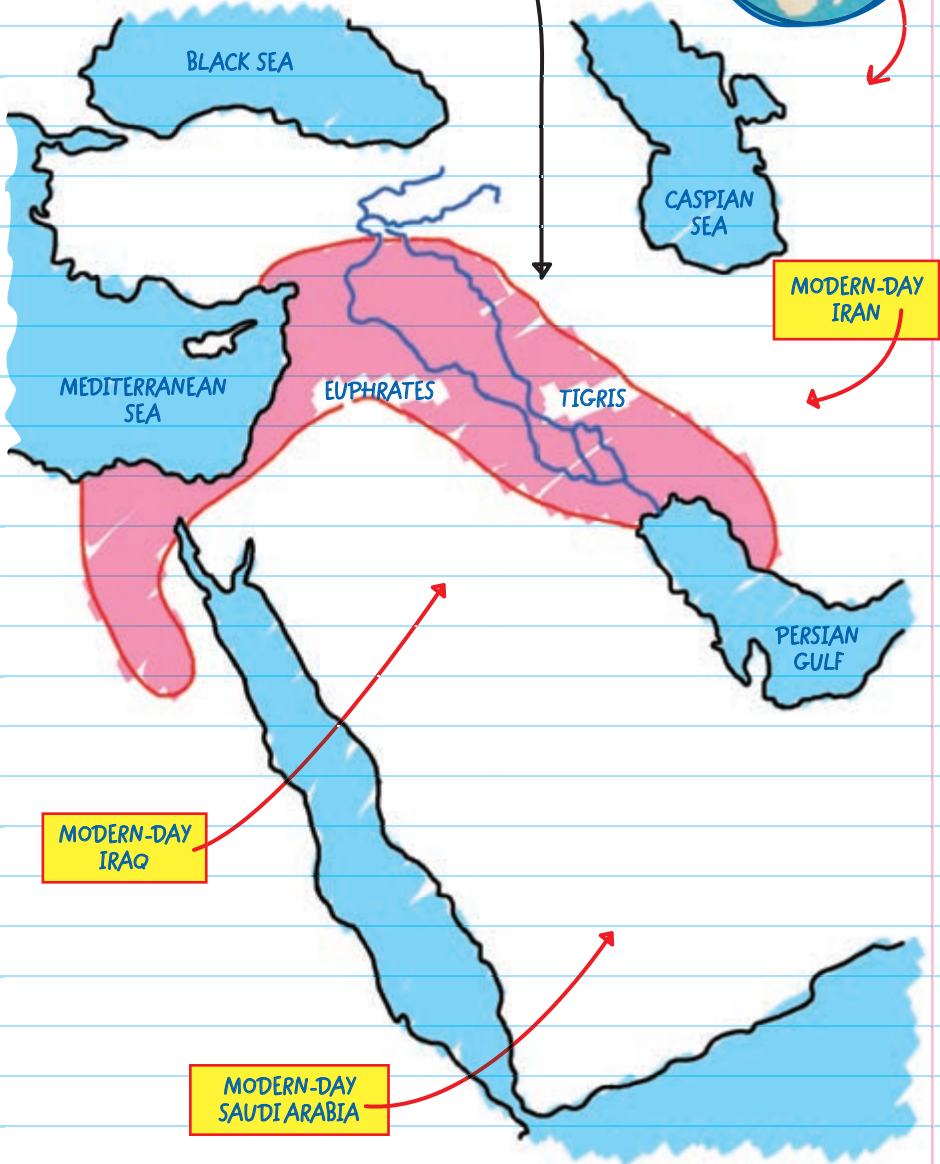
1. People stopped being nomadic because they developed systematic agriculture. During the Neolithic era, people began farming and could settle down in one place rather than chase animals for food. 
2. People began picking and choosing the seeds from the biggest, best plants and planting only those in order to grow even bigger crops (this is called the domestication of plants). Farmers also used an irrigation system to control the flow of water to different areas of land by using canals.
3. Division of labor means that tasks in a society are performed by separate groups.
4. An example of bartering is trading a woven basket for an iron pot.
5. Monarchs were the new leaders of towns and cities. They used laws to keep order, and many claimed to have power based on "divine right."
6. Leisure time advanced civilizations because people had time to explore ideas and be creative.

#4 has more than one correct answer.

7. A surplus is an excess of food, and it is important because that is what created leisure time. It also meant that populations could expand and that people did not have to follow a herd for food anymore.

8. The first civilizations were mostly found around Mesopotamia, Egypt, the Indus Valley, China, and Central America.

FERTILE CRESCENT
(FIRST CIVILIZATIONS HAPPENED HERE)



MODERN-DAY
IRAN

MODERN-DAY
IRAQ

MODERN-DAY
SAUDI ARABIA

Unit 2

First Civilizations 3500 BCE - 300 CE

The world's first complex civilizations were the first to create systems of writing, economic trade, and governments.

The first civilizations started in a crescent-shaped area extending from the Mediterranean Sea to the Persian Gulf in the **FERTILE CRESCENT** (what is now Iraq). It had rich soil and produced abundant crops. Within the Fertile Crescent, two rivers, the **TIGRIS** and the **EUPHRATES**, hugged a valley that became known as **MESOPOTAMIA**. Mesopotamia could support large populations because its location was ideal for both trade and agriculture.

← PROBABLY WHY THE FIRST HIGHLY ORGANIZED SOCIETIES STARTED HERE

★ Chapter 3 ★

MESOPOTAMIA



4000 BCE–612 BCE



SUMERIA

SUMERIA was the first civilization in Mesopotamia and developed around 4000 BCE. The **SUMERIANS** relied on annual floods to deposit rich soil onto the riverbanks every spring. The Sumerians used irrigation and drainage ditches to control the flow of water. But there were still surprise floods that washed entire areas out. This convinced the Sumerians that other forces were at work; people turned to religion to explain destructive floods.

Religion and the Ruling Class

The Sumerians were a **POLYTHEISTIC** people. They hoped that if they obeyed and served the gods, they'd get a good harvest. They built and dedicated **ZIGGURATS** to the chief god or goddess of a city.

POLYTHEISM

the belief in many gods; from **POLY** (more than one) and **THEISM** (belief in a god or gods)



ZIGGURATS were temples shaped like pyramids. The Sumerians' ziggurats were massive towers made of clay bricks, with steps leading to the top, but they didn't last through time like the stone pyramids of Egypt.

So, if most of the Sumerian ziggurats were destroyed, how do we know of their existence today? Well, technically not ALL of the ziggurats were destroyed. As a result of slow erosion and, later, construction over their sites, many ziggurats were buried. Over time, archaeologists were able to dig up the ruins and find clues of the ziggurats' former existence.

THEOCRACY

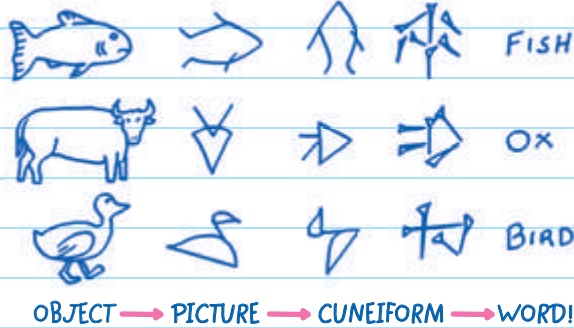
a form of government in which **GOD** or a deity is **THE** supreme ruler

Sumeria was a **THEOCRACY** in which priests held an authoritative role, because Sumerians believed gods ultimately ruled the land. Kings ruled by divine right and lived in large palaces.

The Mesopotamians named nearly 3,000 gods and goddesses!

Writing and Education

Around 3000 BCE, the Sumerians created **CUNEIFORM**, a form of writing based on making wedge-shaped impressions with reeds on soft clay tablets.



Once the impressions were made, the tablets were put in the sun to dry, and there could be no more changes!

NO "EDIT UNDO" POSSIBLE

Cuneiform was used to keep records and write stories

and poems. It took a long time to make a tablet, so it was important to have professional writers, called **SCRIBES**.

Scribes studied at schools and then went to work as copyists, teachers, lawmakers, and leaders. They were an important part of Sumerian society, and thanks to them, history was

recorded in words.

Writing wasn't used just for record keeping. The Sumerians created some of the earliest surviving works of literature, like **GILGAMESH**, an **EPIC** about the adventures of a legendary king and his best friend, Enkidu.

EPIC

a long poem, usually centered on a hero

The Sumerians started the very first schools, which focused on the brand-new invention of writing with cuneiform.

THANKS A LOT,
SUMERIANS.

City-States

The Sumerian kingdom was made up of **CITY-STATES**, which were cities that also acted as politically independent states. Each had its own government, army, and king. Trade between city-states was regulated through religious temples, which also functioned as storage units for surplus goods. Goods like wool and wheat were bartered for timber and imported copper. Priests often collected rent from farmers and acted as tax collectors in each city-state.

BUT the city-states also fought each other for land and water, eventually leading to the downfall of Mesopotamia's first civilization.

SUN'S
RAYS

SUNRISE →

← SUNSET

AROUND 5 PM

THE SUMERIANS
invented the system
of units that we use
today to tell time:

60 seconds = 1 minute
60 minutes = 1 hour

AKKADIA

AKKADIA was led for over 50 years (around 2334-2279 BCE) by **KING SARGON I**, who is considered the first great king in history. King Sargon I united the Sumerian city-states. Around 1900 BCE the Sumerian city-states fell to a northern rival, **BABYLONIA**.

The Akkadians spoke a **SEMITIC LANGUAGE**, one of a group of languages that rose and spread throughout early North Africa and Southwest Asia. Akkadian dialects were the chief language of Mesopotamia during Akkadia's control of Sumeria, but there were others, including Sumerian, Eblaite, and Babylonian, which all came from Mesopotamia. Arabic is a Semitic language spoken by millions of people today.

BABYLON

The Babylonians lived in the western half of the Fertile Crescent. The most well-known Babylonian leader was **HAMMURABI**, who conquered northern Sumerian cities such as Sumer and Akkad to create the **BABYLONIAN EMPIRE** around 1800 BCE. The Babylonians built roads to encourage trade and make travel easier. Goods like cloth and spices could come in from as far as India and Egypt. Merchants and traders managed their own businesses.

EMPIRE

a large area of many territories and peoples, all controlled by one government

Hammurabi is most famous for a list of 282 laws called **HAMMURABI'S CODE**. This was the first time laws were written out, and therefore the first time people could know how they would be punished if they committed a crime. The laws were based on the idea of "an eye for an eye," meaning that the punishment should be equally as bad as the crime. However, the punishment varied according to the class of the victim and the lawbreaker. The code covered all aspects of daily life—punishments for everything from judges who incorrectly ruled on a case to builders who built houses that collapsed.

ANCIENT CITIES OF MESOPOTAMIA



Men held the most power in the **PATRIARCHAL** society of Mesopotamia, and they could also punish women and children. Hammurabi's empire was conquered and destroyed in the early 1500s BCE.

PATRIARCHY

a form of social organization in which the father is the supreme authority

ASSYRIA

The kingdom of **ASSYRIA** arose around 1400 BCE and was one of the first new empires in Mesopotamia. The Assyrian Empire occupied the northern part of Mesopotamia, in what is now northern Iraq. The land where Assyria was located was easy for outsiders to get into and attack, so the Assyrians learned to be skilled warriors and decided to strike instead of waiting to be attacked. They conquered lands from the Nile River (in modern-day Egypt) to the Persian Gulf.



KING SARGON II, the most important leader of Assyria, ruled from 722 to 705 BCE. Kings ruled this massive empire with **ABSOLUTE POWER**, meaning that whatever the king

decided became the law. The Assyrians developed a system of communication, with riders on horses delivering messages across the empire within a week. This kept the king and his governors in contact. They also developed trade networks as far as the Mediterranean.

NINEVEH, Assyria's capital city, became a center of learning; it housed one of the world's first libraries, storing a collection of dried clay tablets.

The Assyrians were defeated by the Medes, the Persians, and the Scythians in 612 BCE.

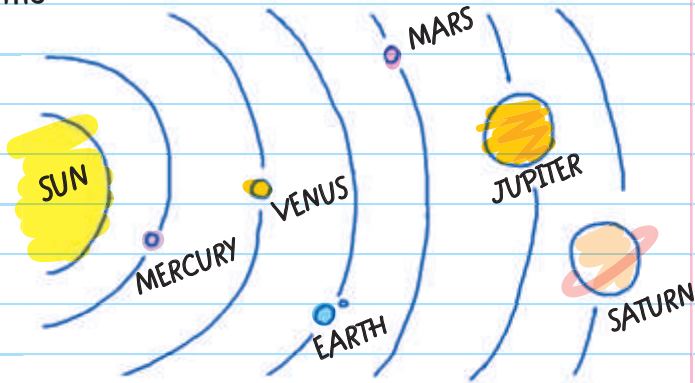


BABYLON and the CHALDEANS

PEOPLE ORIGINALLY FROM CHALDEA

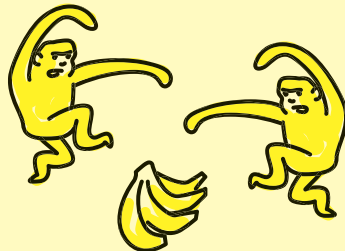
Around 612 BCE, Babylon rose again under the **CHALDEANS**, who were masters of mathematics and astronomy. The Babylonians were the first to identify five of the other planets: Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. They learned about the

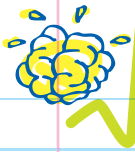
planets and stars by actually assigning workers to chart them every night.



Remember the order of the first civilizations of Mesopotamia with this mnemonic device:

- S**tarving (Sumerians)
- A**pes (Assyrians)
- A**ttacked (Akkadians)
- B**ananas (Babylonians)





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What is the name of the first civilization in Mesopotamia?
2. How did geography help civilizations develop in the area?
3. What is cuneiform, and why was it important to Sumerian society?
4. What is a city-state?
5. Who was King Sargon I of Akkadia, and why was he so important?
6. What were some of the accomplishments of the Babylonians?
7. Who was Hammurabi, and what was his contribution to the Babylonian Empire?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The first civilization in Mesopotamia was Sumeria.
2. The first civilizations started in the Fertile Crescent, where the rich soil produced abundant crops for people to grow food and thrive.
3. Cuneiform is a form of writing created by the Sumerians using reeds on clay tablets. It was important because Sumerians used it to keep records and write down stories and poems.
4. A city-state is a city that is politically independent, with its own government, army, and king.
5. King Sargon I was the leader of Akkadia for over 50 years and united the Sumerian city-states.
6. The Babylonians built roads to encourage travel and trade goods from India and Egypt. Merchants and traders ran their own businesses.
7. Hammurabi was the leader of Babylon who conquered northern Sumerian cities to create the Babylonian Empire. He is most famous for his list of 282 laws, called Hammurabi's Code. This was the first time laws were written down.

★ Chapter 4 ★

ANCIENT



AFRICA

3100 BCE–32 BCE

EGYPT

Egypt was one of the first river-valley civilizations, nestled on the banks of the Nile River. The longest river in the world, the Nile flows north through Africa for over 4,000 miles (6,437 kilometers). It splits into multiple channels in a **DELTA** just before emptying into the Mediterranean Sea. The Nile Delta is called **LOWER EGYPT**. The land south of it is called **UPPER EGYPT**.

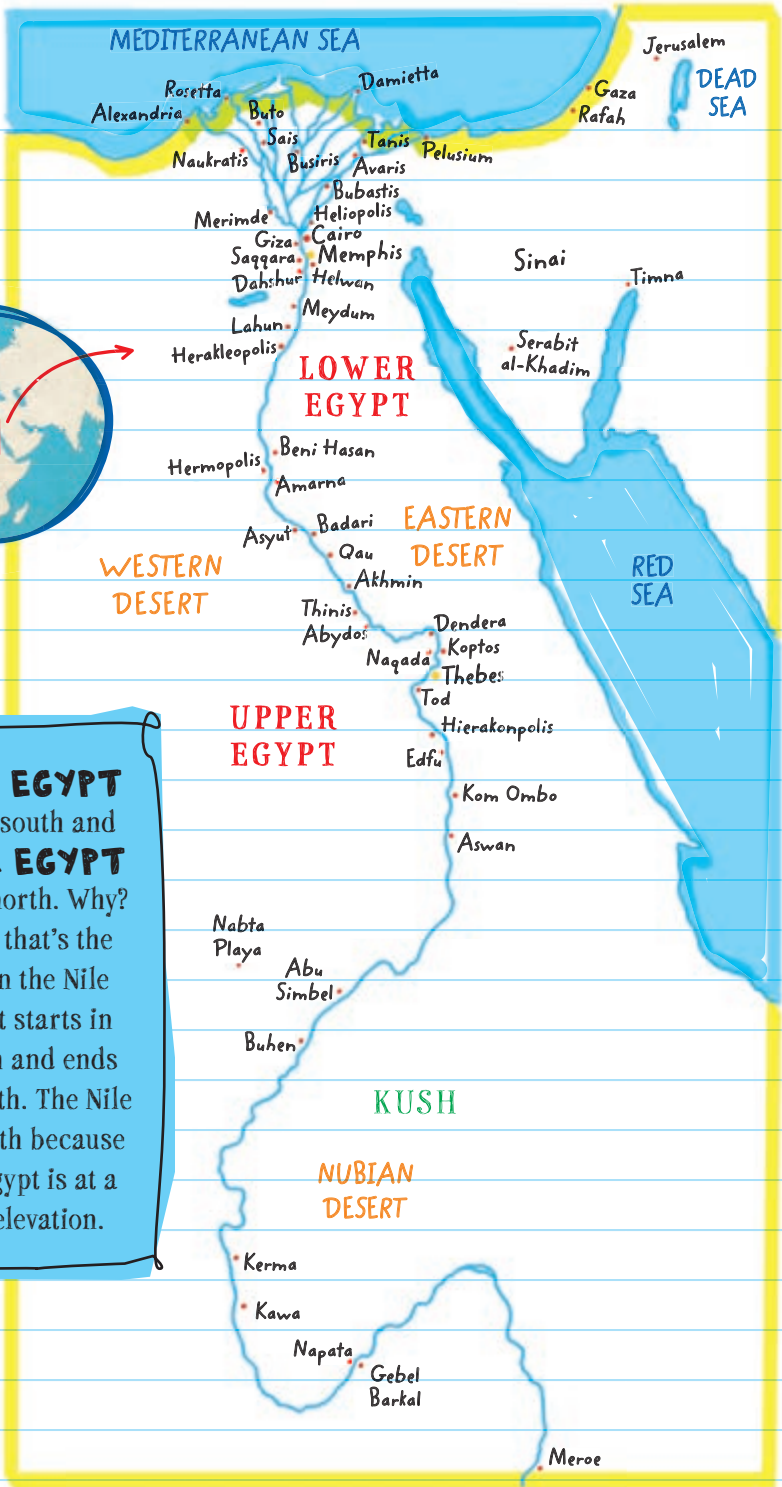
ABOUT THE SAME
DISTANCE AS
FROM NEW YORK
TO ALASKA

DELTA
plain at the mouth
of a river

The Nile's annual flooding deposited rich, dark soil on the riverbanks. This land was called **KEMET**, or "black land," and the dry desert land was called "red land."



UPPER EGYPT
is in the south and
LOWER EGYPT
is in the north. Why?
Because that's the
direction the Nile
flows—it starts in
the south and ends
in the north. The Nile
flows north because
Upper Egypt is at a
higher elevation.



The Kemet was perfect for farming, leading to a surplus of food and a well-fed people. The regular flooding led to accurate recording of the calendar—dates, times, and numbers. The Nile was also perfect for transportation and communication. **HAPI**, the Egyptian god of the Nile, was praised highly by the people, along with **AMON-RE** (the king of the gods), **ISIS** (the goddess of healing, motherhood, and many other things), and Isis's husband, **OSIRIS** (the god of the afterworld). The Egyptians had hundreds of gods, including many female gods.

The Egyptians (and the cyclically flooding river) are responsible for our 365-days-a-year calendar.

Egyptian Rule

Egypt was ruled by 31 different **DYNASTIES** over about 3,000 years, divided into three periods:

THE OLD KINGDOM

THE MIDDLE KINGDOM

THE NEW KINGDOM

DYNASTY

succession of rulers from the same family

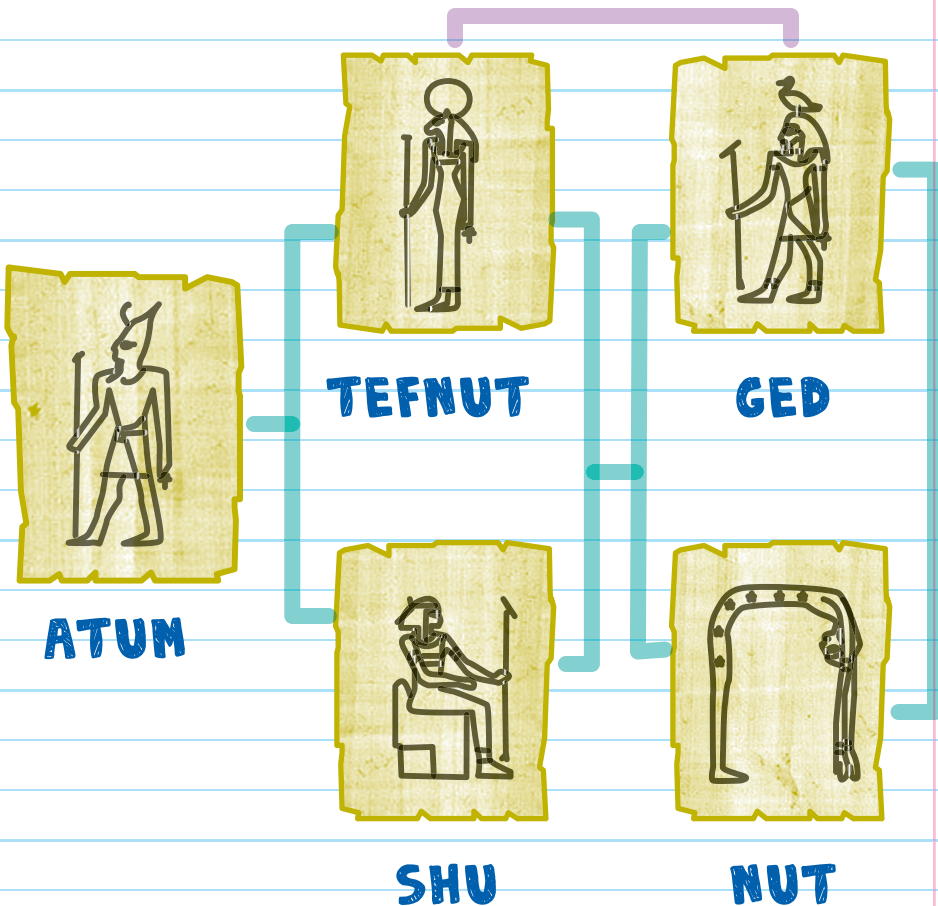
A **PHARAOH** ruled Egypt with absolute power. Whatever the pharaoh decided was law. Pharaohs had so much power they were considered gods.

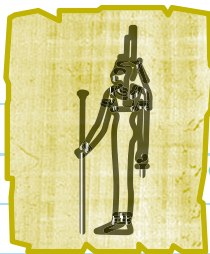
PHARAOH

the title given to ancient Egyptian kings

EGYPTIAN GOD FAMILY TREE

(ONE OF THEM)





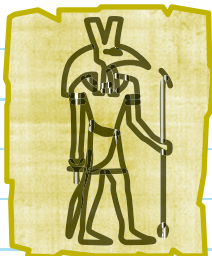
ISIS



**OSIRIS
(JUDGE)**



NEPHTHYS



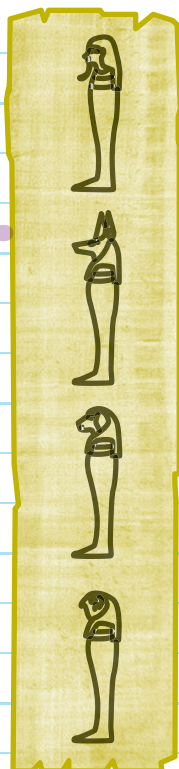
SETH



HORUS



ANUBIS



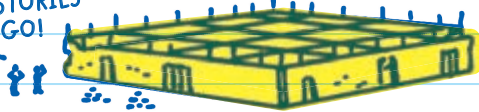
**4 SONS
OF
HORUS**



The Old Kingdom (2700 BCE–2200 BCE) and Middle Kingdom (2100 BCE–1800 BCE)

KING MENES created the first united Egyptian dynasty when he joined Upper and Lower Egypt. He built his capital city of **MEMPHIS** near modern-day Cairo. The Old Kingdom also saw the construction of the great pyramids of Egypt, which were built for the burial of pharaohs and their families. Historians estimate that the largest of the over 30 Egyptian pyramids, the **GREAT PYRAMID AT GIZA**, took 20 years, up to 100,000 workers, and more than 2 million stones to build.

JUST 100
MORE STORIES
TO GO!



The **GREAT SPHINX**, a giant statue that is half man and half lion, was built to protect the **GREAT PYRAMID**.

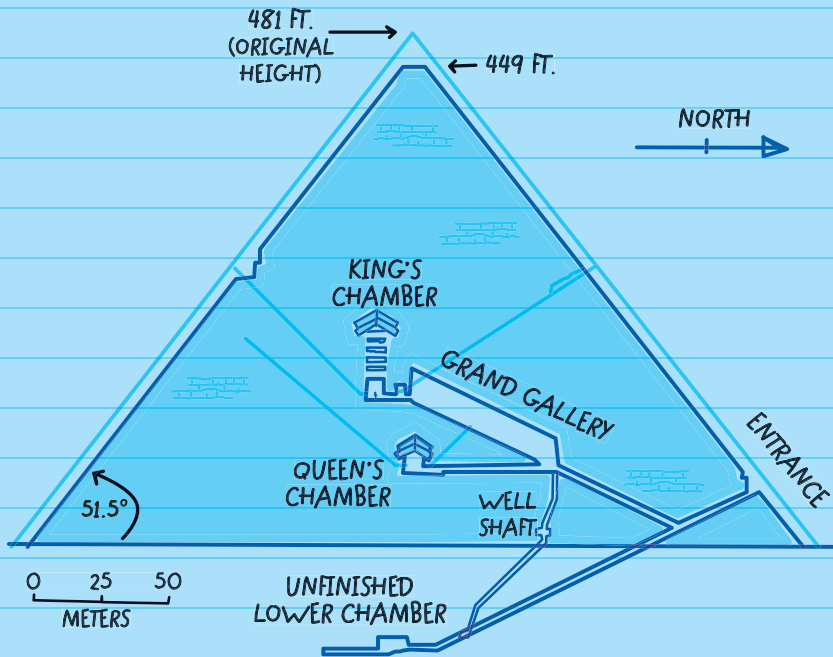
During the annual flooding of the Nile, farmers couldn't work in the fields, so they were put to work building pyramids. The Egyptians used their great knowledge of math, specifically geometry, to build these massive pyramids.

THERE IS SOME EVIDENCE THAT THESE FARMERS AND WORKERS WERE SLAVES.



The massive pyramids in Egypt obviously took a lot of time and hard work to build. Most historians believe that workers pushed stones across the sand on sleds or rolled them on logs to accomplish the construction. Ramps made from packed earth and sand were constructed at the base of the pyramid to allow workers to keep moving up as the pyramids grew taller and taller.

THE GREAT PYRAMID AT GIZA



The Middle Kingdom was a stable period of expansion. **KUSH**, or Nubia, an area south of Egypt, was conquered. Pharaohs provided aid for public projects, such as draining swampland and digging canals.

Some famous pharaohs of the Old Kingdom were:

DJOSER: had the first pyramid built for him by his **VIZIER**/architect/doctor **IMHOTEP**

KHUFU, KHAFFRA, and MENKAURA: oversaw building the great pyramids

VIZIER
a high-ranking official or counselor

The New Kingdom (1500 BCE–1070 BCE) and King Tut

THUTMOSE III was next in the royal bloodline to become pharaoh in about 1473 BCE, but because he was only about three years old, his stepmother **HATSHEPSUT** ruled

for him, acting as **REGENT** for the first two decades of his reign. Once he finally took power, Egypt entered the era of the **NEW KINGDOM**.

REGENT
an adult who rules in the place of a ruler who is a child and inherited a kingdom too young, a ruler who is absent, or a ruler who is disabled

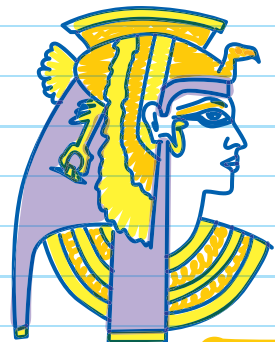
Hatshepsut was a mostly peaceful leader who encouraged trade with cities in other parts of Africa, such as Punt on the east coast. This exchange introduced ivory and incense to Egypt. When it was Thutmose III's turn to rule, he led an army of 20,000 to extend Egypt's control into Syria and Palestine.

One of the most famous Egyptian pharaohs to people today, **KING TUTANKHAMEN**, or **KING TUT**, was crowned at nine years old and ruled from approximately 1333 to 1323 BCE. King Tut only lived until he was nineteen. He was buried in a tomb containing over 5,000 expensive objects, which were meant to accompany him into the afterlife. King Tut's body was **MUMMIFIED**, which means that it was preserved; Egyptians believed the soul could continue its life after death, but that it needed the body as a sort of home base. They buried mummies deep below the desert where the cool temperature would help preserve them. The Egyptians gained extensive knowledge of human anatomy and surgery from the process of mummification.

I WAS
ONLY 19!



The New Kingdom collapsed in 1070 BCE. Alexander the Great of Macedonia eventually conquered Egypt in about 332 BCE. In 51 BCE, **QUEEN CLEOPATRA VII** would be the



last Macedonian ruler. She waged war with factions of the Roman Empire. After her, Egypt would not be independent again for nearly 2,000 years.

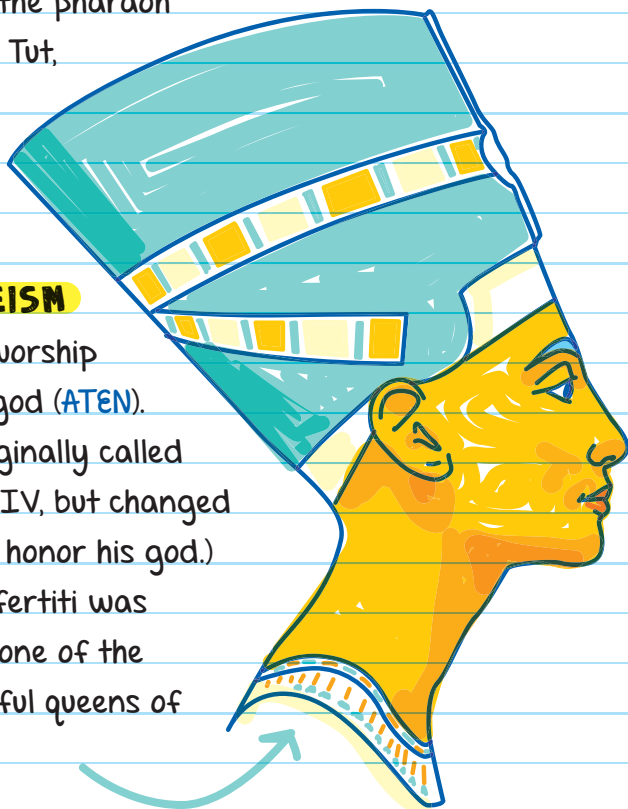
Some other famous pharaohs of the New Kingdom:

AKHENATEN and NEFERTITI:

Akhenaten, the pharaoh before King Tut, tried to replace the Egyptian gods with

MONOTHEISM

and focus worship on the sun god (ATEN). (He was originally called Amenhotep IV, but changed his name to honor his god.) His wife Nefertiti was considered one of the most beautiful queens of Egypt.



MONOTHEISM
belief in one god

RAMSES THE GREAT: reigned for 66 years (1279-1213 BCE), was known as a great warrior, and signed the world's first peace treaty (with his enemies the Hittites). He also had many monuments built that can still be seen today.

The Egyptians created beautiful illustrations, but often they looked a lot alike. Artists and sculptors were expected to follow a formula, not come up with original ideas. For instance, Egyptians are often pictured in a half-profile pose (partly facing forward, partly facing to the side). So while the art was lovely and consistent, and although artists sometimes drew fun sketches, they did not use a new style for thousands of years.



HIEROGLYPHICS

The Egyptians invented **HIEROGLYPHICS**, picture-like symbols used for writing.

Hieroglyphics were complicated—to write a word you might have to spell it out **AND** add an extra picture to show what it meant. Only members of the upper and middle classes of society were trained as scribes. A simplified version of hieroglyphics, **HIERATIC SCRIPT**, was used for everyday business.

READ LIKE AN
EGYPTIAN!



PAPYRUS

Although they first wrote on clay tablets, the Egyptians later invented **PAPYRUS**, a type of paper made from the papyrus plant. Papyrus most likely no longer grows in Egypt, but historians are pretty sure that it would have been a common plant along the Nile River in ancient times. Papyrus plants like to grow near marshy riverbanks because they need a lot of water. The Nile River Valley would have been ideal.





Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphics on papyrus in order to communicate across their empire and keep records of their history and achievements. The oldest papyrus scroll has been linked to the reign of Pharaoh Khufu, who ruled between 2575 and 2465 BCE.

PAPER LIKE WE USE TODAY WAS INVENTED BY THE CHINESE AND INTRODUCED TO THE MIDDLE EAST DURING THE 800s CE.

Papyrus was also popular in ancient Greece, Rome, and various Arabic regions.

Historians study papyrus documents that have survived many thousands of years. The sheets were formed by laying strips of papyrus stalks first diagonally and then horizontally. The damp layers were then pressed together and left to dry. Papyrus was normally made into rolls and stuck together with a paste. Egyptians wrote hieroglyphics mostly in black or red ink, but a skilled painter would also use white, blue, green, yellow, and orange ink.



ANCIENT EGYPT

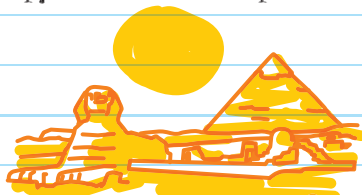
3300-3200 BCE:

Egyptians develop hieroglyphics to communicate through writing.



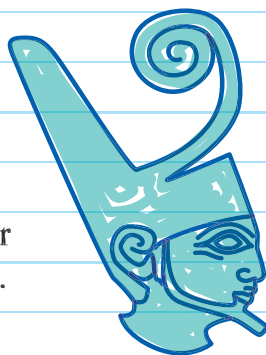
**Around
2575-2465 BCE:**

Egyptians build the great pyramids and the Sphinx.



**Before
2700 BCE:**

King Menes unites the Upper and Lower Egyptian Kingdoms.



TIMELINE



ANCIENT
EGYPTIAN
CAT MEME

332 BCE:

Alexander the Great from Macedonia conquers Egypt and establishes a dynasty that rules for 300 years.



CONQUERING IS
KIND OF MY THING.



30 BCE:

Egypt falls to the Roman Empire after Queen Cleopatra dies.





The BANTU

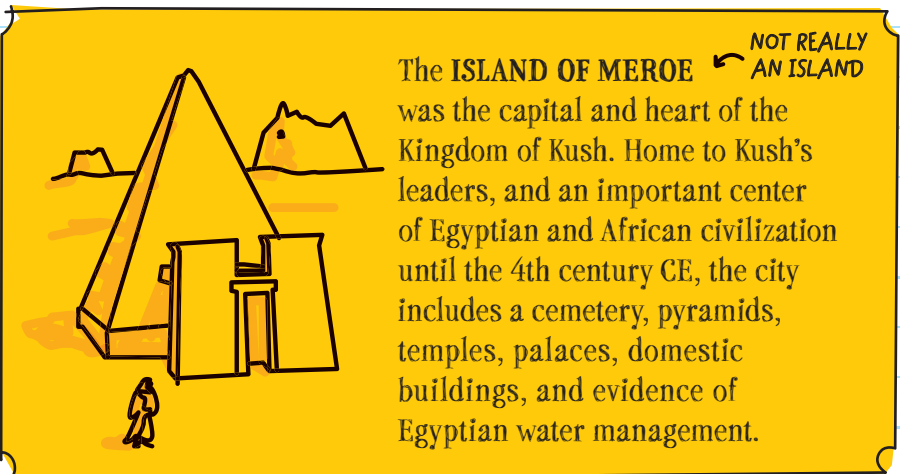
In approximately 1500 BCE, **BANTU MIGRATION** began. For 2,000 years, large numbers of Bantu-speaking people from West Africa moved slowly toward the south and east of the continent.

Like many early civilizations, the Bantu were fishermen and farmers. Each generation moved farther than the last to

find more fertile land and better grazing for their animals. The villages were composed of clans that at times would move into already inhabited areas to share cultures and crops (yams, for example). The Bantu brought metalworking techniques with them, and iron tools and weapons. If their new neighbors weren't welcoming, the Bantu would put these weapons to use.

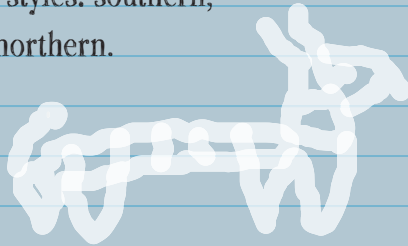
The KINGDOM of KUSH

The **KINGDOM OF KUSH** was at its most powerful between around 2000 BCE to 1500 BCE. Also called Nubia, it was an African civilization located on the Nile River south of Egypt. At first it was under Egyptian rule. Its major city was Meroe, which was the main residence of the rulers. The Kushites were farmers turned traders. They made iron weapons and tools, and they traded ivory, gold, ebony, and slaves to India, Arabia, and the Roman Empire.



AFRICAN

Rock painting is Africa's oldest and longest-lasting art form. The paintings show graceful human figures, colorful animals, and **THERIANTHROPE**s, or figures with both human and animal characteristics. At first glance, the rock paintings across the continent seem very similar, but a trained eye can notice subtle but distinct regional differences. Historians have categorized three different geographical styles: southern, central, and northern.

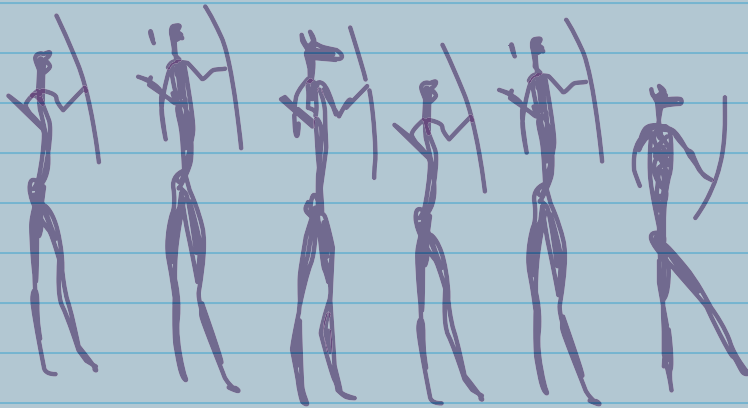


Of these three regions, the rock paintings of Central Africa are the most unusual. In the north and south, images of animals and human beings are common, but the rock paintings of Central Africa are usually finger-painted, and mostly show geometric images.

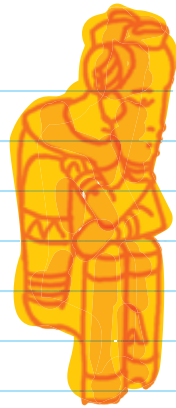
ROCK ART



Paintings from the Kasama hills in Zambia show figures made of circles and lines in winding patterns that are as mysterious as they are beautiful. Across the millennia, generations, and cultures, African rock paintings capture a unique sense of movement and nature.



The **NOK** people lived to the south and west of the Sahara Desert in approximately 500 BCE. Each town had its own king, who ruled over communities of large families. The Nok worked as farmers, merchants, metalworkers, and craft workers specializing in clay figures. →



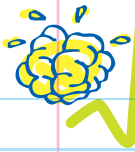
CARTHAGE was a city founded by the Phoenicians around about 800 BCE on the coast of North Africa. It became a large trading empire with colonies near and far, like in Spain and Sicily. Carthage was hugely powerful for about 600 years, until it fought Rome in three deadly wars. Three strikes and they were out.

In East Africa, a major trading center developed in the coastal city of **AXUM** in about 100 CE. Axum's trading center lasted for hundreds of years, controlling routes between the Mediterranean Sea and Asia.

There are very few written records for many ancient African cultures, which relied on **ORAL TRADITIONS** to transmit information from generation to generation. Historians also rely heavily on **ORAL HISTORIES** to gather the pieces of ancient Africa.

ORAL HISTORY

an account of the past handed down through spoken word, usually by the people who are considered to be the tradition keepers of a culture or society—elders, priests, etc.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did the Nile River help the Egyptian people?
2. Describe the form of government in ancient Egypt.
3. What major feat was accomplished during the Old Kingdom?
4. What was important about the Middle Kingdom?
5. The Egyptians started out writing on clay, but eventually switched to a different material. What was it?
6. Were any women powerful in Egyptian society? Give an example.
7. Oral histories are stories of the past that people pass down by word of mouth. Why are oral histories more important in understanding ancient Africa than in understanding some other civilizations?
8. What civilization founded Carthage?
9. Where was the city of Carthage located, and how long did Carthage stay in power?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



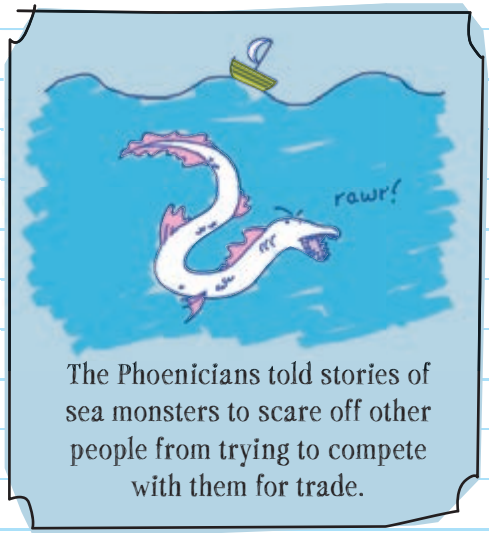
1. The Nile flooded every year and deposited rich soil on its banks, which helped with farming and led to a surplus of food. The annual flooding also helped the Egyptians create a calendar, travel, and communicate.
2. Egypt was ruled by a pharaoh with absolute power, which meant that whatever the pharaoh decided was law.
3. Both the great pyramids of Giza and the Great Sphinx were constructed during the Old Kingdom.
4. The Middle Kingdom was a stable period of expansion, and the pharaohs funded public projects like draining swampland and digging canals.
5. Egyptians switched to papyrus, which is a type of paper that is made from grass.
6. Yes, some were. Hatshepsut and Cleopatra ruled Egypt, and many Egyptian gods were female.
7. Oral histories are important in understanding ancient African history because there are very few written records for many ancient African cultures. Some other ancient civilizations had written records, so historians could use those records instead.
8. Carthage was founded by the Phoenicians.
9. Carthage was located on the coast of North Africa. Carthage stayed in power for about 600 years, until it fought Rome in three wars.

★ Chapter 5 ★

The PHOENICIANS and the ISRAELITES

PHOENICIA

The **PHOENICIANS** were a polytheistic, seafaring people who settled on the eastern coast of the Mediterranean Sea and lived there from 1550 to 300 BCE. They were best known for two things: their trade and their alphabet.



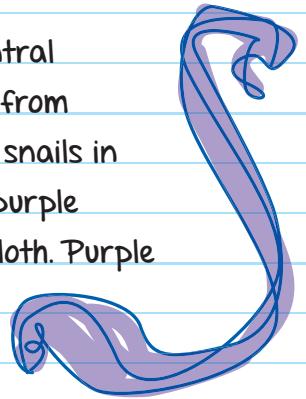
The Phoenicians told stories of sea monsters to scare off other people from trying to compete with them for trade.

 = PHOENICIA



The Phoenicians traveled and traded as far as the Atlantic Ocean and built a colony in **CARTHAGE** in North Africa.

They built large ships, sailing from the central coastal town of Tyre and trading lumber from cedar forests and purple dye made from snails in exchange for figs, olives, and spices. The purple dye was used by the Phoenicians to dye cloth. Purple was a pretty fancy color at the time—it eventually came to signify royalty.



The Phoenicians' system of writing consisted of an alphabet of 22 characters to represent the sounds of their language. It was easier to spell out words with sounds than to use pictures for objects. This new alphabet wasn't just for scribes. It was created to help Phoenicians trade goods with peoples who spoke different languages. It spread as the Phoenicians traded with new lands. This alphabet would eventually be passed on to the Greeks, and then to the Romans, who created the alphabet we use today.



ISRAEL

The **ISRAELITES** lived south of Phoenicia in the land of Israel from around 1250 to 700 BCE. The **TORAH**, the sacred text of the Israelites, is used by historians looking for clues about ancient history. The Israelites' leader was **ABRAHAM**, who taught the Israelites monotheism. According to the Torah, Abraham received a divine command to leave Mesopotamia, so he led his people to Canaan (the modern-day regions of Israel, Lebanon, and the Palestinian territories) in perhaps 2000 BCE. Because of drought and famine, the Israelites moved to Egypt, where they were eventually enslaved, and were freed only when **MOSES** led them out of Egypt in the **GREAT EXODUS**, possibly between 1450 and 1200 BCE. Eventually, the Israelites returned to Canaan.

EXODUS

any kind of mass departure

JERUSALEM

After defeating the Philistines in Canaan, King David developed Israel into a united kingdom and made **JERUSALEM** its capital in 1000 BCE.

AS IN DAVID AND GOLIATH

David's son, King Solomon, built the Temple of Jerusalem. When Solomon died around 931 BCE, the kingdom split into two parts: the kingdom of Israel in the north, and the kingdom of Judah in the south.



The Assyrians took advantage of the unrest to gain control. Then, in turn, the Chaldeans conquered them, destroyed Jerusalem, and **EXILED**

the people to Babylonia. Next in line to

conquer the region were the **PERSIANS**, who allowed the Israelites to return and rebuild Jerusalem and its temple.

The Israelites eventually became known as the Jewish people, and their religion is called Judaism.

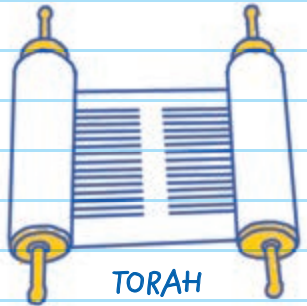
EXILE
to force people out of their country or homeland

JUDAISM

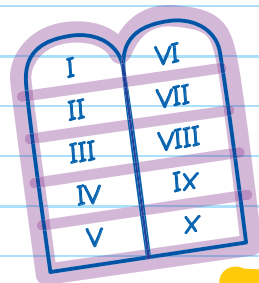
The ancient Israelites' religion was **JUDAISM**. It is characterized by a **COVENANT** between the Israelites

and their monotheistic God. The contract, according to their sacred text (the Torah), promised Abraham that his people would become kings and build nations if they followed God's laws. Later, Moses promised to lead the Israelites back to Canaan, or "the promised land."

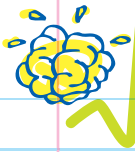
COVENANT
a contract or agreement



The **TEN COMMANDMENTS** are Judaism's divine laws on proper behavior toward God and each other



and are believed to have been given to the Israelites through Moses. In ancient times, Judaism had **PROPHETS**, religious teachers who spoke for God. The prophets advised people on how God wanted them to live.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Which people practiced monotheism—the Phoenicians or the Israelites?
2. What are the Phoenicians famous for?
3. Why was the Phoenician alphabet so useful?
4. What is the sacred text of the Israelites, and what does it say about Abraham and Moses?
5. What did the Persians do when they conquered the Chaldeans?
6. What are the major features of Judaism?
7. What did the Israelites believe about prophets?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The Israelites practiced monotheism.
2. The Phoenicians were famous for their extensive trade and for their alphabet.
3. The Phoenician alphabet could be learned by anyone, so it helped Phoenicians trade goods with peoples who spoke different languages.
4. The sacred text of the Israelites is the Torah. According to the Torah, Abraham taught the Israelites monotheism and was commanded by God to leave Mesopotamia and lead them to Canaan. The Torah says that when the Israelites were enslaved in Egypt, Moses led them out of Egypt in the Great Exodus and gave them the Ten Commandments, which were divine laws.
5. When the Persians conquered the Chaldeans, they allowed the Israelites to return to Israel and rebuild Jerusalem and its temple.
6. Judaism is characterized by monotheism, a contract between the Israelites and God, the Ten Commandments, and prophets.
7. The Israelites believed that prophets were religious teachers who could speak for God and tell people about how God wanted them to live.

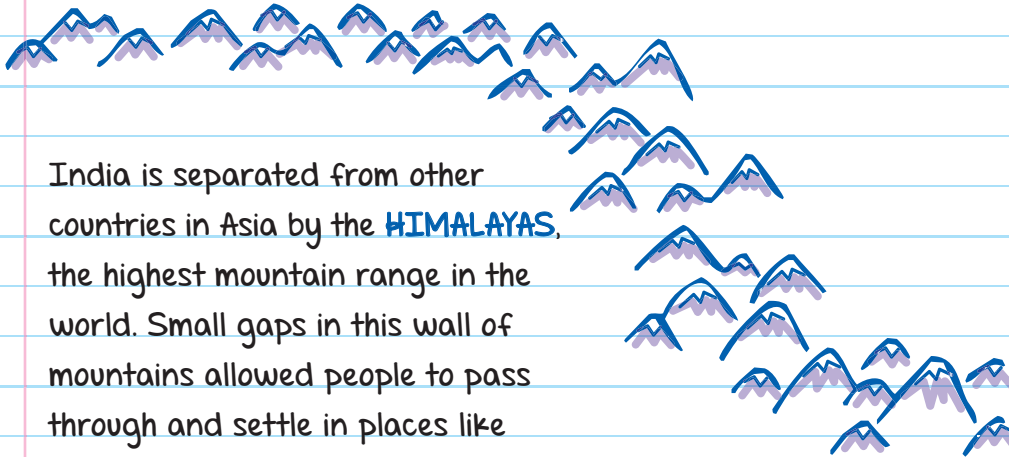
★ Chapter 6 ★

ANCIENT



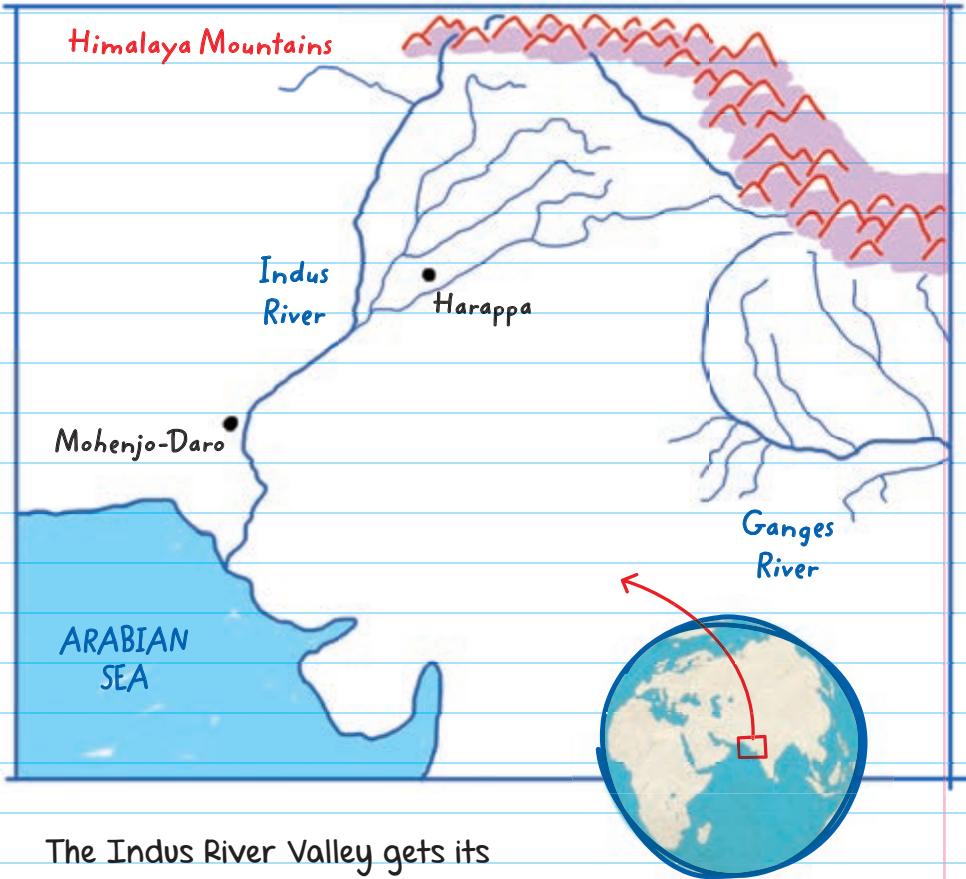
INDIA

2600 BCE-500 CE



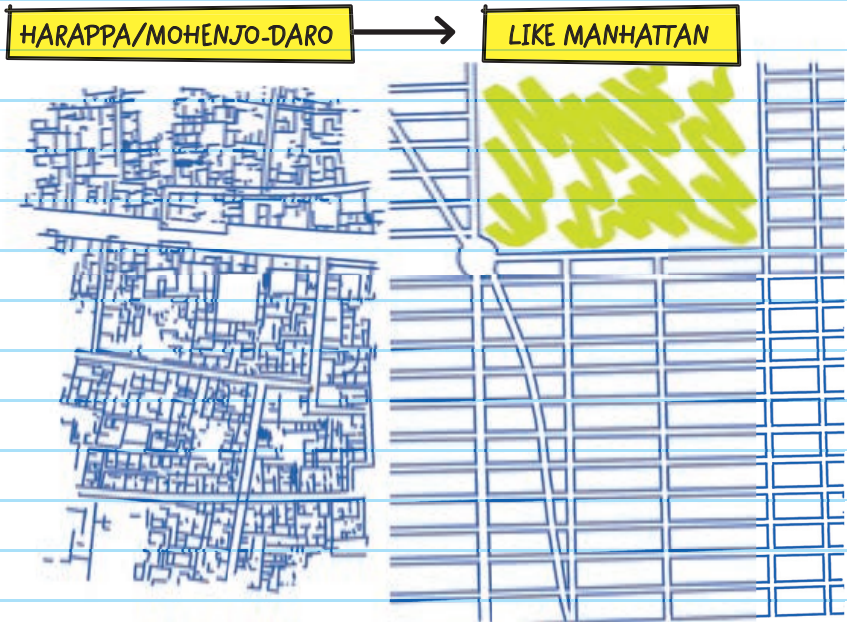
India is separated from other countries in Asia by the **HIMALAYAS**, the highest mountain range in the world. Small gaps in this wall of mountains allowed people to pass through and settle in places like the **INDUS RIVER VALLEY**.

The INDUS RIVER VALLEY



The Indus River Valley gets its name—and its rich soil—from the **INDUS RIVER**, which crosses the Himalayas and flows as far as the Arabian Sea. Another river, the **GANGES**, also cuts through the Himalayas; it empties into the Bay of Bengal. The two rivers created fertile land for farming, and their banks became the sites of major cities. In the Indus River Valley, the cities of **HARAPPA** and **MOHENJO-DARO** emerged

around 2600 BCE and grew to nearly 40,000 people. The cities were carefully laid out in a grid.



A **CITADEL** on each city's highest point protected its most important buildings, like the grain storage houses. These cities had advanced drainage systems. There were public wells, and many buildings had a bathroom (this was a really great new invention). Trade was prosperous; copper and lumber were the main exports. They traded with Sumer, and similarities in art suggest the two cultures mimicked each other's best work.

CITADEL
a fortress that overlooks the city

Around 2000 BCE the Indus valley farmers began to abandon their land—maybe because of natural disasters and invasions by nomads. Around 1500 BCE, **ARYANS** moved in from Central Asia and mixed with the original inhabitants of the Indus Valley, creating a new culture that eventually spread into the **GANGES VALLEY**, located to the east.

Around 1550 BCE, a system of writing called **SANSKRIT** was developed in India. The oldest text in the language is the RIG VEDA, an ancient religious document from the northern midlands of India. While Sanskrit is no longer spoken by many people, Dravidian, an ancient relation of Sanskrit, is still spoken in southern India.

तकाराअसासुरा॥गृहइअनणिअगण
शक्तिवमालवतिवाअतयसिमुदारा

SOCIAL STRUCTURE

This new culture was organized by a **CASTE SYSTEM** called **VARNAS**:

CASTE SYSTEM

a social structure in which classes are determined by birthright



BRAHMANS: the highest caste; they performed religious services



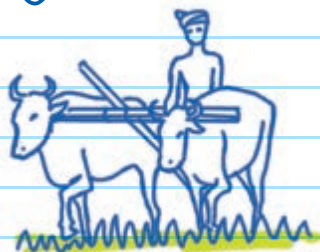
warriors
and **NOBLES**

NOBLE
referring to status—a
high rank—or to high
(moral) character

artisans and
merchants



farmers, laborers,
and servants



UNTOUCHABLES: at the bottom;
people considered them so impure
their only work could be burying
bodies or collecting trash

Under the caste system, there was no upward mobility for individuals; a person born to servant parents was stuck being a servant. A farmer couldn't become a warrior, and a warrior couldn't become a Brahman. No one asked what you wanted to be when you grew up; it was already determined by your lineage.

HINDUISM

Two major religions originated in India: **HINDUISM** and **BUDDHISM**. Hinduism originated about 1500 BCE from the blending of Aryan beliefs with the cultures of the original settlers of India. According to Hindu beliefs, there is one prevailing spiritual power that lives in everything. Hindus also believe in many gods and goddesses, including **BRAHMA** (the Creator), **VISHNU** (the Preserver), and **SHIVA** (the Destroyer).



VISHNU



BRAHMA



SHIVA

Hindu beliefs are found in the **UPANISHADS**, a collection of sacred texts that describe the Hindu philosophy. Beliefs include **REINCARNATION**, in which

KARMA determines how the soul is reborn (good behavior

REINCARNATION

the belief that, after death, the soul returns to **EARTH** in another body or form

may lead to rebirth into a higher caste; bad behavior is punished). If you led a perfect life, you would be freed from the cycle of death and rebirth and become one with the **BRAHMAN**, the spiritual center of the universe. Believers must obey their **DHARMA**, a divine law of religious and moral duties unique to each individual. Other ways of uniting with Brahman were through yoga, which is widely popular today as a workout, but according to Hindu beliefs, it is a form of exercise that frees the soul.

KARMA

behavior or intention that brings about a result according to that behavior, either in a person's current life or their next life

DON'T CONFUSE THESE:

BRAHMAN: top of the caste system

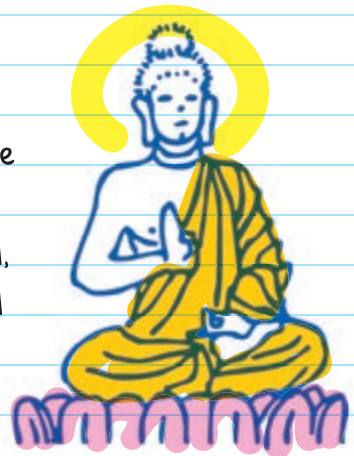
BRAHMA: a top deity

BRAHMAN: spiritual top of the universe

BUDDHISM

Buddhism appeared as a rival religion in the sixth century BCE.

SIDDHARTHA GAUTAMA, a young Hindu prince living in the lap of luxury, left his palace and saw the devastation of the real world. In the foothills of the Himalayas he found sickness and poverty, sorrow, greed, love, and death. Siddhartha decided to abandon his riches to seek the meaning of life and the cure for human suffering.



He's the founder of Buddhism and became known as the **BUDDHA**, or "Enlightened One."



Siddhartha took up the Hindu practice of **MEDITATION**, focusing his mind to reach a higher level of awareness.

MEDITATION
thinking deeply or focusing one's mind in silence or with chanting

Buddhists believe that he achieved enlightenment and came to understand the meaning of life. Siddhartha spent the rest of his life spreading his **FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS**, which teach that feelings of suffering in our lives will end when we stop trying to satisfy selfish goals, overcome the desire for material objects, and begin to see others as extensions of ourselves. Siddhartha broke this idea down for his followers in his **EIGHTFOLD PATH**.

The Eightfold Path teaches that we must overcome selfish desires for power and wealth and learn to be wise so that we may reach **NIRVANA**: everlasting peace where the self ends and reunites with the Great World Soul. After Siddhartha's death, which was somewhere between 410 and 370 BCE, his followers continued to spread his message, building monasteries to promote his teachings.

NIRVANA CAN BE REACHED BY YOU, THE PRESIDENT, OR PEOPLE OF ANY SOCIAL CLASS.

The principles of the Eightfold Path are:



RIGHT UNDERSTANDING –

Understanding the Buddha’s teachings

RIGHT INTENTION – Improving yourself mentally and ethically

RIGHT SPEECH – Saying no hurtful or negative things; telling no lies

RIGHT ACTION – No killing, stealing, or harming others

RIGHT LIVELIHOOD – Living and working in a peaceful way

RIGHT EFFORT – Thinking positively

RIGHT MINDFULNESS – Being aware of your own—and others’—bodies, feelings, and thoughts

RIGHT CONCENTRATION – Thinking clearly and being “in the moment”



Remember the main principles of the Eightfold Path of Buddhism with this mnemonic device:

Unicorns (Understanding)

In (Intention)

Saris (Speech)

Always (Action)

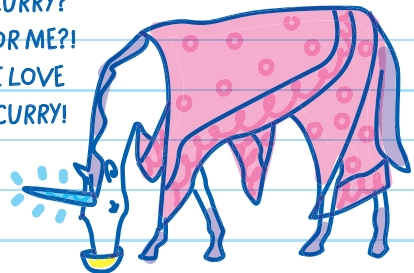
Love (Livelihood)

Eating (Effort)

My (Mindfulness)

Curry (Concentration)

CURRY?
FOR ME?!
I LOVE
CURRY!



ANCIENT INDIA

2600 BCE:

A civilization develops around the Indus River Valley that uses crops grown on the fertile land around the river for trade. At its peak, the Indus River Valley is the largest ancient empire.



2000 BCE:

The Indus River Valley Empire falls, most likely because of extreme flooding, invaders, or because the Indus River changed its course.



1500 BCE:

The Aryan people from an Indo-Europe region invade from the north. They settle as far as the Ganges Valley.



TIMELINE



326 BCE:

Alexander the Great from Macedonia crosses the Indus River to invade India.



REMEMBER ME? I ALSO INVADDED EGYPT IN 332 BCE. IT'S WHAT I DO!

50 CE:

The Romans trade with India for pearls, ivory, silk, spices, cloths, and precious stones.



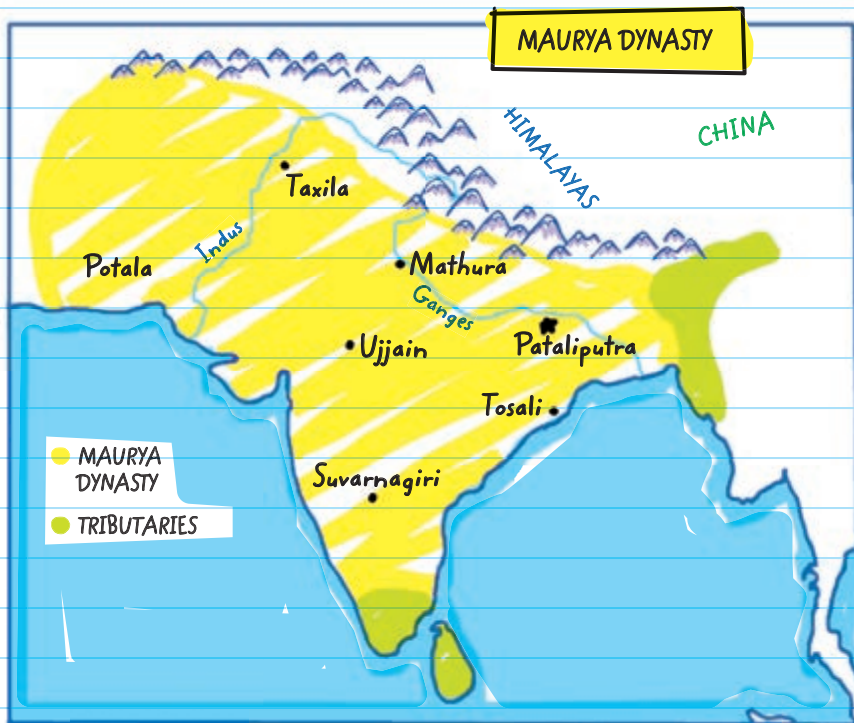
320 CE - 550 CE:

India enters a golden age under the Gupta Empire. Hinduism becomes the major religion, and the population makes great leaps in literature, art, architecture, and science.



The MAURYA EMPIRE and the GUPTA DYNASTY

Around 322 BCE, **CHANDRAGUPTA MAURYA** founded the **MAURYA EMPIRE**, overthrowing kingdoms along the Ganges River and extending his power over most of northern and central India. His armies were powerful, and he had a herd of 9,000 war elephants. Chandragupta governed by **ABSOLUTE RULE**,



complete power over his people. He constantly feared for his life. He made servants taste his food to test for poison, and he never slept in the same bed two nights in a row.



Chandragupta's grandson **AŚOKA** was another powerful leader. He converted to Buddhism after waging a violent war in Kalinga and seeing the devastation it had caused. He spread Buddhism throughout the empire, built hospitals, and practiced religious tolerance.

After Aśoka's death, the Maurya Empire weakened and was plagued by foreign invasions until 320 CE, when the **GUPTA** dynasty took over. The people enjoyed a golden age of Indian culture:

Techniques for printing on cloth were devised.

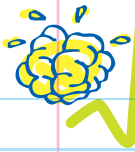
Schools of philosophy developed.

KALIDASA, one of the great Indian poets, wrote the popular Sanskrit poem *The Cloud Messenger*.

Hindu and Buddhist temples and shrines were built.

The DECIMAL SYSTEM and the concept of ZERO were invented.

This golden age of culture and trade lasted until the **HUNS** invaded in the late fifth century CE and fractured India. Northern India would remain splintered for hundreds of years.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why were India's earliest civilizations formed alongside rivers? How were they laid out?
2. What mountain range separates India from other countries?
3. What is a caste system? Who was at the top of the caste system and who was at the bottom?
4. What are the two major religions that originated in India?
5. Briefly describe how each religion was formed. What are the major texts and principles each religion is founded upon?
6. Why do you think Buddhism became such a popular religion in so many countries outside of India?
7. How long did the golden age of Indian culture last, and what was invented during this time?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. India's early civilizations were formed alongside rivers in order to take advantage of the fertile soil for farming. Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro were laid out in grids.
2. The Himalayas, the highest mountain range in the world
3. A caste system is a social system that separates people into different classes according to the families they were born into. A person born to servant parents must be a servant, and people can't change the class that they were born into. The Brahmins were at the top of the caste system, and the untouchables were at the bottom.
4. Hinduism and Buddhism originated in India.
5. Hinduism was formed by blending Aryan beliefs with the cultures of India's original settlers. Hindus believe in one spiritual power that lives in everything and also believe in many gods and goddesses, reincarnation, and karma. Their sacred text is the Upanishads. Buddhism was founded by Siddhartha Gautama. Buddhism's Eightfold Path says that people must overcome selfish desires and learn to be wise so that they can reach nirvana.

6. There are lots of possible reasons, but some might be because of Buddhism's focus on personal enlightenment, giving up selfishness to end suffering, finding inner peace, and practicing yoga and other exercises to free the mind and soul.

7. The golden age lasted about 200 years. It started when the Gupta dynasty took over and lasted until the Huns invaded. During this time, Indians invented a technique for printing on cloth, the decimal system, and the concept of zero.

★ Chapter 7 ★

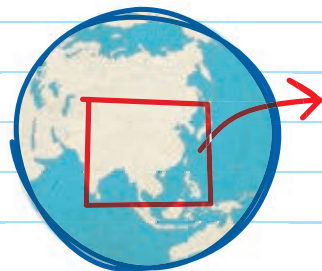
ANCIENT



CHINA

1750 BCE-220 CE

As in other great early civilizations, the people of ancient China farmed, and they settled near major rivers in what would later become important cities. More than 5,000 years ago, farming in China was primarily done in the valley of the Huang He, or Yellow River. Rice farming was especially important to the area. The land was fertile, though great **MONSOONS**, or seasonal winds causing heavy rain and floods, destroyed the surrounding areas.



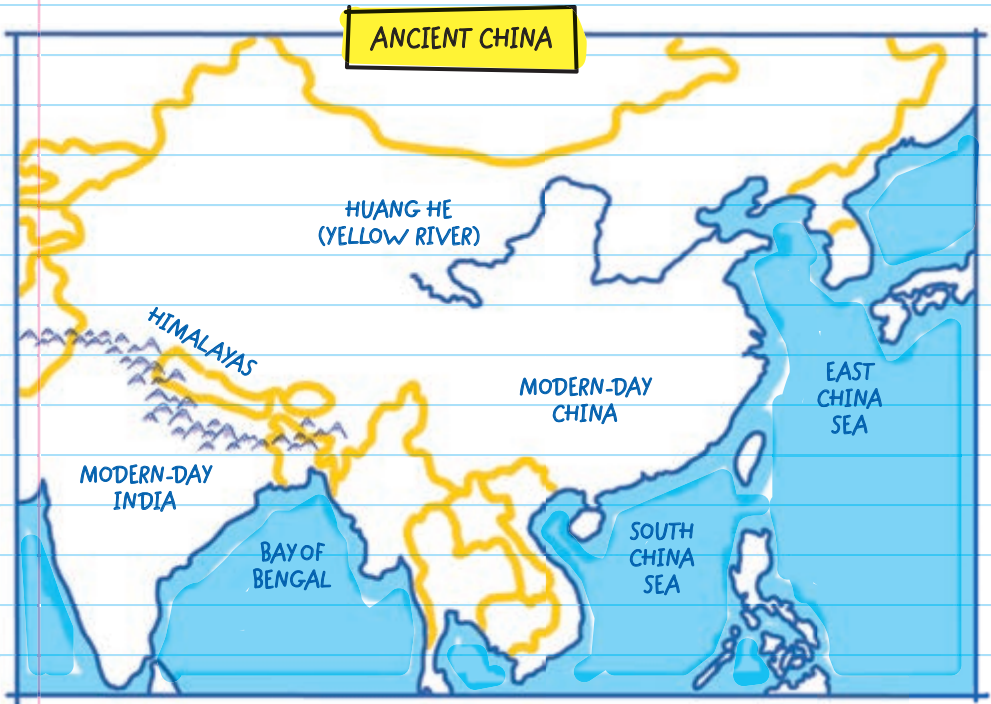
The SHANG DYNASTY

THE SHANG DYNASTY built China's first cities in about 1760 BCE. Dynasties passed down ruling power from one generation to the next. During the Shang dynasty, bronze work and expert toolmaking flourished. Also during this time, the people invented the first Chinese writing system. Farming was important but was under **ARISTOCRATIC** control:

Farmers supplied food to their local nobleman in exchange for protection. These aristocrats relied on land for wealth and passed this power on from generation to generation.

ARISTOCRACY

a group of people holding the highest rank, usually by birthright; the elite



Around the time of the Shang dynasty, the first Chinese writing system was created with characters to represent words. (Historians don't know exactly how long this system was in place, but the oldest examples from the Shang dynasty era show writing that was very well developed.)

The kings of the Shang dynasty believed their ancestors could advise them after death. They carved questions and answers onto pieces of ox bones or turtle shells in order to ask questions such as, "When is the best time to grow crops?"



HEY, HOW ABOUT
USING SOME
PAPYRUS?



The ZHOU DYNASTY

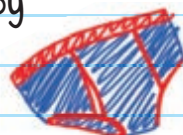
THE ZHOU DYNASTY took control around 1050 BCE and ruled for nearly 800 years. The kings built forts and walls to defend their land against each other. Like the Shang, the Zhou kingdom was divided into territories governed by officials.

Those who owned the land that the peasants farmed kept a large share of the harvested crops for themselves. These states fought each other for power in the period called the **WARRING STATES** (about 475 BCE-221 BCE).

After about 500 years of fighting, the first emperor of China, the **QIN** ruler Shih Huang-di, gained control. He began construction of the **GREAT WALL OF CHINA**, one of the largest frontier defenses in the world. It is longer than the distance from New York City to Milan, Italy. The wall was built by millions of poor Chinese workers; this led to uprisings by both the army and the peasants after Shih Huang-di's death.

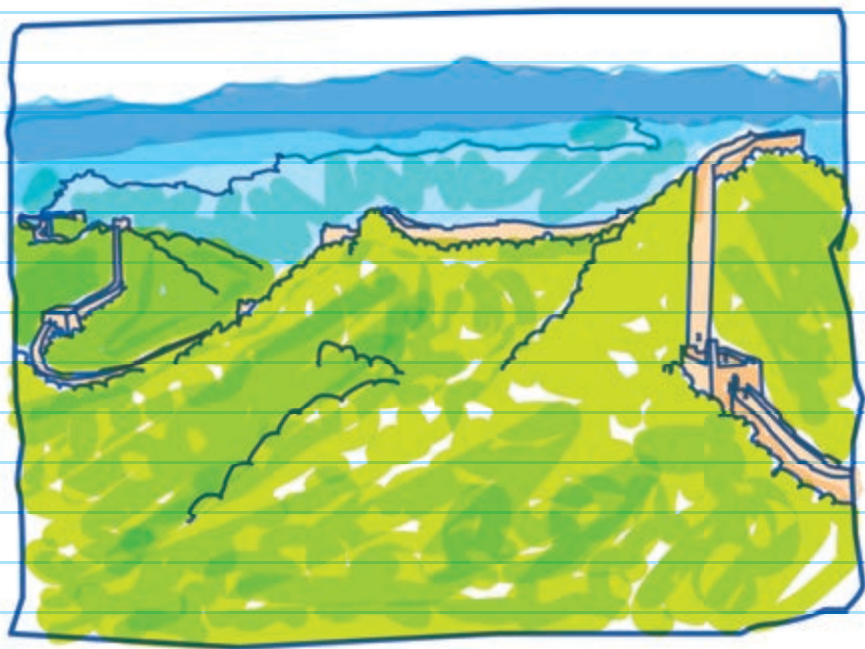
The HAN DYNASTY

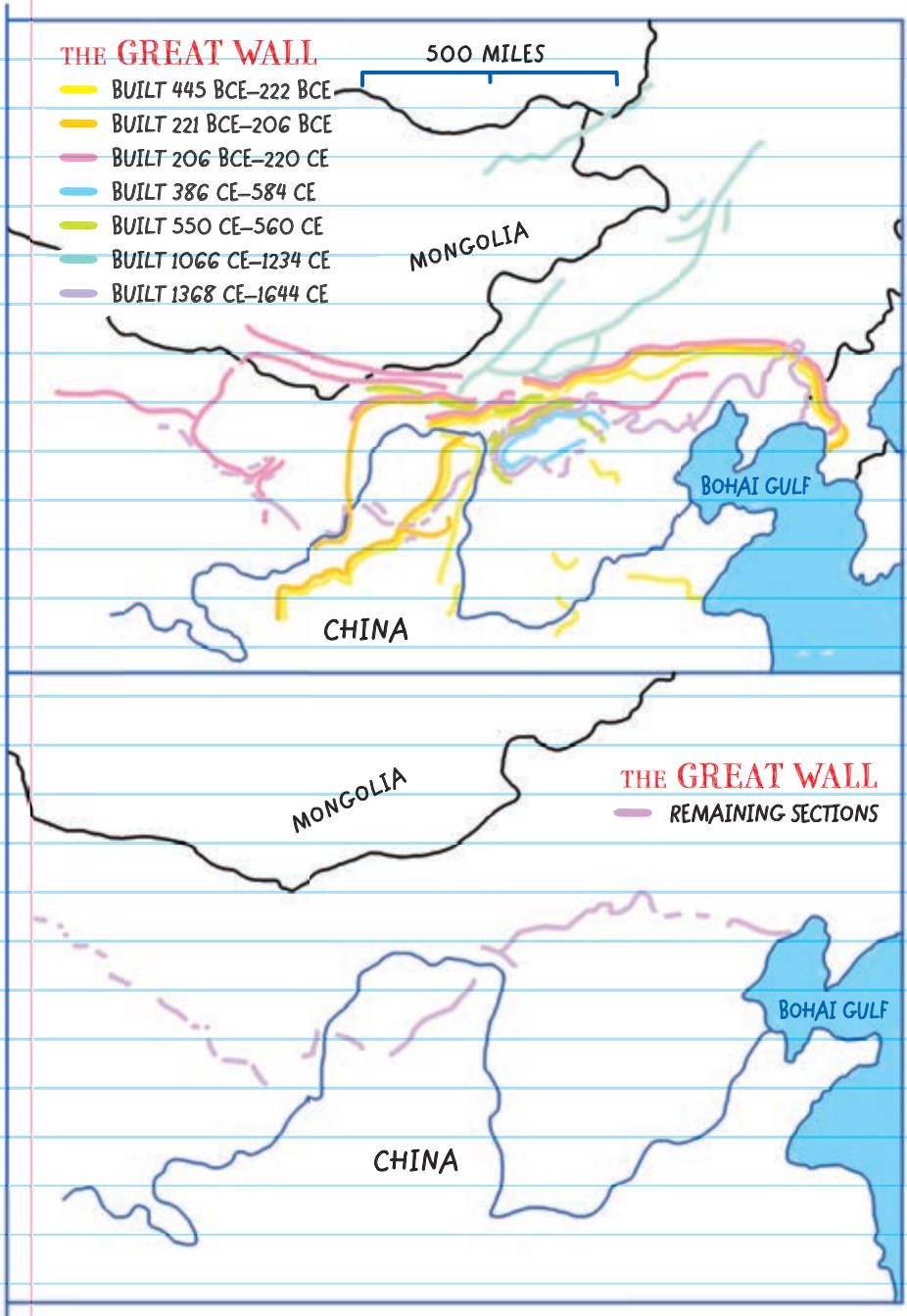
THE HAN DYNASTY followed this rebellion, beginning around 206 BCE. The first Han emperor, **LIU BANG**, started out as only a minor official whose parents had been peasants. Under his great-grandson **WUDI**'s rule, the Great Wall and the army were strengthened. The Han dynasty began trading with the Western world through the **SILK ROAD**, a trade route from China all the way to the Mediterranean Sea. The main Chinese export was silk, made by silkworms. Europeans weren't used to such smooth, soft material (great for underwear).



SO SOFT!

THE
GREAT
WALL
OF CHINA

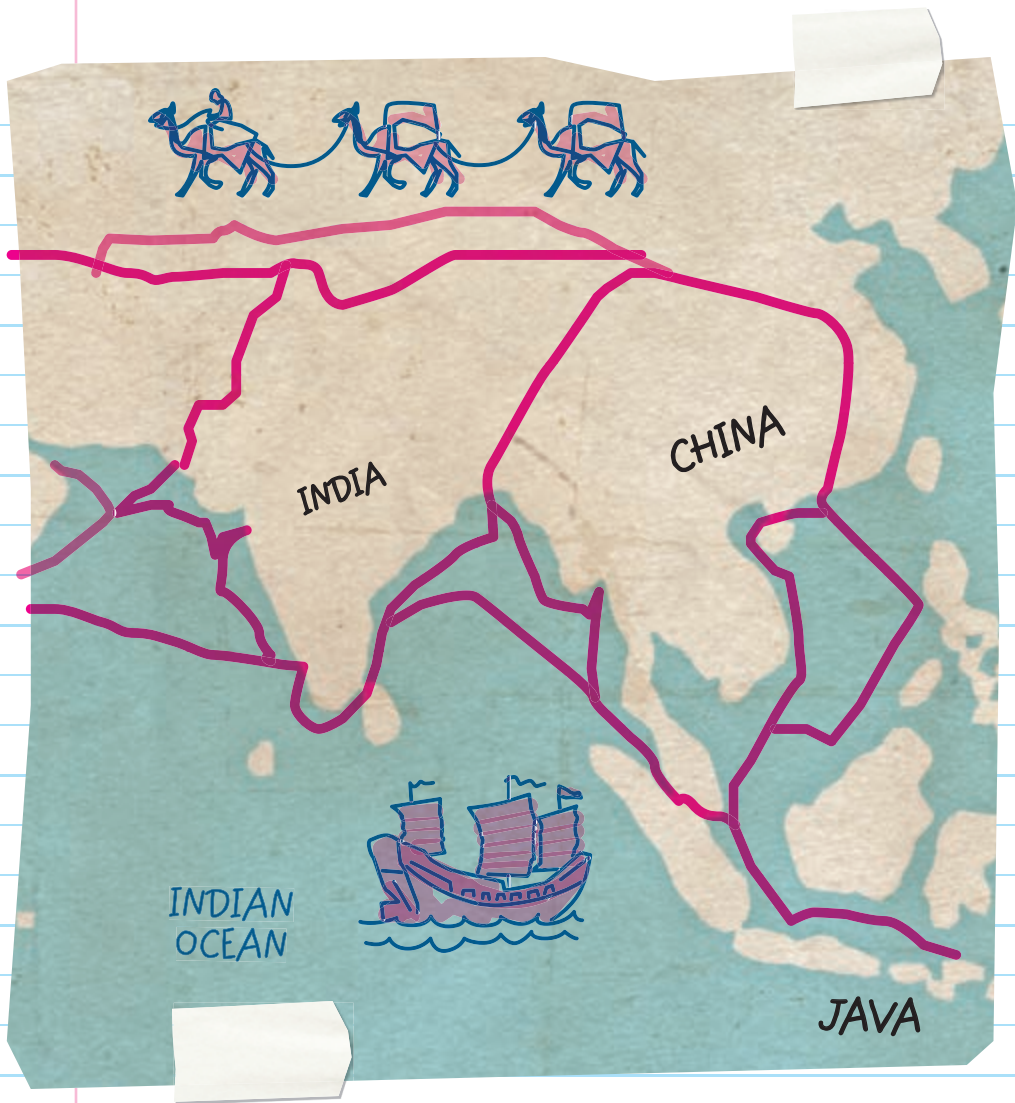






THE SILK ROAD

The **SILK ROAD** was not actually one road—it was more of a 4,000-mile-long system of trade routes that connected China to Europe, the Middle East, and North Africa. Travel was not safe on the Silk Road, which could be home to bandits, murderers, and Mongol armies. Chinese silk was especially valuable in Rome, though, where wealthy Romans were proud



to show off the fine, smooth fabric. Aside from silk, Chinese merchants sold spices, tea, and jade in exchange for gold, silver, glass, precious stones, ivory, horses, elephants, and wool. Ideas were also spread by the Silk Road. For example, Buddhism was introduced to China during the Han dynasty by Indian merchants traveling the road.

The Chinese created the sailboat rudder, manufactured steel, and made paper from wood pulp. They made medicinal advances, like what became known as **ACUPUNCTURE** (placing needles on various spots in the body to treat ailments—it doesn't hurt!). They invented herbal medicines and also traded in spices, tea, and porcelain.

Gunpowder is also said to have been discovered in ancient China, but not until the Tang dynasty in the ninth century CE.

THE MANDATE OF HEAVEN: The rulers of ancient China believed that they were destined to rule by a **MANDATE** (command) from heaven. The ruler was considered the link between heaven and earth. He was expected to be virtuous and rule to please the gods. Ancient Mandarin and Confucian scholars influenced Chinese kings to honor the mandate by taking care of the people.

Family came first in Chinese society; you were responsible to your family above all. You also had a duty to respect the head of the family (your parents, elders, and ancestors), an idea called **FILIAL PIETY**. **EXTENDED FAMILIES** lived together: mother, father,

children, cousins, uncles, aunts, great-aunts, grandmothers, great-grandmothers, great-great-grandmothers, and so on and so on.

FILIAL
the relationship between children and parents

PIETY
respect

There could be as many as five generations living together, and maybe people from age one to one hundred!

The early Chinese practiced ancestor worship in **HOMAGE** to their deceased family members.

HOMAGE
an expression of high regard; respect

CONFUCIANISM

Confucius was a famous Chinese teacher and philosopher. Born in 551 BCE to a noble but poor family, he worked to pass on the forgotten teachings of thinkers from an earlier age and to bring peace and stability to the people of China, starting with family and friends.



CONFUCIANISM holds that there are five human relationships:

1. RULER AND RULED



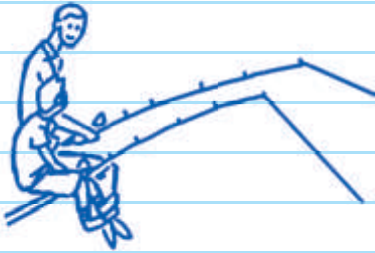
2. FRIEND AND FRIEND



3. HUSBAND AND WIFE



4. OLDER SIBLING AND YOUNGER SIBLING



5. FATHER AND SON

CONFUCIUS DIDN'T CLASSIFY OTHER RELATIONSHIPS, LIKE MOTHER AND SON, FATHER AND DAUGHTER, ETC.

Confucius taught that we should treat each other justly in all these relationships and that it is our duty to be compassionate. His teachings were responsible for a change in how government positions were granted in the Han and Qin dynasties. Before, posts were passed on to sons of powerful men; after, candidates (male only) were evaluated based on **MERIT**.

MERIT
qualities, characteristics,
or achievements

TAOISM

TAOISM is another philosophy developed around the time of Confucianism, in the 500s BCE. It is based on the writings of **LAOZI** (also spelled **LAO-TZU**). Followers believe happiness comes from leading a balanced life in harmony with nature, through living simple and selfless lives. Both Taoism and Confucianism are considered philosophies, rather than religions, because they examine human behavior rather than search for a divine meaning to the universe.

Over time, Taoism grew into an organized religion. More writing, gods, and schools with different ideas were created. In today's China, Buddhism and Taoism are the two most popular religions in the country.

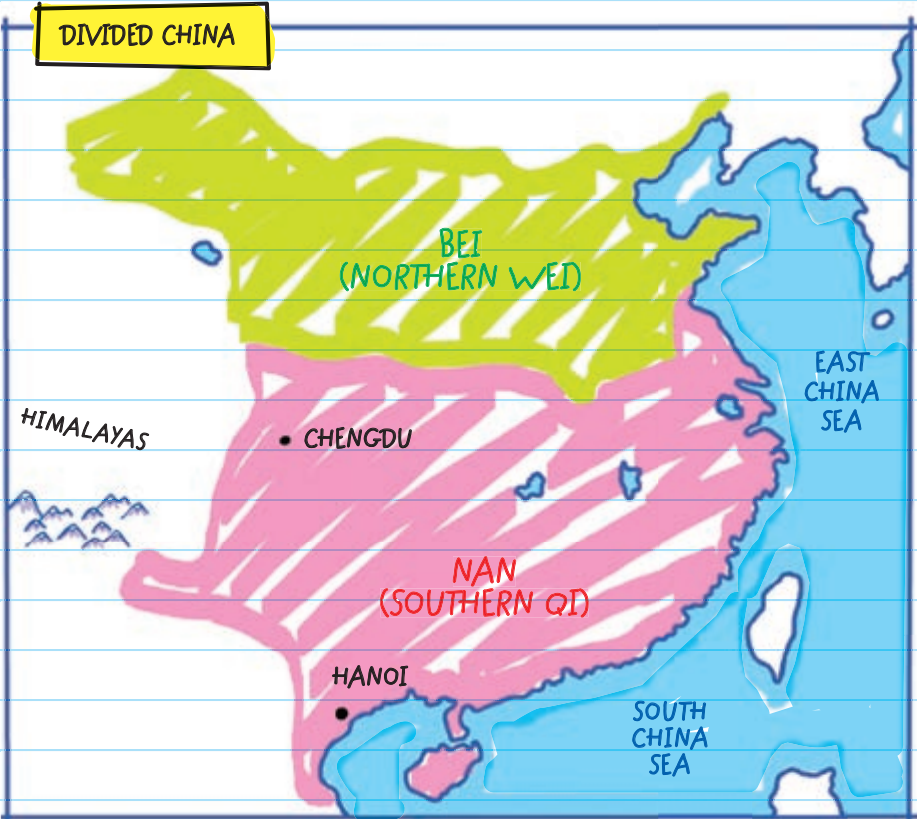
The **YIN** and the **YANG** is probably the most well-known Taoist symbol in the modern world.

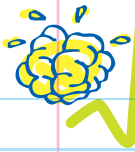
Yin, the dark side, represents shade, water, west, and the tiger. Yang, the light side, is associated with light, fire, east, and the dragon. Separately, Yin and Yang represent opposing ideas, but together, their balance brings harmony to the universe.



DIVIDED CHINA

By 220 CE, warlords had taken control from the Han dynasty. Civil war divided China into smaller kingdoms, and it would take 400 years before the next great dynasty emerged.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was China's first civilization, and what was invented during that period?
2. Why do you think that China's first civilizations formed alongside rivers? How can you connect this to what you have learned so far about other ancient civilizations, such as Mesopotamia, Egypt, and India?
3. A very important export developed during the Han dynasty. What was it?
4. Why are Confucianism and Taoism considered philosophies rather than religions?
5. Describe ancient Chinese rulers' relationship to power. Was power something they gained over a lifetime or something they were born with?
6. What were some of the ruler's duties in ancient China?
7. Monsoons occur every season in China and parts of India. What are they?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. China's first civilization was the Shang dynasty, and the first Chinese writing system was invented during that time. 
2. As in other early civilizations, the people of ancient China farmed and settled near major rivers because the land was fertile. Easier farming and reliable sources of food make it more possible for people to settle in cities and start doing things with their time other than hunting for food.
3. The Han dynasty began trading silk with the Western world through the Silk Road.
4. Taoism and Confucianism are considered philosophies because they analyze human behavior instead of search for a holy meaning to life.
5. The rulers of ancient China believed in the Mandate of Heaven, which was a command from heaven that destined them to rule. Therefore, they were born with power, and the king was considered the link between heaven and earth.
6. The king was expected to be good and rule to please the gods.
7. Monsoons are seasonal winds causing heavy rains and floods. They can destroy lands surrounding rivers.

★ Chapter 8 ★

ANCIENT GREECE

3000 BCE-1 CE



Greece was (and still is) made up of many little islands and slim **PENINSULAS** bunched together in one big cluster.

This made it hard for people from different islands to connect to each other (geographically and culturally).

PENINSULA

a mass of land that projects out and is surrounded by water on three sides

EARLY GREEK HISTORY

The **MINOANS** were successful traders who lived on an island called **CRETE** around 3000 to 1100 BCE. They had an elegant palace in the ancient city of Knossos. The Minoan civilization declined when invaders from mainland Greece, probably the **MYCENAEANS**, took over around 1400 BCE. The Mycenaeans lived principally on the mainland, in the city of Mycenae. They used writing, as the Minoans had done. The Mycenaean writing system (Linear B) is the earliest form of written Greek. No one has figured out the hundreds of symbols in the Minoan writing system (Linear A) yet.

To remember which early Greek civilizations fared better than the other, think: The **Mighty Mycenaeans** beat the minnow-like **Minoans**.

GEE, THANKS!

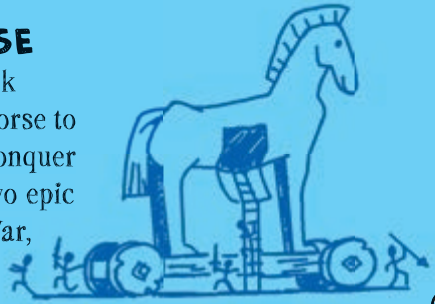


Then came the Trojan War, which took place around 1194-1184 BCE. Historians disagree about whether this war was really fought or whether it's a mixed-up memory of a lot of different events, but it marks the decline of Greek civilization and the beginning of the **DARK AGES** in Greece (1100s-750 BCE). It is believed that large-scale trading ended

and poverty spread. Things were desperate. We have no written records of this time.

THE TROJAN HORSE

According to Greek legend, Greek soldiers hid in a giant wooden horse to sneak into the city of Troy and conquer it! You can read all about it in two epic poems that recount the Trojan War, the *Aeneid* and the *Odyssey*.



Sometime around 800 BCE, **CITY-STATES** began to form and written records reappeared. Usually led by aristocrats and military rulers, the city-state (also called the **POLIS**) was the center of Greek life. Eventually some citizens came up with the idea to form a type of government called **DEMOCRACY**, where citizens govern themselves (more on that later).

Around 750 BCE, the Greek poet **Homer** tells the story of the Trojan War in his epic poem the *Iliad*. It describes the city of Troy waging a war against ancient Greece for ten years. The fighting started because the Trojan prince Paris abducted Helen, who was the wife of the Spartan King Menelaus. In the first century BCE, Virgil, a great Roman poet, also wrote an epic poem about the Trojan War—the *Aeneid*. In Virgil's poem, the Greek gods take sides. It ends with a mythical prince named Aeneas escaping as the city of Troy burns down. In the poem, Aeneas goes on to found the Roman state.



HOMER

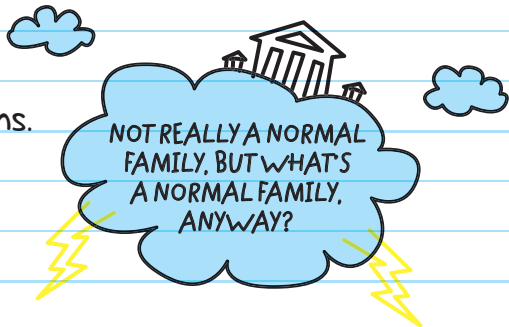
The GOLDEN AGE

By 700 BCE, Athens was the city-state where everything was happening. At first it was ruled by a king. Later, the Athenian leader **SOLON** reformed the economy and government in 594 BCE. He made changes like freeing people who had fallen into slavery from debt, and then he canceled debt altogether. Still, only one in five Athenians was considered a citizen.

Soon there was the golden age of Greece, a period during which Athens grew rich from silver and trade and made important cultural achievements. From 479 BCE to 431 BCE, the people of Greece were busy developing their philosophy, religion, art, and architecture.

GREEK RELIGION

The Greeks worshipped a family of gods and goddesses led by **ZEUS** and **HERA**, the king and queen of the gods. Gods ruled different areas of life, like war (**ARES**), love (**APHRODITE**), and the sea (**POSEIDON**). The Greeks believed that the most powerful gods formed a family called the Olympians.



I CAN CHARGE MY PHONE WITH THIS!



ZEUS



HERA

POSEIDON



ARES



APHRODITE

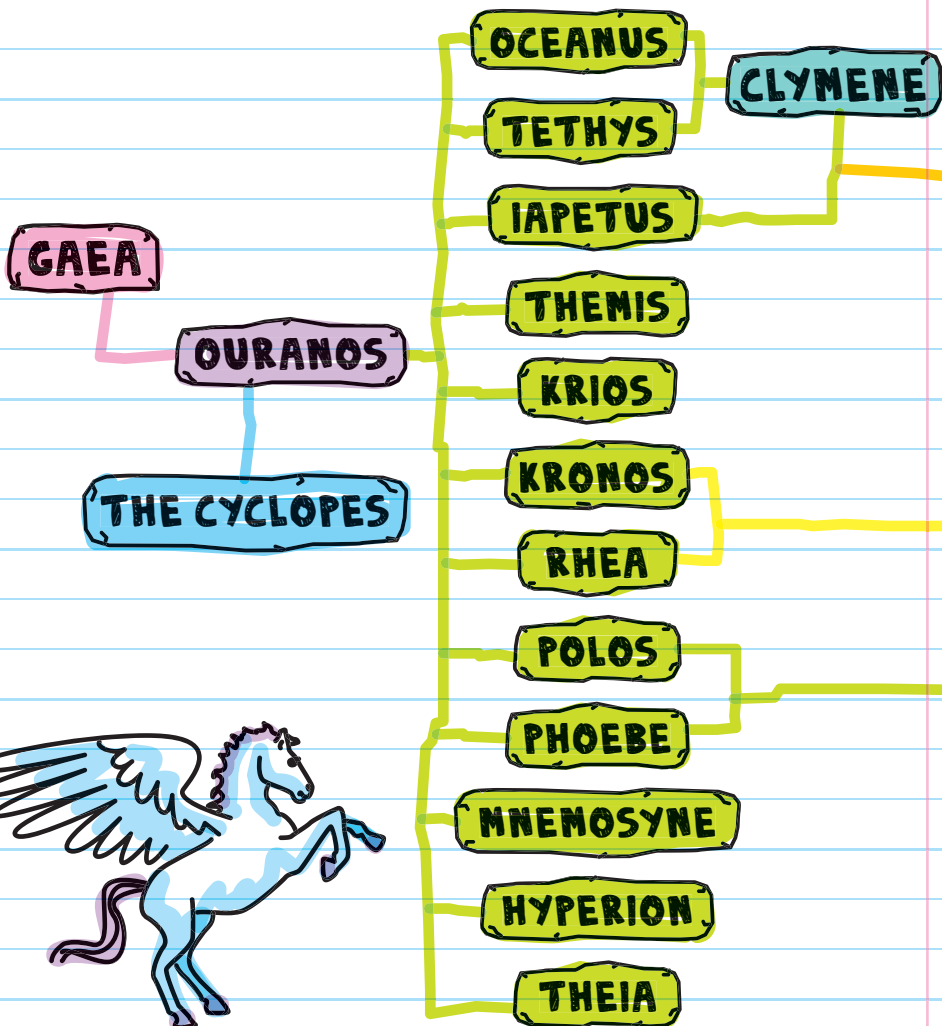
Greeks visited sacred sites called **ORACLES**. The Greeks built temples in many cities and celebrated the gods in many festivals.

ORACLE

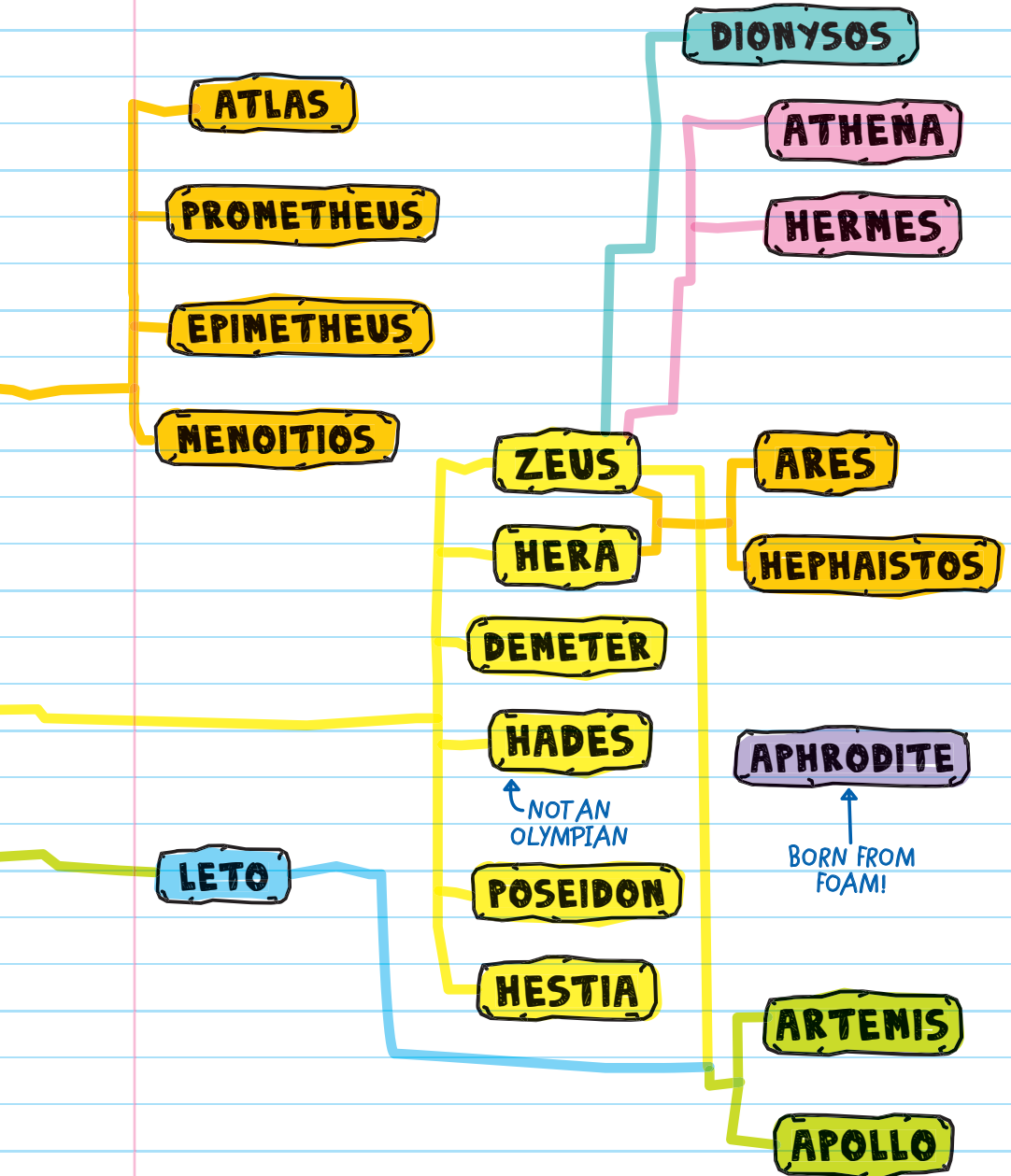
a shrine where a prophecy (prediction) is revealed through priestesses or priests. An "oracle" also refers to a priestess or priest who could speak with the gods.

GREEK GODS FAMILY TREE

THE TITANS



THE OLYMPIANS



THE OLYMPIC GAMES



The Olympic Games began around 776 BCE as a festival for the Olympians. Athletic games were a way of honoring the gods. According to some myths, Zeus defeated Kronos in a fight for the throne of the gods. Later, Herakles (also known as Hercules), a demigod, staged the games in honor of Zeus. The first real games were held on the ancient plains of Olympia. They were held for nearly 12 centuries, until Emperor Theodosius banned them in 393 CE because he believed they were a pagan ritual.

The ancient Olympic Games included poetry competitions and:

RUNNING – 200-meter and 400-meter footraces

JUMPING – Halteres (stone or lead weights) were used to increase the distance of athletes' jumps. They held the weights until the end of their jump, then threw the weights backward.

DISCUS THROW – The techniques used in the ancient games are very similar to today's techniques.

WRESTLING – Matches ended only when one contestant admitted defeat.

BOXING – The fighters sometimes wrapped their hands in hard leather, which caused disfigurement to their opponents' faces.

PANKRATION – This was a primitive form of martial arts that mixed boxing and wrestling. The ancient Greeks believed it was founded when Theseus defeated the Minotaur.

HORSE AND CHARIOT RACES – Races were held in the hippodrome, which was a stadium built for horse racing.

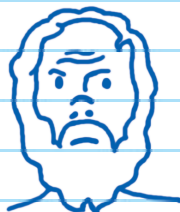


GREEK PHILOSOPHY

Early Greek philosophers focused on the development of rational thought. They were trying to come up with a system of thinking to explain the universe.

Several important philosophers taught in Athens:

SOCRATES taught people how to think and figure things out by asking questions (the **SOCRATIC METHOD**). Sometimes he disagreed with the rulers or doubted the existence of the gods, and eventually he was executed by being made to drink hemlock, a poison.



SOCRATES

PLATO studied under Socrates. He wrote a book called **THE REPUBLIC** and believed society should be divided into three groups: workers, soldiers, and philosopher-rulers. He taught his students how to live by a code of ethics that would lead them to moral, happy lives.



PLATO

Unlike Socrates, who never wrote anything down, Plato wrote down **EVERYTHING**—about reality and objects, war and government, and justice and society. He founded and taught at an Athenian school, called the **ACADEMY**, to train government leaders.

ARISTOTLE studied under

Plato. Like Plato, Aristotle believed people's happiness was connected to their behavior. He also worked to define categories of logic, biology, and physics; he was fascinated

by nature, and he classified plants and animals in a scientific method that's the foundation of the method used today. He wrote about politics too—his ideas were different from Plato's.

Aristotle thought there were three good forms of government: monarchy, aristocracy, and (a sort of) democracy. Aristotle founded his own school, the **LYCEUM**. Aristotle tutored the famous conqueror Alexander the Great.



GREEK ART, ARCHITECTURE, and SCULPTURE

The Greek playwrights wrote tragedies and comedies. Their plays usually consisted of dialogue mixed with a chorus singing or chanting. The chorus was a way for the author to include background information and to comment on the plot.



Three major Greek playwrights were **AESCHYLUS**, **SOPHOCLES**, and **EURIPIDES**.

AESCHYLUS wrote a trilogy called **THE ORESTEIA**—a set of three plays about the family of Agamemnon, who was the king of the city-state Argos during the Trojan War.

SOPHOCLES is best known for his play **OEDIPUS REX**, a family tragedy where an oracle predicts that Oedipus will kill his father and marry his mother (!!!).

EURIPIDES went for more realistic characters and hot topics like war and human suffering. One of his plays is **MEDEA**.

All three were a big deal then, and their plays are still read and performed today.

Some famous epic poems came out of Greece at this time. At the very end of the Dark Ages, the work of Homer came to light, including the **ODYSSEY** and another epic poem, the **ILIAD**. They're each hundreds of pages long, and they teach about courage and honor and the gods. Orators would memorize the epics and perform them as part of Olympic competitions! The concept of the Greek hero owes a great deal to Homer.

THE PARTHENON

THE RUINS ARE
STILL STANDING
IN GREECE TODAY!



In architecture, the great temple of Athena, the **PARTHENON**, was built in Athens between 447 BCE and 432 BCE. It was dedicated to both Athena and the Athenians and was a symbol of the pride of Athens itself. Constructed under the leadership of **PERICLES**, the Parthenon was severely damaged by an explosion in 1687 CE. But its ruins remain on the hilltop in Athens to this day.



HIPPOCRATES was an ancient Greek doctor who believed that diseases were caused naturally and not caused by a god or affected by superstition. Doctors today still take the **HIPPOCRATIC OATH** to help patients and do no harm.

The AGE of PERICLES

Pericles was one of the most influential leaders in ancient Greece. Around 460 BCE he introduced reforms like having the city pay a salary to its officials. This may seem logical (you work, you get paid), but before this, no poor citizen could afford to hold public office and work for free.

Pericles also encouraged citizens to participate in the governing assembly and vote on major issues, a concept known as a **DIRECT DEMOCRACY** because citizens could give their opinions on laws, decisions about war, and foreign policy, and elect public officials. However, only a male Athenian with two Athenian parents was considered a free, self-governing citizen.

ATHENS and SPARTA

ATHENS and **SPARTA** were two major Greek city-states in early Greece, but they couldn't have been more different. Athenians wrote plays and made pottery, sold goods, and chatted about philosophy in the marketplace. They had what has been estimated to be 100,000 slaves. Athens was **PROSPEROUS** (well-off) at the cost of others.

ATHENS AND SPARTA



Sparta, a city-state in southern Greece, was prosperous in a different way: in battle. The Spartans believed that the city-state came above the individual at all costs, and they lived as a powerful war machine. They had slaves (called **HELOTS**) who farmed the land while the Spartans waged wars. The city-state was an army camp, with young boys

of seven years old leaving home to live in army barracks. Boys became soldiers at age twenty and stayed soldiers until sixty. Girls didn't fight, but they exercised to be strong and agile, and to produce strong offspring. The Spartans didn't travel for trade. In 431 BCE, they began fighting against the Athenians in the **PELOPONNESIAN WAR**, which lasted 27 years. The Athenians fell to the Spartans in 404 BCE.

The RISE of ALEXANDER

The kingdom of Macedonia was north of Greece. **KING PHILIP** brought the Greek philosopher Aristotle there to tutor his son **ALEXANDER** in Greek literature and philosophy. King Philip thought of himself as Greek too. He united Macedonia in 359 BCE and conquered the Greek city-states through bribes and threats. Philip gained control of Greece but was assassinated before he could rule his empire. Alexander took over at age twenty in 336 BCE, invading the Persian Empire and continuing the fighting into India. After eleven years, Alexander had conquered Persia, Egypt, and land beyond the Indus River. But in 323 BCE, Alexander died of a fever. (Probably not the way he thought he'd go.)

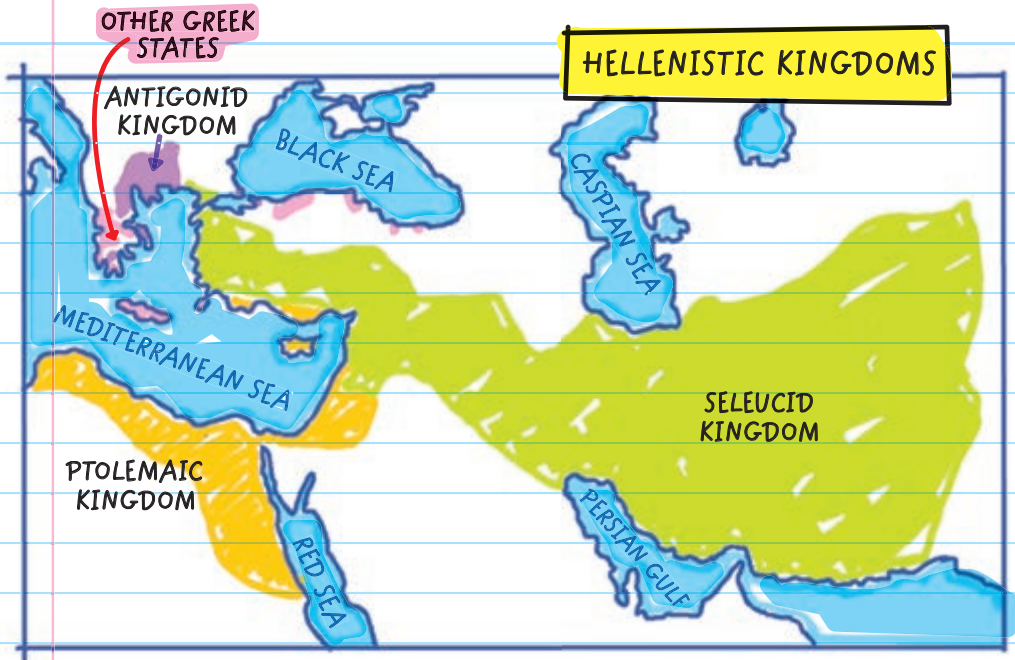
GREEK CULTURE SPREADS LIKE WILDFIRE!

Alexander's conquests spread Greek culture over a large area. He became known as **ALEXANDER THE GREAT**. After his death, Alexander's empire was divided into three

smaller kingdoms: Greece and Macedonia formed into one kingdom, Egypt another, and Persia a third. These kingdoms were called **HELLENISTIC** kingdoms.

HELLENISTIC

the period of expansion of Greek culture and history following Alexander's death until the rise of the Roman Empire in 31 BCE





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Geographically, what is Greece like? How did geography affect the way its people lived?
2. What is an example of a democratic reform practiced in ancient Greece?
3. When were the Dark Ages of Greece, and what happened during these times?
4. Athens and Sparta can be described as oil and water. Explain this comparison. In what ways were these two city-states so different?
5. Who was the "king" of Greek gods? Who was the "queen"? What did the Greeks call this family of gods?
6. Philosophy can be defined as a major system of beliefs and values. Who were two famous Greek philosophers, and what were they known for?
7. What was the "golden age of Greece"? When was it and what was produced during this time?

8. What cultural contributions earned Alexander "the Great" his name?

9. What is a polis?

10. Sophocles, Euripides, and Aeschylus were three major
-----.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Greece is made up of islands and peninsulas, which made it hard for people from different islands to meet or mingle their cultures.
2. One example is how the Greek leader Pericles encouraged direct democracy. Direct democracy was a policy that said that citizens could participate in the government by giving their opinions at assemblies, electing public officials, and helping make decisions about war and foreign policy.
3. The Dark Ages lasted from the 1100s BCE to 750 BCE. It is believed that during this time, trading ended, poverty spread, and people forgot how to write. However, some epic poems were created during this time, including Homer's poems.
4. Athens was characterized by the arts and trade, while Sparta was characterized by its warring culture. Athenians wrote plays, sold goods, talked about philosophy, and were wealthy. Spartans lived for war—boys became soldiers, and girls exercised to be strong enough to produce strong offspring.
5. Zeus was the king of the Greek gods, and Hera was the queen. The family of gods was called the Olympians.

6. Pick two!

- A. Socrates taught people how to think and figure things out by asking questions (the Socratic Method).
- B. Plato taught his students about ethical living that would lead them to moral, happy lives. He wrote *The Republic* and founded an Athenian school called the Academy.
- C. Aristotle studied under Plato. Aristotle believed people's happiness was connected to their behavior; worked to define categories of logic, biology, and physics; wrote about politics; and founded his own school, the Lyceum.

7. The golden age of Greece was from 479 BCE to 431 BCE. Athens grew wealthy from silver and trade and achieved a great deal in religion, philosophy, art, and architecture.

8. Alexander earned the name "Alexander the Great" because his conquests spread Greek culture over Persia, Egypt, and lands beyond the Indus River.

9. A polis was a Greek city-state, which was usually led by aristocrats and military rulers.

10. Playwrights



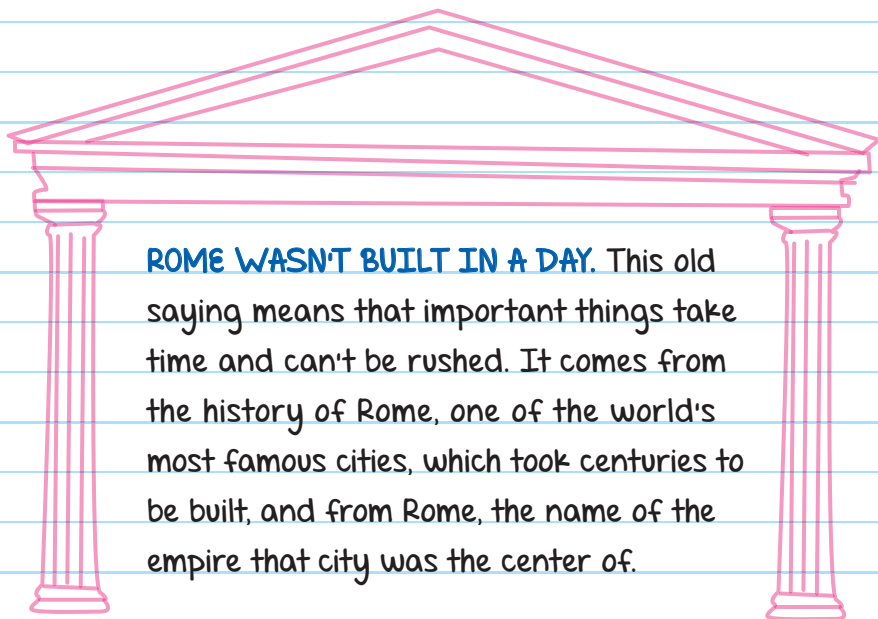
Chapter 9



ANCIENT



ROME



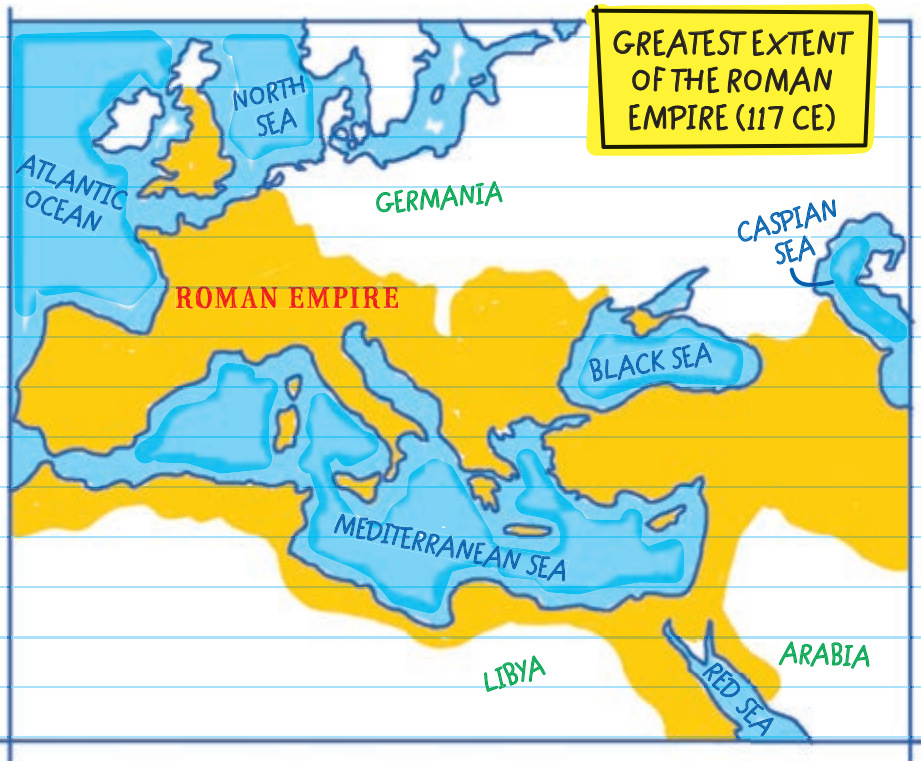
ROME WASN'T BUILT IN A DAY. This old saying means that important things take time and can't be rushed. It comes from the history of Rome, one of the world's most famous cities, which took centuries to be built, and from Rome, the name of the empire that city was the center of.

ANCIENT ROME

The **ETRUSCANS** came into power during the ancient period of Rome around 600 BCE and ruled as kings. The Romans rebelled against the **TYRANT** kings. Eventually, they defeated the Etruscans and formed the **ROMAN REPUBLIC**. In a **REPUBLIC**, citizens with the right to vote select their leader, who then rules as a representative of the people. The Roman Republic also had a senate to propose and vote on new laws.

TYRANT

an all-powerful, cruel ruler



In the early republic, only **PATRICIANS**, or wealthy upper-class men, could sit in the senate. **PLEBEIANS**, or ordinary citizens, couldn't. Laws were enforced by two officials called **CONSULS**, who were elected by citizens. **PRAETORS** served as judges, who settled disputes and arguments about money and contracts.



LAUREL WREATH

A laurel wreath (made from the leaves and branches of a laurel tree) was used to show religious, political, and military significance in ancient Roman society. Roman generals wore laurel wreaths during their victorious marches through Rome. Emperors and gods were shown in art wearing laurel wreaths, too. The Romans used many different kinds of wreaths to show off important life achievements or status changes, but the laurel wreath was reserved for the gods and the most prestigious members of society.

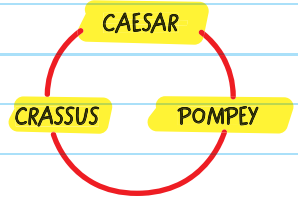
The Romans conquered territories like Carthage in North Africa, as well as Greece, Spain, and Gaul (present-day France). But civil war constantly threatened to tear Rome apart, until an army leader named **JULIUS CAESAR** came along.

JULIUS CAESAR

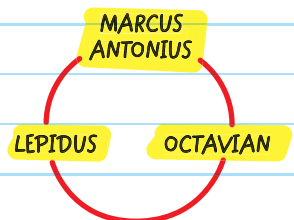
Caesar had military command in Gaul and was a powerful victor of the civil wars. He, along with two other men (Crassus and Pompey), ruled in what is known as the **FIRST TRIUMVIRATE**.

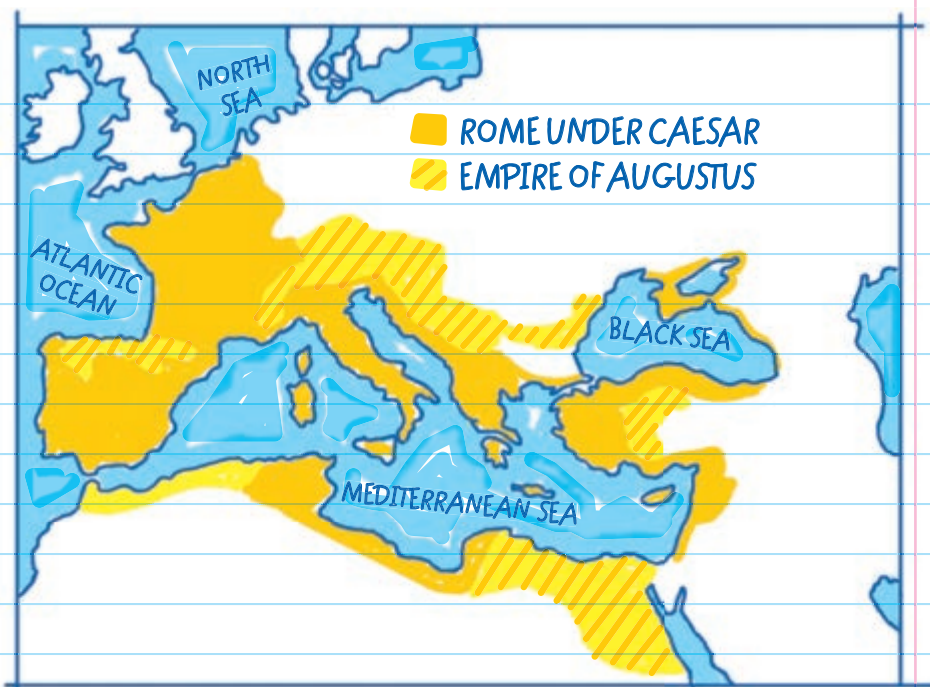
TRIUMVIRATE
a government by three people with equal power; from TRI (three) and VIRATE (of men)

Many Roman senators regretted having this new set of rulers. The senate decided Pompey should lead alone, but Caesar refused (and Crassus had been killed trying to match the military achievements of the other members of the triumvirate). In 45 BCE, Caesar defeated Pompey and took over the Roman government to create his own dictatorship. Caesar tried to fill the senate with his friends. The rest of the senate was less than thrilled. On March 15, 44 BCE (called the **IDES OF MARCH**), Caesar attended a meeting of the senate. The senators pulled knives from their togas and killed him. Civil war followed for thirteen years.



A **SECOND TRIUMVIRATE** was formed to try to restore order: **MARCUS ANTONIUS** (Caesar's right-hand man), **OCTAVIAN** (Caesar's nephew and adopted son), and a rich Roman named **LEPIDUS**, who mostly tried to keep his head down while Antonius and Octavian fought each other.





EMPEROR AUGUSTUS

Through a lot of war and a lot of killing, Caesar's adopted son Octavian took power and was given the title of **AUGUSTUS** ("highly respected") by the senate in 27 BCE.

The republic was over after 500 years, and now Rome had an empire, and Augustus was its first emperor.

The Roman Empire stretched from parts of Europe to Egypt at that time. Most conquered people remained free. Provinces were formed from areas of the empire, each with its own governor and army. Conquered people could become citizens (they also had to pay taxes, though). Augustus was careful to respect the senate to avoid meeting his adoptive father's fate, and he ruled until his death in 14 CE.

BUILDING ROME

The Romans were amazing builders—even if it did take more than a day to build Rome.

IT WAS MORE
LIKE CENTURIES!

One of the most famous Roman buildings is the **COLOSSEUM**, an amphitheater (stadium) where gladiatorial spectacles were held, sometimes with people fighting animals.

The **COLOSSEUM** was as large as a football stadium. It was used for contests between gladiators (professional fighters), for punishing criminals, and even for pretend sea battles.



THE ROMAN FORUM

Roman cities across the empire were known for their public city centers, called FORUMS. They were places where Roman citizens would meet to trade goods, visit religious temples, vote for political leaders, celebrate military achievements, and meet up with their friends. The most important forum in Rome was called the FORUM ROMANUM.



FORUM

ROMANUM

The first Roman emperor, Augustus, wanted to make Rome the most beautiful city in the world. So, starting in 26 BCE, he built elaborate, expensive temples, basilicas, and arches in the Roman Forum. But, by 476 CE, the Roman Empire had officially fallen and the Roman people and invaders took precious stones and metal from the buildings to construct new ones. During the Middle Ages, the Romans forgot what the Roman Forum was used for and it became a cow field! They called it the *Campo Vaccino*. In the 19th century, archeologists excavated the Roman Forum and restored much of the ruins to reflect their former glory.



The Romans also built statues and buildings with arches that allowed them to create larger indoor spaces in these new buildings. They used a crazy newfangled invention called concrete. The Romans also built roads to spread trade and to move their armies. They're also famous for their **AQUEDUCTS**, channels that carried water from the country to the city. They had public toilets and a lot of baths.

WATER RAN DOWN THESE AQUEDUCT CHANNELS.



ROMAN LAW

Many Roman laws are familiar to us now because they've been passed down through the years, like being innocent until proven guilty if you are accused of a crime.

Everything about Rome was built around families, and the government was structured to give support to them. Women, who otherwise didn't have much power, got special benefits if they had three or more kids. Unmarried men and couples with no children didn't get help from the government. Many believe this was the Roman government's way of encouraging population growth. Some also believe that this was a way to keep property in male-controlled families.

ANTONY AND CLEOPATRA

Cleopatra VII was the last independent ruler of Egypt. Julius Caesar took up with the Egyptian queen. When Caesar was assassinated, Marcus Antonius (Mark Antony) married Cleopatra after leaving his wife, Octavian's sister (so that didn't go over too well with Octavian).

The Romans back in Italy thought of Cleopatra as foreign, dangerous, and way too female to be trusted. There are many plays and movies about the romance between Antonius and Cleopatra, including *ANTONY AND CLEOPATRA* by William Shakespeare.



The RISE of CHRISTIANITY

There were many religions in the Roman Empire. At first, most Romans were polytheistic (they worshipped many gods) and believed in a mix of local myths and Greek mythology. But they

changed the names of the gods. For example, the Greek "Zeus" became "Jupiter" ("Zeus" + "pater," which basically means "sky father" in Latin). The Romans allowed people to worship as they wanted, for the most part, but soon Christianity began to stand out as a problem. Roman emperors began to believe that it was a dangerous cult that had broken away from Judaism.

ZEUS	→	JUPITER
HADES	→	PLUTO
POSEIDON	→	NEPTUNE

Christians believed in the teachings of a Jewish man named **JESUS**, who was also called Christ (so his followers are "Christians"). Jesus taught that there was one God (this is called monotheism), who was kind and forgiving. People had to love God and each other, show forgiveness, and lead responsible lives to have an everlasting life. Some Romans believed that the Christians assumed their God was more important than the emperor. Worried that Jesus might lead a revolt against the government, a Roman governor condemned him to death. According to the religious writings called the **GOSPELS**, Jesus returned to life and told his disciples to spread his teachings.

Groups of Christians gathered throughout the empire. One follower, Paul, wrote letters to groups in faraway cities and traveled to spread Jesus's teachings.

Christians grew in such numbers that the Roman government made it a crime to be Christian, and **PERSECUTION** of the Christian people followed. Many died for their religion and became **MARTYRS**. But Christianity continued to spread, and by 300 CE, nearly one in every ten Romans had become Christian.

Christianity is still one of the most popular religions worldwide.

PERSECUTE

to attack, imprison, or harass a people because of their beliefs

MARTYR

a person who is willing to undergo great suffering or die on behalf of a cause or principle

EMPEROR CONSTANTINE

The emperor **CONSTANTINE** also helped spread Christianity. The Roman Empire was weakening, but the Christian Church had gained more authority.

Constantine, who ruled from 312 to 337 CE, converted and became the first Christian emperor. He declared freedom of worship across the empire in his **EDICT OF MILAN**, ending the persecution. He built churches for worship. Constantine moved the capital of the Roman Empire to Byzantium (in what is now Turkey) and called it the New Rome (later Byzantium became Constantinople, and much later it became Istanbul, which is what it's called today). The city was in a strategic location that provided protection for the eastern frontier of the empire.



DECLINE of the ROMAN EMPIRE

The emperor Commodus was eighteen when he began ruling in 180 CE,

and his poor choices back then led

to the beginning of the end for the Roman Empire. He

disregarded the senate and bribed the army to stand by

him. His successors also followed this pattern of bribery

and poor leadership. Rome faced other problems too, like

having to pay **MERCENARY** armies

who had no loyalty to the empire,

battling **INFLATION** (due to making

too many valueless coins), fighting

off **PLAGUES**, and fighting to keep

the land they had conquered. Eventually German invaders

took over the empire in the west.

Constantinople held on as the capital

of the Byzantine Empire.

MERCENARY

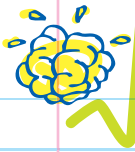
a professional soldier hired to serve in a foreign army

INFLATION

an increase in prices of goods and a fall in the value of money

PLAGUE

a deadly contagious disease



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Who were some of the first rulers of ancient Rome?
2. The Romans are famous for founding the first republic. So what is a republic, anyway?
3. What happened on the Ides of March?
4. Who took over after Caesar died and how was this person's fate different from Caesar's?
5. Under the Roman Empire, architecture and engineering flourished. Describe some important things the Romans created during this time.
6. Initially, were the Romans polytheistic or monotheistic? What is the difference between the two?
7. How did Christianity spread through the Roman Empire?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The Etruscans, who came to power and ruled Rome in 600 BCE
2. A republic is a form of government where citizens vote for their leader, who then represents the people. The Roman Republic had a senate to create new laws, consuls to enforce laws, and praetors to act as judges.
3. On the Ides of March, Julius Caesar was killed by a group of angry senators, and a civil war followed for thirteen years.
4. Octavian (Caesar's adopted son) took over after Caesar died. He respected the senate (to avoid getting stabbed like Caesar), and he ruled for many years.
5. One of the most famous Roman buildings is the Colosseum, an amphitheater for gladiatorial spectacles. The Romans also built statues and buildings with arches, used concrete, built roads to spread trade and move armies, and built aqueducts to move water. They also had public toilets and a lot of baths.
6. At first, most Romans were polytheistic, which means they worshipped many gods. Monotheistic means believing in a single god.

7. Disciples spread Christian teachings. Also, one follower, Paul, wrote letters about Christianity to people far away and also traveled to spread Jesus's teachings.

ANCIENT RELIGIONS and

BELIEF SYSTEM	FOUNDER	GEOGRAPHIC ORIGIN	SACRED TEXT
Christianity	Jesus	Israel	The Bible
Islam	Prophet Muhammad	Mecca	The Quran
Judaism	Prophet Abraham	Israel	The Torah
* Taoism	Laozi	China	None
* Confucianism	Confucius	China	None
Hinduism	(has no specific founder)	India	Upanishads
Buddhism	Siddhartha Gautama	India	None

PHILOSOPHIES at a GLANCE

PLACE OF WORSHIP

KEY IDEAS

Church

- Love God and live responsibly to gain everlasting life through grace.
- Monotheistic

Mosque

- The Five Pillars of Islam: declaration of faith, praying five times a day, giving alms, fasting during Ramadan, and making a pilgrimage to Mecca
- Monotheistic

Synagogue

- Prophets
- Monotheistic

None

- * Taoism is a *philosophy*, not a religion.
- Living a selfless, balanced life in harmony with nature leads to happiness.

None

- * Confucianism is a *philosophy*, not a religion.
- Peace and order in society begin with peace and order in the individual.
- Teachings later became part of training system for the Chinese government.

Temple

- Reincarnation based on karma
- Polytheistic

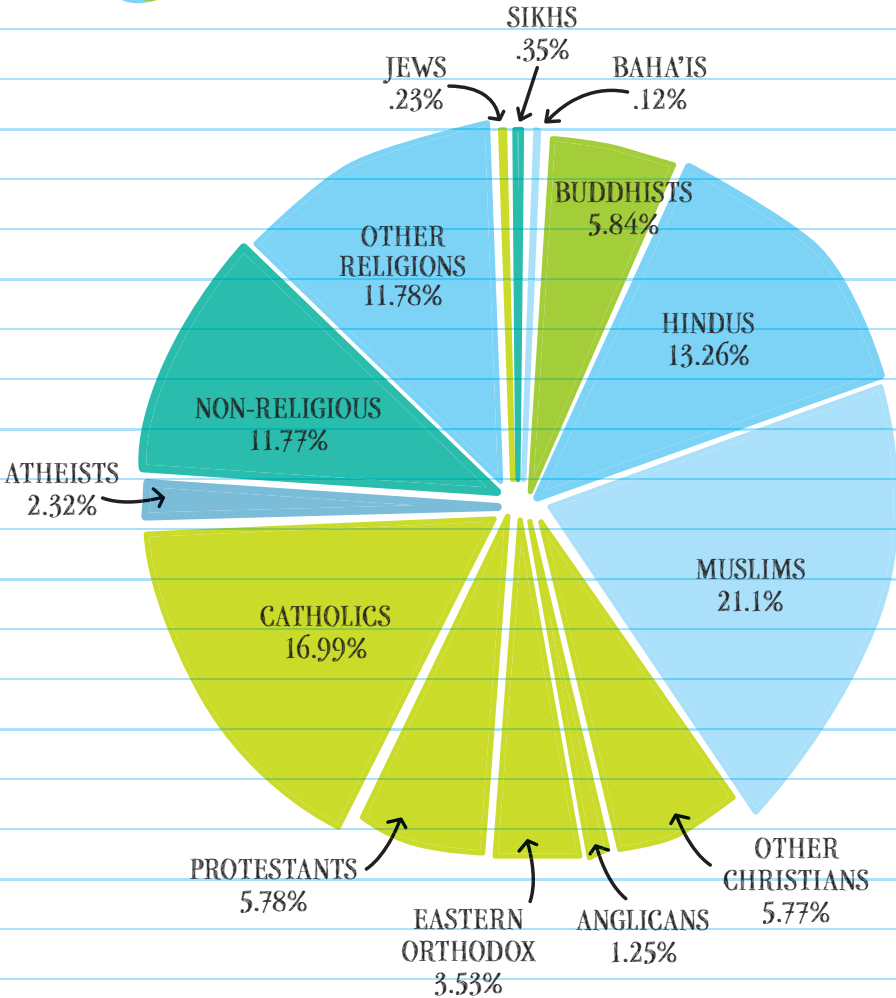
Monastery

- One reaches enlightenment on the meaning of life through meditation.

WORLD RELIGIONS

BY PERCENTAGE

(2007 EST.)



Unit 3

The Middle Ages 400 CE - 1500 CE

The Middle Ages are in the **MIDDLE** of how we look at history's timeline. Too late to be early, too early to be late. The Middle Ages refers to the period from 476 CE (the fall of the Roman Empire) to about 1500. It's also called the **MEDIEVAL AGE**.

← "MEDIEVAL": FROM LATIN,
MEANS "MIDDLE AGE"

★ Chapter 10 ★

The BYZANTINE



EMPIRE

330 CE-1400s

The **BYZANTINE EMPIRE** (also called the **EASTERN ROMAN EMPIRE**) started around 330 CE. Its capital, Constantinople, was a powerful center of trade until its fall in the 1400s.

↙ Eventually renamed **AGAIN**—as Istanbul



JUSTINIAN

One of the greatest Byzantine emperors was **JUSTINIAN**, whose reign began in 527 CE. Roman laws were a mess, written and documented but shuffled around and mixed up and hard to keep track of. Justinian put a team together to sift through the ancient laws and make sense of them. Eventually, the team developed the **JUSTINIAN CODE**, an organized collection of Roman laws with explanations. It was basically a how-to manual on democracy and lawmaking. Most modern European countries used this code as the basis for their own legal systems!

The Byzantines preserved other traditions of Greek and Roman culture. They decorated churches with **FRESCOS**, paintings, and mosaics, and preserved ancient texts in their libraries.

FRESCO
a painting done on
plaster, usually using
watercolors

Justinian's accomplishments were great, but his conquests in Italy, North Africa, Palestine, and Syria (among other places) caused a lot of trouble. The Byzantine Empire became too large to protect, and threats came from all borders. With the rise of Islam around the 600s, unified Arab groups grew throughout the empire, taking over Syria and Palestine.

CHANGES in the BYZANTINE EMPIRE

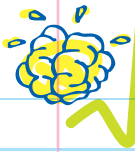
By the 700s, the now-smaller Byzantine Empire, which included only the eastern Balkans and Asia Minor, was both a Greek and Christian state. The Christian Church became known as the Eastern Orthodox Church, where Greek (instead of Latin) was spoken. Around 700 CE, a Byzantine emperor outlawed praying to icons (artistic depictions—such as paintings—of holy figures or sacred events) because he thought it was a violation of God's commandments. The pope outlawed the Byzantine Empire from the church, and the split became final. Two forms of Christianity emerged: the Roman Catholic Church (in the West), and the Eastern Orthodox Church (in the Byzantine Empire).

By the twelfth century, the Byzantine Empire had expanded again and became Europe's greatest center of commerce.

The Byzantines charged taxes on goods that went through Constantinople and quickly became rich.

The **CRUSADES** and growing threats from the Turkish Ottoman Empire eventually got the best of them. In 1453, the Byzantine Empire was taken over by the Turks.

The **CRUSADES** were military missions that lasted almost 200 years in which European Christians tried to get control of the Holy Land of Jerusalem from the Muslims. The Crusades began in the eleventh century, when Byzantine emperor Constantine asked Christian states in Europe to help fight against the Muslim Turks. The Europeans eventually lost this battle.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. _____ was the capital of the Byzantine Empire. What is this city called today?
2. Name the approximate dates of the Middle Ages.
3. How did Constantinople become a wealthy capital?
4. Who was Justinian, and what great contribution did he make to the Byzantine Empire?
5. The fall of the Byzantine Empire in 1453 can be attributed to:
A. attacks from the Christian crusaders
B. attacks from the Turks
C. both
D. neither
6. Describe some elements, besides laws, that the Byzantine Empire retained from Greek and Roman culture.
7. Name the two forms of Christianity that emerged during this time.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Constantinople. It is called Istanbul today.
2. The Middle Ages lasted from approximately 400 to 1500 CE.
3. Constantinople became wealthy through its trade power. The Byzantines became rich by charging taxes on all goods that went through the city.
4. One of the greatest Byzantine emperors was Justinian, because he put together a team to develop the Justinian Code, which was an organized collection of laws with explanations. The laws were derived from ancient Roman laws.
5. C. both
6. The Byzantines continued Greek and Roman cultural traditions by decorating churches with frescoes, paintings, and mosaics. They also preserved ancient texts in libraries.
7. The two forms of Christianity were called the Roman Catholic Church (the Christian Church in the West) and the Eastern Orthodox Church (the Christian Church in the Byzantine Empire).



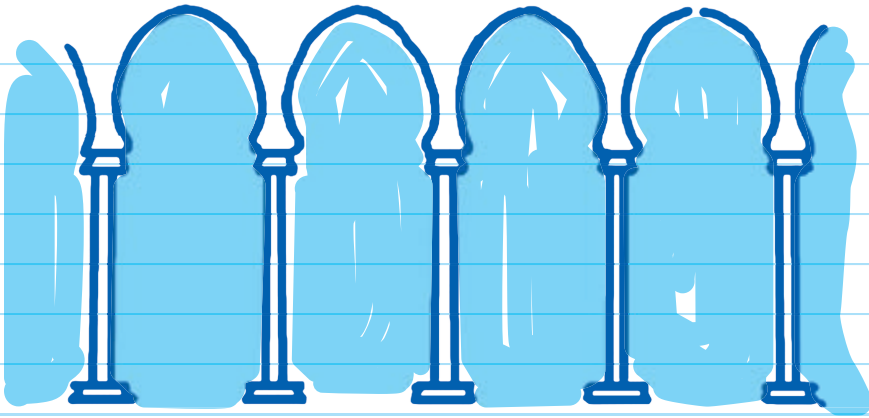
Chapter 11



THE RISE OF ISLAM

IN THE MIDDLE AGES

Around 610 CE, Islam, a new religion, arose in the Arabian Peninsula. According to Islamic belief, the prophet Muhammad heard a message from God. Muhammad was to be God's messenger and spread the teachings of Islam among the people of the Arabian Peninsula. The holy book of Islam, the **QURAN**, contained the rules of the religion. In time, many Muslims—people who accepted Muhammad's teachings—came to believe in the **FIVE PILLARS OF ISLAM**, which formed the foundation of their religion. Muslims must:



MAKE A
TESTIMONY
OF FAITH.

PRAY
5 TIMES
A DAY.

GIVE
TO THE
NEEDY.

FAST
FOR
RAMADAN.

MAKE A
PILGRIMAGE
TO MECCA.

The TEACHINGS of ISLAM

The five pillars state that Muslims must declare that there is one God and Muhammad is his messenger; they must pray five times a day; they must give alms to the needy; they must fast during the month of **RAMADAN**; and they must make a **HAJJ** to the city of **MECCA** (a center of trading and Muslim belief located in present-day Saudi Arabia).

RAMADAN

the ninth month of the Islamic year, during which Muslims fast from sunrise to sunset

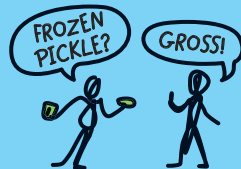
HAJJ

name for the pilgrimage, or religious journey, Muslims take

Use this mnemonic to remember the five pillars of Islam:

Few **P**eople **C**rave **F**rozen **P**ickles =

Faith **P**rayer **C**harity **F**asting **P**ilgrimage

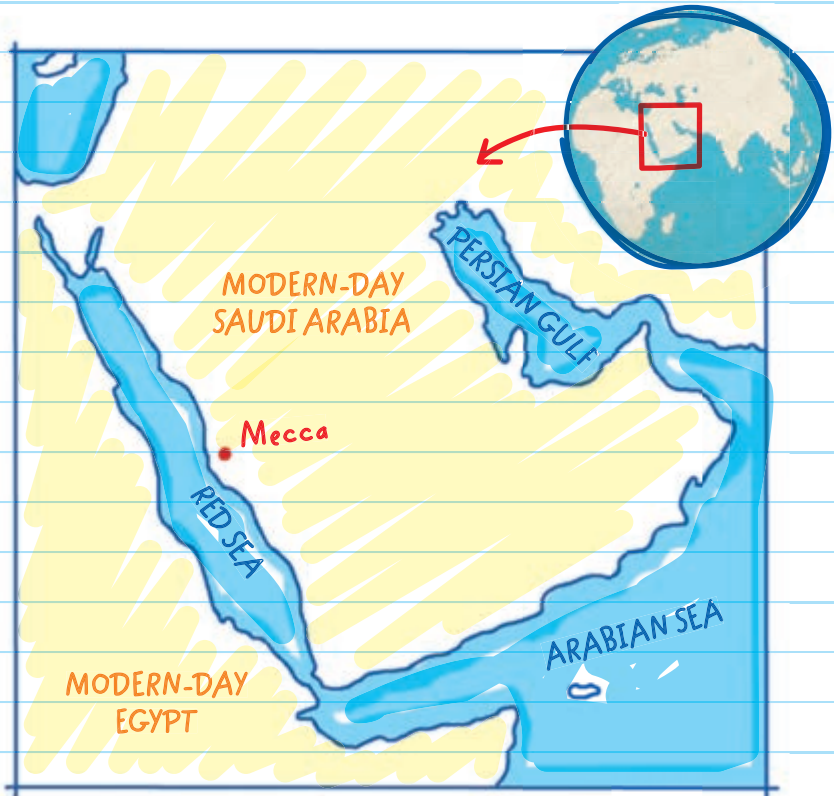


In 656 CE, **'UTHMĀN IBN 'AFFĀN**, the third leader of the Muslim community to rule after Muhammad, was killed. His death divided the Muslim community and led to a **SCHISM** of Islam. One group of Muslims, the **SHIITES**, believed the next ruler should be a descendant of Muhammad. The majority of Muslims, the **SUNNIS**, believed that any religious Muslim man could lead the community and that Muslim scholars (not just descendants of Muhammad) could best explain the teachings of the Quran.

ROUGHLY 85 PERCENT OF MUSLIMS TODAY ARE SUNNIS.

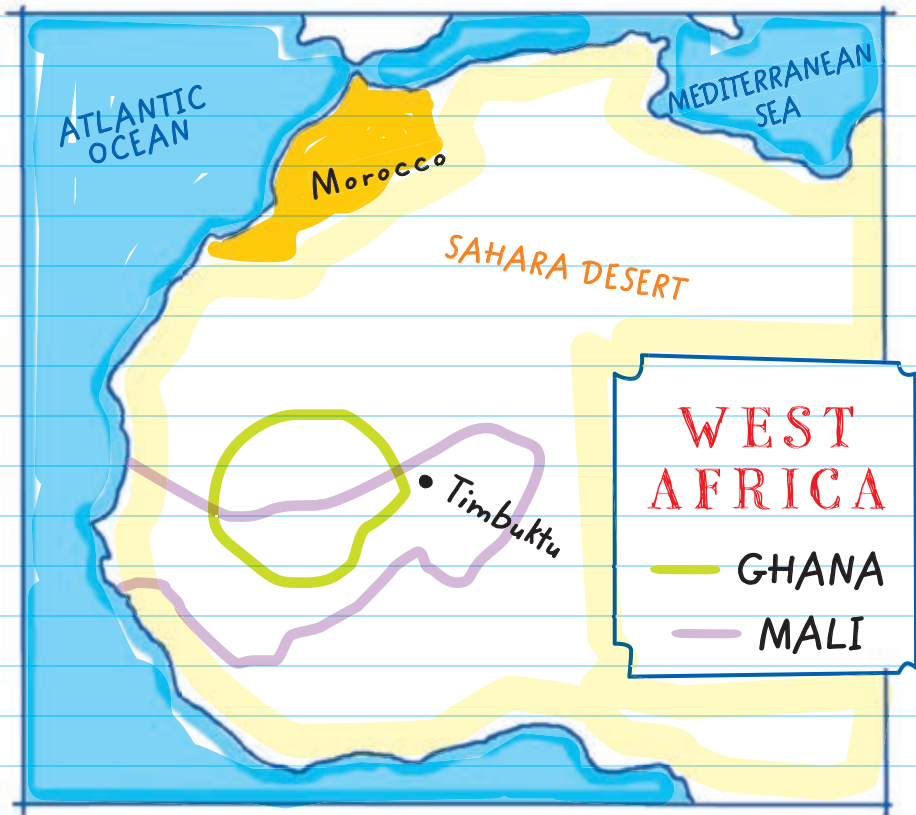
SCHISM

a formal split into opposing parties



The ISLAMIC KINGDOMS of WEST AFRICA

In western Africa, two important commodities were salt and gold. Salt came from the central Sahara, and people from the rain forest in West Africa didn't have any. They wanted it for seasoning and to preserve meat, so they traded gold for salt.

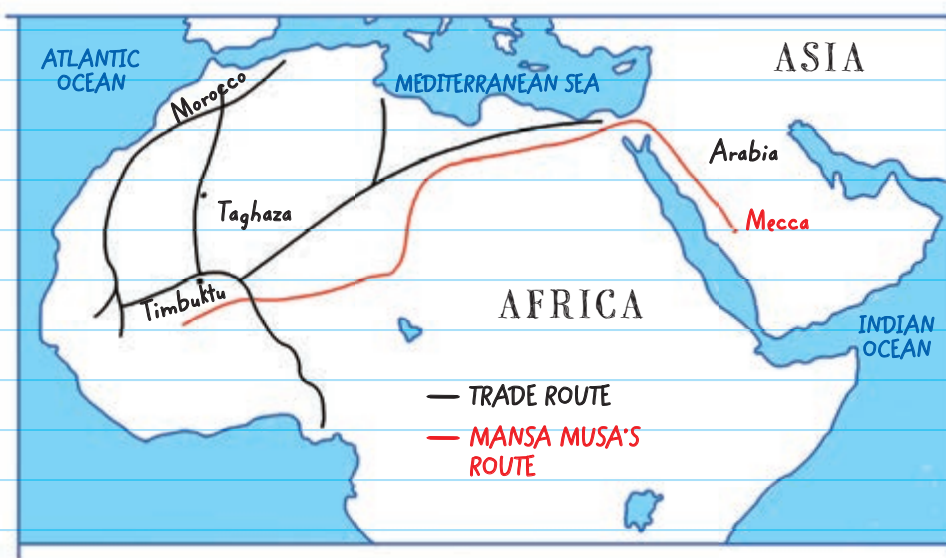


GHANA, a West African kingdom, grew wealthy from this gold and salt trade. This was because the people of Ghana took control of the Sahara's trade routes beginning in 400 CE. This lasted until the 1200s, when a new kingdom, **MALI**, took over.

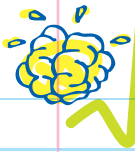
Mali seized control of the salt and gold trade with the help of their leader **SUNDIATA**, who conquered neighboring lands and helped Mali grow rich from trade. His grandnephew, **MANSA MUSA**, continued to expand the kingdom. Mansa Musa ruled from 1312 to 1337 and created a strong central government, dividing the kingdom into provinces ruled by governors. He taxed trade routes, and Mali grew richer. He invited scholars to teach religion, law, math, and medicine and made Mali a great center of knowledge and culture. He built mosques and libraries to make the city of **TIMBUKTU** not only a wealthy trading city but also a center of learning and culture. He also made Islam Mali's official religion and went on a pilgrimage to Mecca, spending so much gold on gifts for his hosts that gold lost value. Sometime after Mansa Musa's death, the kingdom's provinces began to break away, and Mali's power dissolved.

ALSO CALLED
THE **LION KING**.
FOR REAL.





SONGHAI was one of the provinces that separated from Mali and became a major kingdom in its own right. Once a trading center within Mali, it conquered Timbuktu in 1468 and then gained control of trade in gold and salt. In less than 100 years, the Songhai Empire began to crumble. Its people fought each other, and it fell to an army from the North African nation of Morocco.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Who was Muhammad and what is he known for?
2. What is the holy scripture for the Muslim faith?
3. The Muslim house of worship is called a _____.
4. What led to the schism of Islam? What happened after that?
5. What is the main difference between the Sunnis and the Shiites?
6. Who was Mansa Musa? List some of his achievements.
7. Name the three major kingdoms of West Africa.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. According to Islamic belief, Muhammad was a prophet who heard a message from God. God told him to spread the teachings of a new religion, Islam.
2. The Quran is the holy scripture for the Muslim faith.
3. Mosque
4. The killing of the Muslim community leader 'Uthman ibn 'Affān divided the Muslim community and led to a schism of Islam. Islam divided into two groups, the Shiites and the Sunnis.
5. The main difference between the Sunnis and the Shiites is that the Sunnis believed that any religious Muslim man could lead the community. However, the Shiites believed the next ruler should be a descendant of Muhammad.
6. Mansa Musa was a ruler of Mali. He invited scholars to Mali to teach religion, law, math, and medicine. He made Islam Mali's official religion and built mosques and libraries in the city of Timbuktu. He also went on a pilgrimage to Mecca and spent so much gold on gifts for his hosts that gold lost its value.
7. Ghana, Mali, and Songhai

★ Chapter 12 ★

★ ★ ★ EARLY ★ ★ ★ CIVILIZATIONS of the AMERICAS

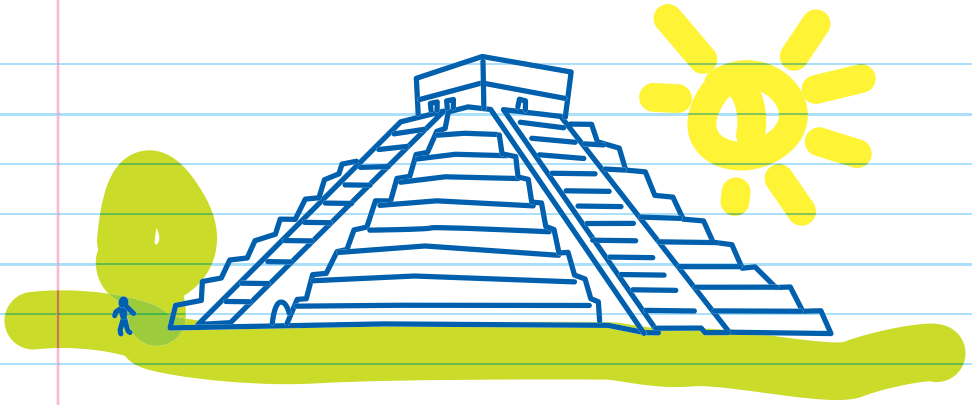


The MAYANS: The FIRST GREAT CIVILIZATION of the AMERICAS (LASTED 2,000 YEARS)

In Central America, at the southern end of the **YUCATÁN PENINSULA** (the southeastern tip of Mexico), were the **MAYANS**. Mayan life was at its peak from about 250 to 900 CE. The Mayans farmed using a **SLASH-AND-BURN** technique: The "slashing" was cutting down trees; the "burning" was setting the tree stumps on fire. The ashes were used as fertilizer for new crops on the cleared land.



The Mayans successfully grew many crops, from beans to papayas to avocados, and most commonly **MAIZE**, or corn. But the slash-and-burn farming technique wore out the soil, and after a few years, farmers had to start over with a new plot of land. Some historians think this is one reason Mayan civilization began to crumble around 900. It may also have been from war, drought, disease, or any number of things.



The Mayans created large temple-pyramids in present-day Guatemala, El Salvador, Honduras, and Mexico.

They topped the pyramids with shrines to the gods and surrounded them with other temples and palaces.

The **MAYANS**, **AZTECS**, and **INCAS** were all polytheistic.

The Mayans believed all life came from the hands of divine powers. They sometimes held festivals in honor of the gods and offered the gods human sacrifices. Planning religious festivities was helped by their development of a calendar based on the seasons. They also developed a system of hieroglyphics, writing in books made from the bark of trees.

Another incredible achievement of the Mayans: the cultivation of **CHOCOLATE**! They grew cacao trees and made chocolate beverages. They even used cocoa beans as money in markets!



The AZTECS: MESOAMERICA (MEXICO and CENTRAL AMERICA)

In 1325, the **AZTECS** built their capital, **TENOCHTITLÁN**, on a swampy island in the middle of Lake Texcoco in what is now Mexico City. They chose this island based on an ancient prophecy that said that the Aztecs would find the site of a great city where an eagle perched on a cactus growing out of a rock. The Aztecs believed they were following their god's orders when they saw this occur at this site.

TENOCHTITLÁN MEANS "PLACE OF THE PRICKLY PEAR CACTUS."



The Aztecs conquered nearby lands and created an empire stretching from the Gulf of Mexico to the Pacific Ocean. Tenochtitlán was one of the largest cities of its time. This island city was connected to land by **CAUSEWAYS**. Aqueducts were built to bring in fresh water. Canals were used to transport produce to the city's marketplaces. Schools and large temples were constructed, and a yearly calendar was created. Hieroglyphics were used for record keeping.

CAUSEWAY

raised streets of hard earth

The Aztecs worshipped a sun god because they believed this god would bring good harvests—and they also believed that the sun god would rise only with the strength from human blood.

The Aztecs faithfully sacrificed humans for the sun god. To them, a few deaths were worth it to protect all their people—no sun = no crops and hungry people. The Aztecs made it easier on themselves by sacrificing people from other tribes: Prisoners from battles and conquests were the most common sacrificial offerings. However, the constant need to capture new prisoners weakened the empire and caused other tribes to hate the Aztecs.



In 1978—hundreds of years after Mexico City was built—major **EXCAVATIONS** began in Tenochtitlán, uncovering ruins like the Templo Mayor (Tenochtitlán's main temple complex). A number of artifacts were also discovered.

EXCAVATION
unearthing; digging

In 1519, the Spanish conquistador (or conqueror) **HERNÁN CORTÉS** arrived. He and his troops fought the Aztecs with the help of tribes that hated the Aztecs. By 1521, the battles and the diseases the Spanish had brought made it too hard to keep fighting. **MONTEZUMA**, the Aztec emperor, surrendered, and the Spanish built Mexico City over the city of Tenochtitlán.

The INCAS: SOUTH AMERICA

Around 1200 CE, the **INCAS** settled into a small village high in the Andes Mountains called **CUZCO** (which means "center") in what is now Peru. Two hundred years of conquering other people and their lands led to the creation of an empire that was home to as many as 12 million inhabitants and stretched 2,500 miles (4,023 kilometers) from one end of South America to the other, crossing the Andes Mountains. Cuzco would eventually become the capital of this empire.

Keeping order in an empire so populated and spread out was challenging, so the Incas developed a **CENSUS** to record who worked on which projects (such as mining and road building) and to make sure everyone paid taxes. The Incas kept track of things by using a **QUIPU**, a group of knotted strings in which each knot stood for something, like death, harvest, birth, etc. Colors were used to show different events, and knots were different sizes to show quantity. Since the Incas didn't have a written language, messages were sent by runners across the empire carrying quipus to keep the government up to date. Runners often ran up to 20 miles per day.

CENSUS

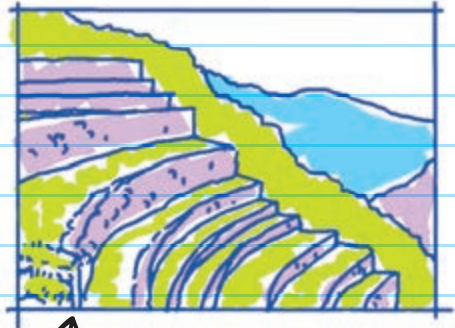
an official count of the population

The U.S. has a census too: Every 10 years, it counts and surveys each person (including YOU) to note changes in the American population and make decisions about federal funding.

The Incas are known for their mountaintop buildings, huge walls, and thousands of miles of paved roads. Many of their buildings still stand today, created with only stone hammers and bronze chisels.

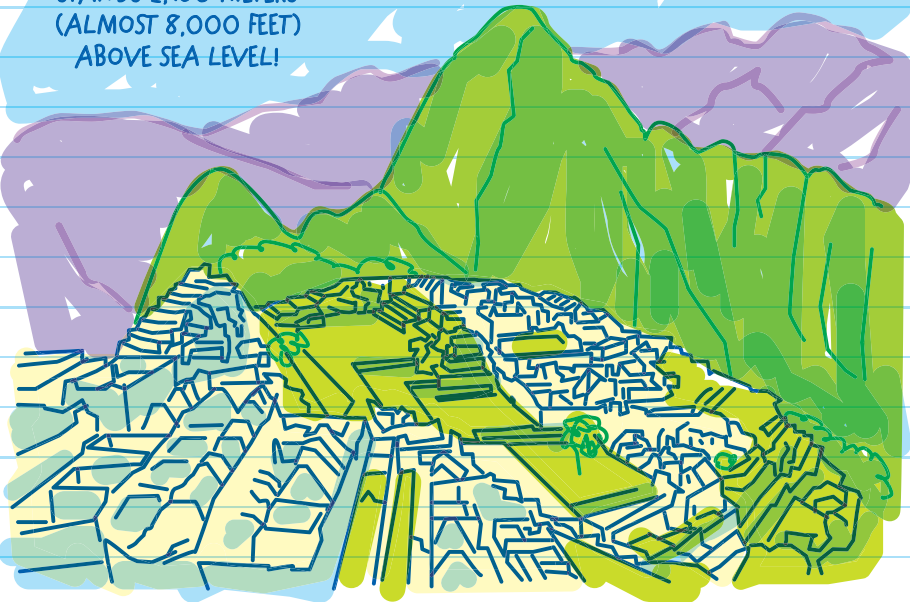
For example, **MACHU PICCHU** is a 15th century Incan estate you can even walk around in. The Incas built **TERRACES** for farming, and

they built aqueducts to carry water to their farms.



TERRACES
ledges cut into the mountainside to hold soil in place for farming

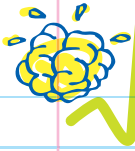
STANDS 2,430 METERS
(ALMOST 8,000 FEET)
ABOVE SEA LEVEL!



MACHU PICCHU

In the 1530s, the powerful Incan Empire ended with the arrival of a Spanish conquistador named **FRANCISCO PIZARRO**. The Incas were just coming out of a civil war when Pizarro arrived. The Spanish had horses, iron, and weapons unlike anything the Incas had ever seen, and they brought diseases like smallpox and measles, which the Incas had never before encountered; these factors helped the Spaniards take over.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did the Incas keep track of everyone who lived in their massive empire?
2. How was Francisco Pizarro able to conquer the Incan Empire?
3. Why did the Aztecs build their capital in the middle of a swamp?
4. In what ways were the Aztecs similar to the Mayans?
5. Imagine you are a Mayan farmer. Explain how your special farming technique works. What kind of crops do you grow?
6. How did the Mayans appease their gods?
7. What trait did the Mayans, Aztecs, and Incas have in common?
 - A. They spoke the same language.
 - B. They were polytheistic.
 - C. All three built pyramids.
 - D. B and C
8. Which civilization lasted the longest, the Mayan, Aztec, or Incan?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The Incas used a quipu, a series of knotted strings which symbolized different things they needed to keep track of, like births, deaths, and harvests.
2. Francisco Pizarro was able to conquer the Incan Empire in the 1530s with horses, iron, and weapons that the Incas had never seen. They also brought diseases that quickly made the Incas sick, which weakened them.
3. The Aztecs built their capital in the middle of a swamp because they believed they were following their god's orders, which said an eagle would perch on a cactus growing out of a rock in the place where they had to build.
4. The Mayans and Aztecs created large temples. They also offered human sacrifices to the gods, developed a calendar, and created a system of hieroglyphics.
5. As a Mayan farmer, I would use a slash-and-burn technique of cutting down trees and setting the tree stumps on fire. I would then use the ashes as fertilizer. I would grow beans, papayas, avocados, and maize.

6. The Mayans appeased gods with festivals and human sacrifices.
7. B. They were polytheistic.
8. The Mayan civilization

★ Chapter 13 ★

MEDIEVAL



INDIA

The DELHI SULTANATE

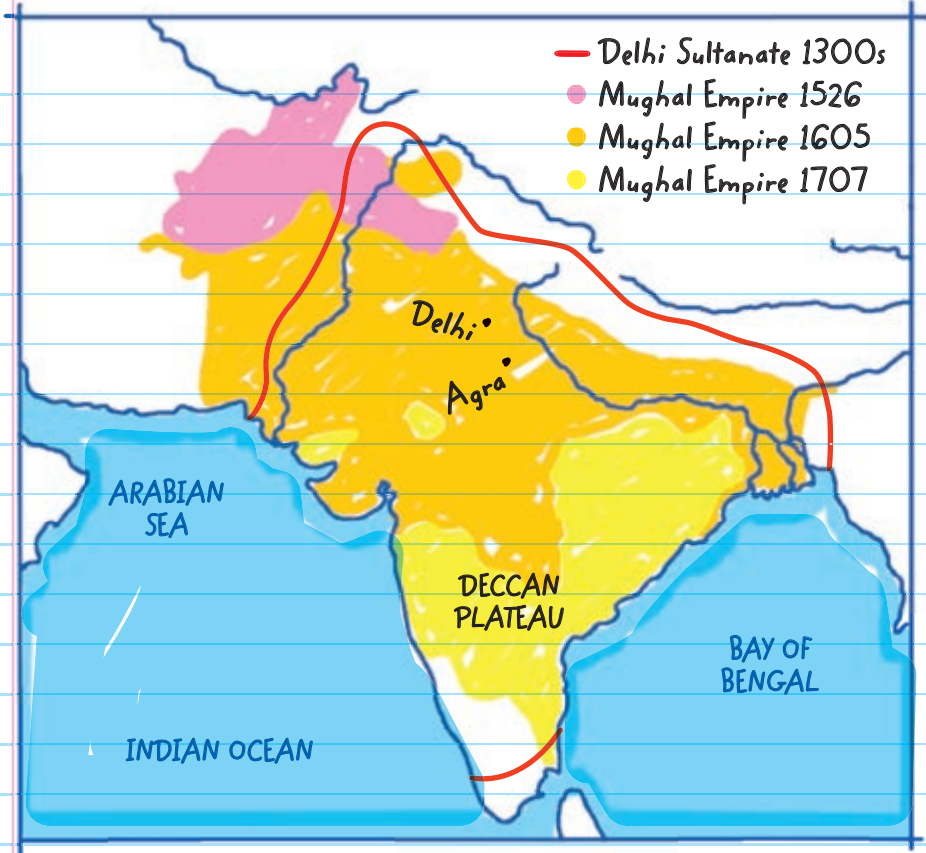
In 1398 CE, a brutal Turkish conqueror named **TAMERLANE** (also called **TIMUR THE LAME**) → invaded northern India, which was under the rule of the Bahmani **SULTANATE**.



SULTANATE
state or country
ruled by a sultan

Tamerlane, who had previously conquered lands in Russia and the Mediterranean, was a **MONGOL**, a nomad from a region north of China. The Mongols, a nomadic warrior group, captured India's capital city of **DELHI** and stole pearls, rubies, and diamonds. They took slaves and killed roughly 100,000 Hindu prisoners. Delhi





was weak from the attack, and the **SULTAN's** power was shattered. Still, sultans held on to control of parts of the country for hundreds of years.

This period of time is known as the **DELHI SULTANATE**.

SULTANS
Muslim rulers who
raided India as early
as 1000 CE

BABUR

The Delhi Sultanate ended when the Mongol prince **BABUR** brought a small army to fight both the sultan's troops and his 100 elephants. The elephants may have seemed like a



huge advantage, but the Mongols had another weapon: cannons. Babur quickly won control of Delhi. His reign, which began in 1526, marks the beginning of the **GREAT MUGHAL (MONGOL) EMPIRE OF INDIA**. The Mughals largely kept control of India until 1857.

AKBAR

Babur's grandson **AKBAR** came to power in 1556 at age fourteen and became the greatest Mughal leader of India. Akbar set up studios in his court for painters. He liked poets too, even though he didn't know how to read or write. He invited scholars to discuss religion. Akbar was Muslim, but he allowed the Hindu people to practice their religion freely. This made him a popular emperor. Also helpful: He gave out government jobs based on merit instead of religion or caste. Akbar ruled peacefully for 49 years.

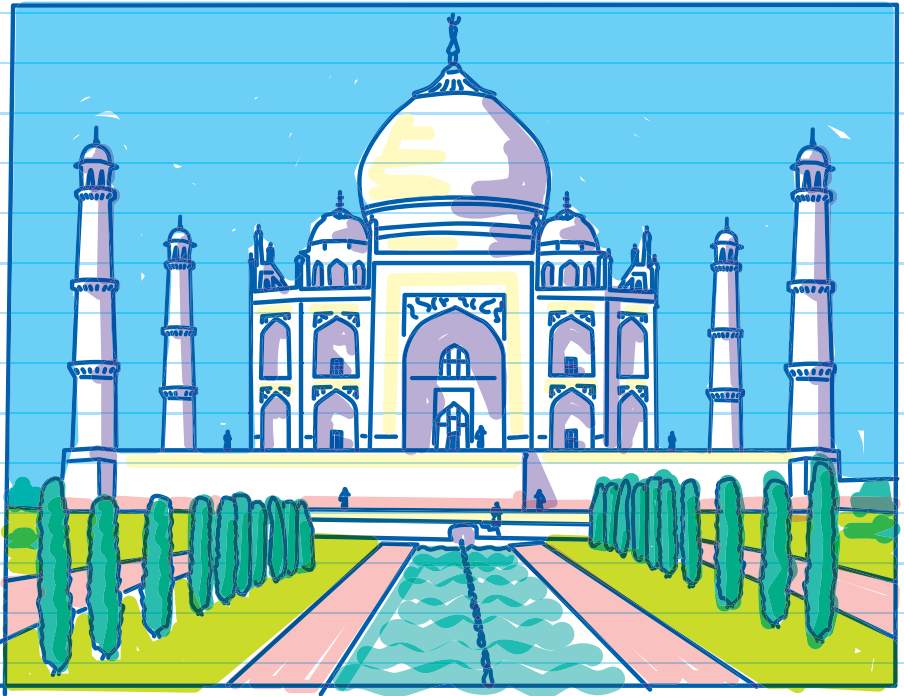
Remember Akbar
and the Mughal Empire
with this rhyme:
*The Mughal Empire was
a powerful state
under the fair rule
of Akbar the Great!*

SHAH JAHAN and AURANGZEB

After Akbar died, the empire began to have some problems. Akbar's grandson **SHAH JAHAN** (reigned 1628 to 1658) kept

the political system built by earlier Mughal rulers. He also expanded the empire to the Deccan Plateau and beyond.

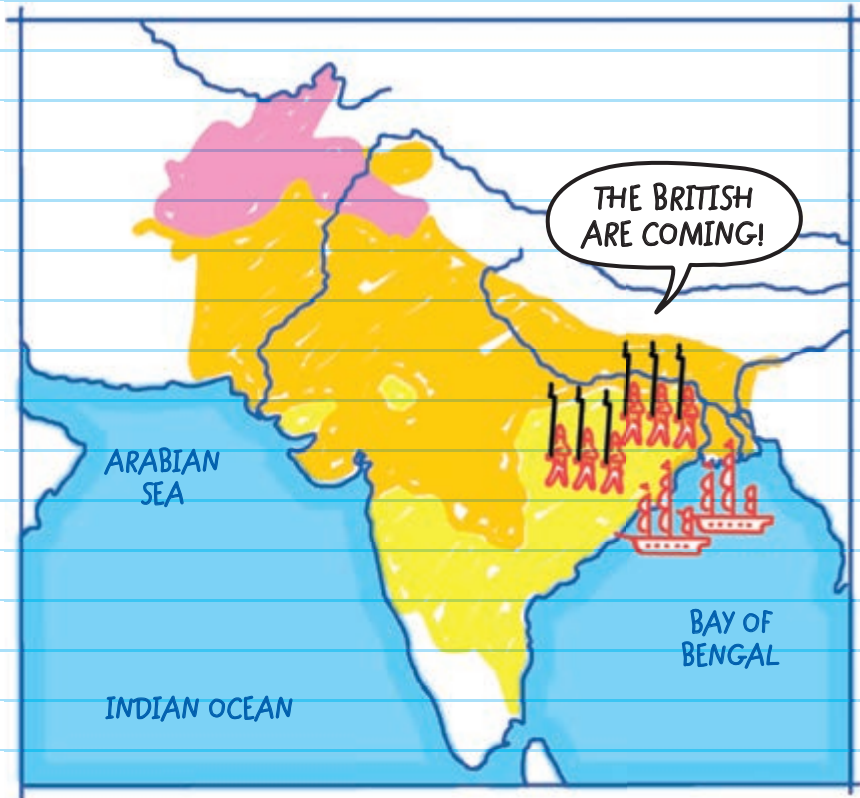
Shah Jahan had some major money problems, though. The treasury was nearly empty when he started ruling, and building expensive, lavish structures like the **TAJ MAHAL** didn't help. Many of Jahan's subjects lived in poverty as a result of his spending.

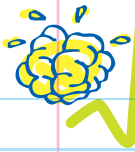


In 1631, Shah Jahan built the **TAJ MAHAL** in the city of Agra as a tomb for his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. The tomb is considered a great work of architectural art but was so expensive to build that Shah Jahan had to raise taxes to pay for it.

After Jahan's death, his son **AURANGZEB** spent the empire's money on something less beautiful than the Taj Mahal: almost constant war. He tried to force Hindus to abandon their religion and convert to the Muslim religion. Following his death in 1707, the empire fractured into smaller kingdoms.

After several weak rulers, the Great Mughal Empire of India finally ended in 1857 when the remains of the empire were taken over by the British.






CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Who were the Mongols and from what land did they come?
2. Who was Tamerlane, and what is he known for?
3. How was the Delhi Sultanate eventually overthrown, and by whom?
4. Akbar is often referred to as "Akbar the Great." Why do you think he had this nickname?
5. Shah Jahan built an expensive and impressive building. What is it called, and why did he build it?
6. Why do you think the Mughal Empire flourished under Akbar but fell apart after Aurangzeb?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The Mongols were nomads from a region north of China. 
2. Tamerlane was a Turkish Mongol who conquered lands in Russia and the Mediterranean and then invaded northern India. His Mongolian fighters captured Delhi, stole treasure, took slaves, and killed roughly 100,000 Hindu prisoners.
3. Mongol prince Babur brought an army and cannons to overthrow the Delhi Sultanate.
4. Akbar was called Akbar the Great because he came to power at age fourteen and ruled peacefully for 49 years. He also supported painters, poets, and scholars of different religions. He was Muslim but practiced tolerance and allowed Hindus to practice their religion freely. He also hired people for government jobs based on merit instead of religion or caste.
5. Shah Jahan built the Taj Mahal in the city of Agra as a tomb for his wife, Mumtaz Mahal.
6. The Mughal Empire fell because Aurangzeb spent the empire's money on war and he showed no tolerance of other religions and tried to force Hindus to convert to the Muslim religion.

★ Chapter 14 ★

THE GOLDEN AGE OF CHINA

ROUGHLY 600 CE-1600 CE

China's middle age was a highly successful one, even golden, some say. It was a period of unification, commercial and urban development, innovation, and education.

The SUI DYNASTY

After the Han dynasty ended in 220 CE, the next major dynasty in China was the **SUI** dynasty. The Sui ruled from 581 CE to 618 CE. In a brief 37 years they united northern and southern China for the first time in centuries. This was in part from the building of the **GRAND CANAL**, which connected

ALSO KNOWN AS THE YELLOW RIVER

northern and southern China through the Huang and Yangtze Rivers. The canal helped transport large supplies of rice and goods across China. But the emperor **SUI YANGDI** was harsh in his rule, forcing people to work on the canal and charging high taxes to support his extravagant lifestyle. Thousands of workers died building the Grand Canal. Rebellion led to the emperor's murder in a coup, ending the dynasty.



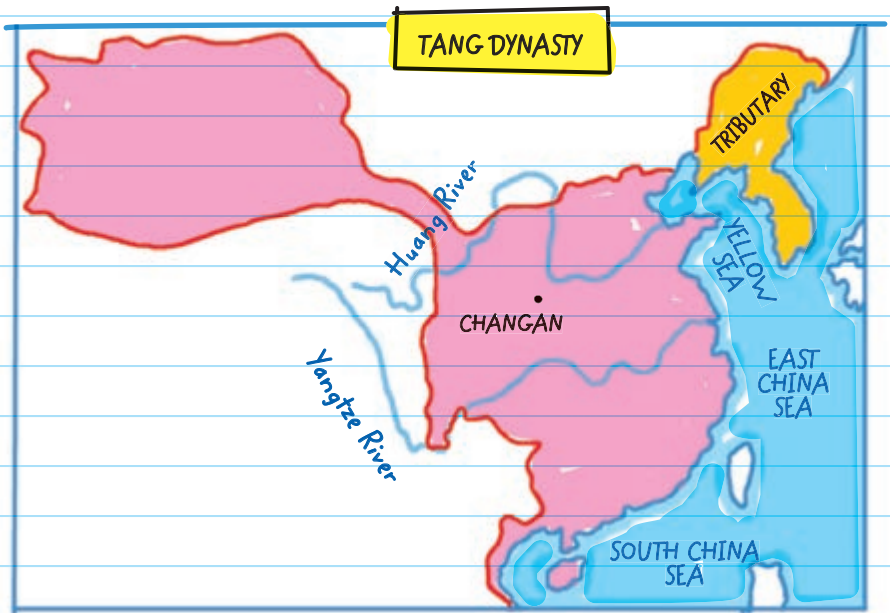
The TANG DYNASTY

After the Sui, the **TANG** dynasty ruled for nearly 300 years (from 618 CE to 907 CE). The Tang expanded Chinese control westward into Central Asia. At the time, the capital city **CHANGAN** was the largest city in the entire world, with a population of about 1 million people. (That counted as a huge city during that stretch of time.)



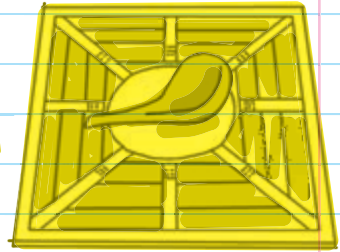
GUNPOWDER WAS ALSO INVENTED DURING THE TANG DYNASTY.

Under the Tang dynasty, the economy prospered. Ruler **TANG TAIZONG**, who rose to power in 626 CE, strengthened political peace between northern and southern China by promoting the teachings of Confucius. He hired officials trained in Confucian philosophy and gave land to the peasants who farmed it. Rice was a big crop in China.



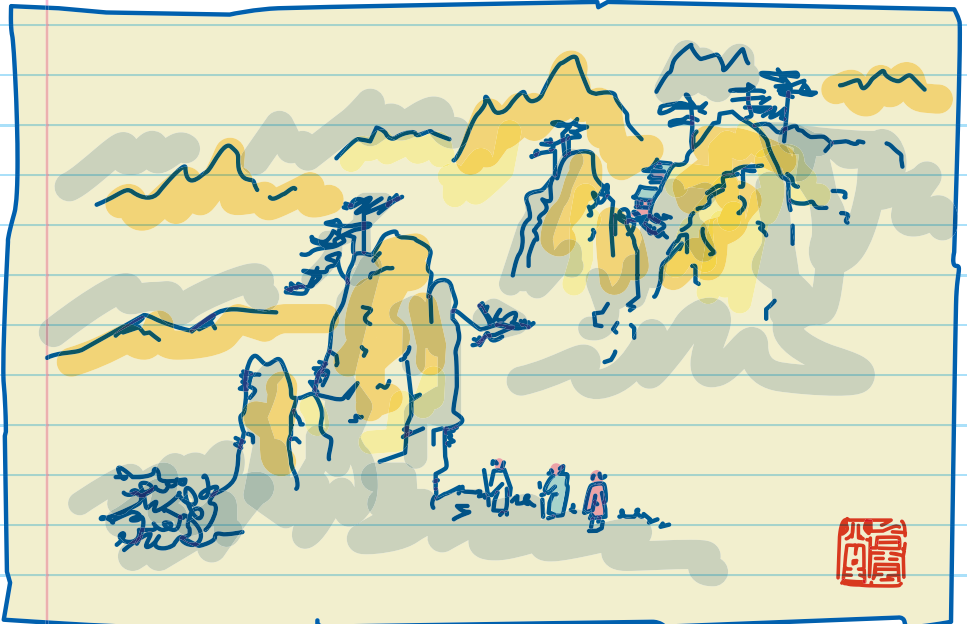
The SONG DYNASTY

Fighting within the Tang leadership eventually led to its demise. The next dynasty of the golden age of China was the **SONG** dynasty, which ruled from 960 to 1279. It was during this dynasty that the first magnetic compass came into use.



The Song continued to improve the Chinese system of government. Like the Mughal ruler Akbar, they hired government workers based on merit rather than family connections. Officials had to take exams to prove their aptitude (ability).

New irrigation systems and other improvements created food surpluses. This gave people more time to try new things. Music and art were encouraged, and some of the first Chinese landscape paintings were created during this time. Peaceful landscapes of water, rocks, and plants were painted on silk, another Chinese specialty. Around 1045, the Chinese invented movable type, which allowed books to be printed and distributed more easily. More people, including



women, learned to read. Poetry flourished, as well as books about medicine and religion, which helped educate the people.

The Chinese were the first to produce porcelain, a type of ceramic. This is why porcelain is sometimes referred to as "china."

The golden age of China lasted until the Mongols came to power in the late 1200s. The Mongol conqueror **KUBLAI KHAN** defeated the last heirs to the Song dynasty by 1279. The Mongol government lasted until 1368, when a Chinese peasant uprising ended Mongol rule.



KUBLAI KHAN

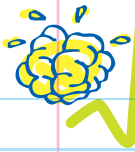
Han
206 BCE-220 CE

Tang
618 CE-907 CE

A TIMELINE OF DYNASTIES DURING THE GOLDEN AGE OF CHINA

Sui
581 CE-618 CE

Song
960 CE-1279 CE



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. The Grand Canal was a major achievement of:
A. the Sui dynasty
B. the Tang dynasty
C. the Song dynasty
D. the Huang dynasty
2. Under which dynasty did China enjoy an exceptional period of cultural achievement?
3. Under which dynasty were the teachings of Confucius used to create political peace between northern and southern China?
4. What was one way the Song improved the Chinese system of government?
5. What was so "golden" about the "golden age of China"? Why did it earn this nickname?
6. When and why did the golden age of China come to an end?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



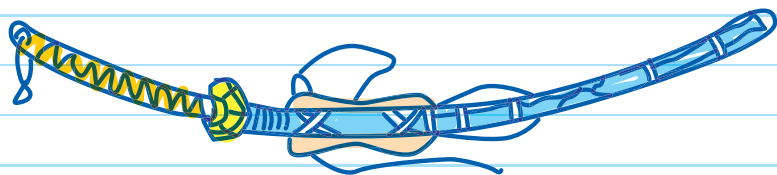
1. A. the Sui dynasty
2. During the Song dynasty, China had a lot of cultural achievements—the magnetic compass and movable type to print books. They also created new music and art, and landscapes painted on silk.
3. The ruler Tang Taizong of the Tang dynasty used the teachings of Confucius to strengthen political peace between northern and southern China.
4. The Song improved the government by hiring government workers based on merit and test scores instead of family connections.
5. The golden age of China was "golden" because many important inventions and advancements were made. The Song improved the government by hiring based on merit. New technology with irrigation improved food cultivation and created food surpluses. Therefore, there was leisure time and the Chinese created new music and art, and painted landscapes on silk. The Chinese invented gunpowder, the magnetic compass, and movable type to print books, which allowed more people to learn to read, including women. More books helped educate more people.
6. The golden age of China lasted until the Mongols came to power in the late 1200s and got rid of the last Song emperor by 1279.

★ Chapter 15 ★

MEDIEVAL



JAPAN



Unlike China, with its massive landmass, Japan is a small country formed by an **ARCHIPELAGO** off the coast of the Asian mainland. It is located in the Pacific Ocean about 500 miles (805 kilometers) from China and 100 miles (161 kilometers) from Korea. Four main islands make up Japan and bring its total land area to roughly 146,000 square miles (234,964 square kilometers). ← ABOUT THE SIZE OF THE STATE OF MONTANA

ARCHIPELAGO
a chain of islands

Japan's history has been greatly affected by being an island nation. Japan would face its share of outsiders trying to get into that bustling string of islands, but the islands would help it stay isolated from mainland Asia and develop its unique culture.



The NARA PERIOD

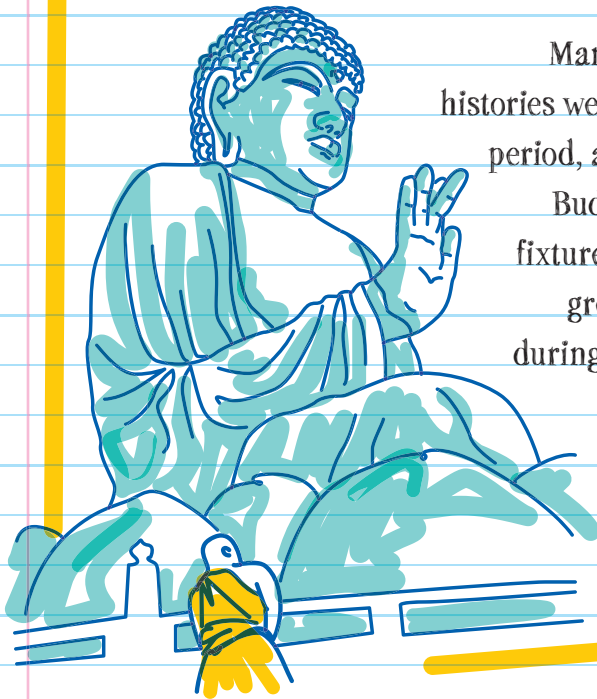
The **NARA PERIOD** of Japan's medieval history began around 710 CE, when a new capital was established in the ancient Japanese city of Nara by the **EMPRESS GEMMEI**.

Subsequent emperors began to use the title "Son of Heaven," but in reality held little power. **ARISTOCRATS**, wealthy land-owning families, kept taxes from their lands for themselves.

The government needed tax revenue; without it, the government couldn't make useful changes and looked weak.

ARISTOCRAT

someone who is from a privileged social class; a noble



Many of the first national histories were written during this period, and literature thrived.

Buddhism also became a fixture in society, and many great temples were built during this time—including the Great Buddha Diabatsu, which is roughly 52 feet (16 meters) high.

The HEIAN PERIOD

In 794 CE, the emperor moved the capital from Nara to

HEIAN-KYO (present-day Kyoto), marking the beginning of the **HEIAN**

PERIOD. This period lasted

until 1185. The emperor ruled in name only; the real power belonged to the **FUJIWARA** clan, a powerful family that ruled the lands. Nobles with large estates hired peasants to work for them in a system called **FEUDALISM**. For protection,

nobles hired their own armies, made up of warriors called **SAMURAI**. Samurai took an oath to follow a strict set of rules and a code of honor called **BUSHIDO**. Honor was more important than wealth or even life itself. Samurai were expected to be fearless in the face of the enemy and to commit ritual suicide rather than ever surrender.

The samurai eventually gained power and formed their own clans. In 1192,

the emperor chose one clan leader, **MINAMOTO YORITOMO**, as the new **SHOGUN**, or supreme military leader, of all



FEUDALISM

a social system in which nobility held land for the royalty in exchange for loyalty and military service; in exchange for protection, warriors were also allowed to live on these lands. Peasants also lived on these lands in exchange for their work on farms and goods.

SHOGUN

a commander-in-chief in feudal Japan; passed down military power to heirs

Japan. Yoritomo set up the **KAMAKURA SHOGUNATE**, a series of military dynasties that would rule Japan from 1192 to 1333. Paper, porcelain, and iron markets grew, along with foreign trade with Korea and China.

The TOKUGAWA PERIOD

The Japanese defeated the Mongol invaders in the 1200s, and it was another 300 years before foreigners got anywhere near Japan. In the mid-1500s, the Japanese began trading with the West, but European influence didn't last long. Under **TOKUGAWA IYASU**, the founder and first shogun of the **TOKUGAWA** shogunate, Japan outlawed Christianity and trade with foreigners—he worried that Europeans would monopolize its trade routes. As a result, Japan was cut off from the outside world for over 200 years.

RELIGION IN EARLY AND MEDIEVAL JAPAN

According to the ancient Japanese **SHINTO** religion, ancestor and nature spirits are always near. The early Japanese people believed in mountain, river, and tree spirits called **KAMI**. They believed their ancestors' spirits blew in the air around them. Shinto became tied to the sacredness of Japan and its emperor.

Another religion that became popular in Japan is **BUDDHISM**. Buddhist monks had come from China to Japan around 500 CE.

One type of Buddhism, **ZEN**, became popular with Japanese aristocrats. Zen Buddhism's beliefs about self-discipline were even integrated into the bushido of the samurai.

SHINTO MEANS "THE WAY OF THE GODS."

A **HAIKU** is a three-line poem that developed during the Tokugawa shogunate in Japan. The first and last lines are each five syllables long, and the middle line is seven syllables long, like this:

Medieval Japan
So many brave samurai
Firm in their beliefs



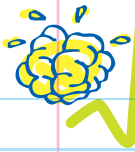
Nara PERIOD
710 CE-794 CE

Kamakura Shogunate PERIOD
1192 CE-1333 CE

A TIMELINE OF MEDIEVAL JAPAN

Heian PERIOD
794 CE-1192 CE

Tokugawa PERIOD
1600 CE-1868 CE



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Describe Japan's geography. What in particular affected the country's history?
2. Who held the *real* political power during the Nara period?
3. How did feudalism work in Japan?
4. What was the code of the bushido?
5. Between 1192 and 1333, the Japanese military leader with greater power than the emperor was called the:
A. shogun
B. samurai
C. bushido
D. nara
6. What are the Shinto religion's main beliefs?
7. Who outlawed Christianity and trade with foreigners in Japan? Why?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Japan is a small country formed by an archipelago—a chain of islands—which helped to keep it isolated from outside influences.
2. Aristocrats held most of the real power and kept all the tax revenue during the Nara period.
3. Feudalism in Japan was a system where powerful families of nobles hired peasants to work on their large estates. Also, nobles hired their own armies of samurai warriors for protection.
4. The code of the bushido was a set of rules that samurai took an oath to follow. Samurai were expected to act honorably, follow the code, be fearless in the face of the enemy, and to commit suicide instead of ever surrendering.
5. A. shogun
6. According to the Shinto religion, spirits of nature and ancestors are always near.
7. Tokugawa Ieyasu outlawed Christianity and trade with foreigners because he was worried that Europeans would take over Japanese trade routes.

★ Chapter 16 ★

EUROPE

★ ★ ★ IN THE ★ ★ ★

MIDDLE

AGES

476 CE TO THE 13TH, 14TH, OR 15TH CENTURY CE
DEPENDING ON WHOM YOU ASK WHEN THE RENAISSANCE BEGAN

The Middle Ages in Europe includes the Age of Chivalry (the 1200s to 1400s). This was a time of knights and ladies-in-waiting, of nobles and kings. But it was also a time of hardship for peasants and farmers, and a time of struggle between church and state.

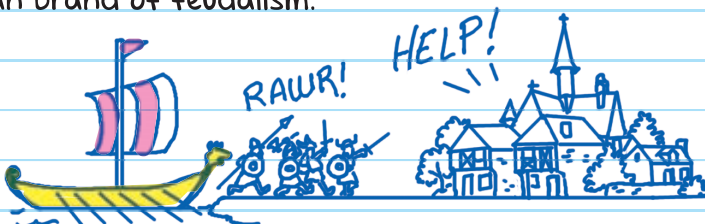
CHARLEMAGNE

A GERMANIC-SPEAKING PEOPLE THAT DOMINATED MODERN-DAY NORTHERN FRANCE, BELGIUM, AND WESTERN GERMANY

The Middle Ages began when the Roman Empire collapsed in 476 CE, after several groups, including the **FRANKS**, invaded it. The king of the Franks, **CHARLEMAGNE**, took control of Western Europe in 768 CE and united it for the next 50 years. In 800 CE, Charlemagne was crowned emperor of the Romans—the Holy Roman Emperor—by the pope, and the "kingdom of Europe" he created combined Roman, Christian, and German elements. He was a powerful Christian ruler.



After Charlemagne's death in 814 CE, small kingdoms formed throughout Western Europe. These kingdoms were attacked by the **VIKINGS**, explorers and warriors from Northern Europe in what is now called Scandinavia. The Vikings destroyed towns and attacked local armies. A new system was needed to bring about order. What resulted was a European brand of feudalism.





KINGS

The FEUDAL SYSTEM

The feudal system was a way of organizing economic, political, and military needs. Kings and **NOBLES (LORDS)** owned land but gave shares (called **FIEFS**) to their **VASSALS** (lesser nobles). The **FEUDAL CONTRACT** was a set of unwritten rules between a lord and his vassal. Vassals were expected to follow the landowner's rules and fight for him (many vassals were knights). Feudal society was built around warfare.

NOBLES



VASSALS

INCLUDING



KNIGHTS



SERFS

By 1000 CE, feudalism had taken over Western Europe.

FIEF

in the feudal system, a grant of land to a vassal

VASSAL

in the feudal system, a tenant of the lord; the lord protects the vassal, and the vassal promises loyalty and military service in return

FEUDAL SYSTEM



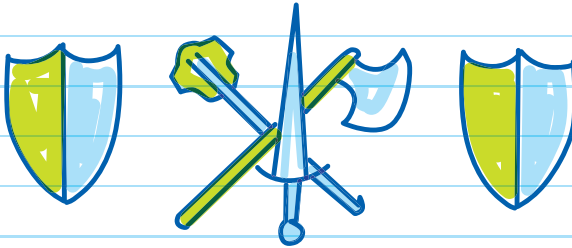
≡ **NOBLES** ≡



MONEY AND LOYALTY



≡ **VASSALS** ≡



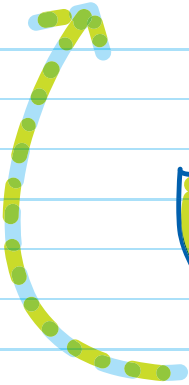
MILITARY SERVICE



≡ **SERFS** ≡



FOOD AND SERVICE



MANORIALISM

MANORS were large, self-sufficient estates with farmland and sometimes whole villages. They were ruled by lords who collected taxes and harvests from peasants who farmed the land. Many peasants were **SERFS** who were bound to the manor. Serfs couldn't even get married without permission of the lord. They could only leave the manor if they saved enough money to buy their freedom and some land—or if they escaped and survived a year and a day without getting caught.

The DEVELOPMENT of TOWNS

Feudalism declined after the 1200s, as towns and trade expanded. Kings hired armies to protect towns and became more powerful than, say, a group of nobles banding together against the king. A middle class of merchants, traders, and craft workers grew. They formed **GUILDS** to set prices and keep a high standard of quality for their goods. There were guilds for shoemakers, weavers, and other craftspeople.

GUILD

an organization of people with common interests or goals

The Crusades also weakened the power of nobles and feudalism. Many nobles went off to fight in the Crusades (and maybe didn't come back) and gave their land to the king.

NATION BUILDING

By the 1100s, the empire initially ruled by Charlemagne was called the **HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE**. The unification of kingdoms throughout the empire led to the idea of **NATION BUILDING**, or uniting a community of people under a single government.

All over Europe, larger kingdoms turned into nations with national identities and national governments. In Spain, a royal marriage united two powerful kingdoms, and in France, a long line of kings consolidated royal power.

In England, the process of unification had begun early: During the **NORMAN CONQUEST**,

GOT ITS NAME
FROM THE
FRANKS!

William of Normandy, a duke from France also known as **WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR**, became king of England after his victory at the Battle of Hastings in 1066. William refined the system of taxation and royal courts that earlier Anglo-Saxon kings had begun. He gave land to Norman knights and took a census of people, manors, and animals.

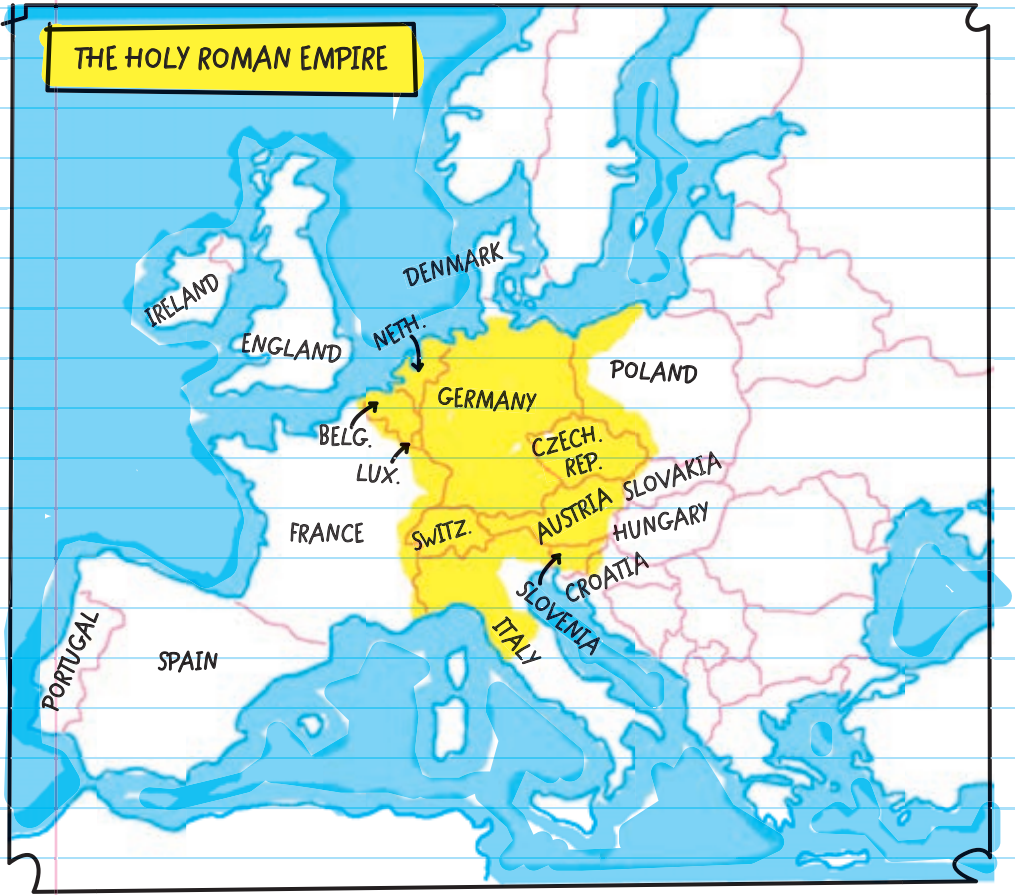
Around the year 1200, a successor to King William, King John, heavily taxed the English people and tried to block the

pope's choice for bishop. His poor decisions led nobles to create the **MAGNA CARTA**, a **CHARTER** that limited the king's power. The king now had to consult a lawmaking council that later became the English **PARLIAMENT**.

CHARTER

an agreement on rights or authority

THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE



More than a century later, the **HUNDRED YEARS' WAR** between France and England solidified each nation's boundaries and identities. The war, beginning in 1337 and fought over an area of land in France called the Duchy of Gascony, resulted in French victory in 1453 (people lived their whole lives at war, as did their kids and their kids' kids, etc.).

JOAN OF ARC was a young French peasant girl turned warrior whose leadership in battle inspired her French **COMPATRIOTS**. Captured by the English, Joan of Arc was tried for witchcraft and burned at the stake. Her death made Joan a martyr and inspired the French to many more victories during the Hundred Years' War.



Christianity grew even stronger during the Middle Ages. The church had the power to collect taxes and was the largest landowner in Europe. There was a member of the **CLERGY** in every village: a priest, a bishop, or an archbishop, or, in Rome, the **PAPACY**. People who didn't obey the church could be **EXCOMMUNICATED**. People were afraid they wouldn't go to heaven after death if they were excommunicated; that threat kept people in line.

COMPATRIOT
a fellow countryman or countrywoman

CLERGY
religious leaders, such as priests, who perform religious services

PAPACY
the government of the church as led by the pope

EXCOMMUNICATED
cut off from church life

THE PLAGUE

Between 1347 and 1351, one-third of Europe's population died from the **BUBONIC PLAGUE**, also known as the **BLACK DEATH**. It was initially spread by a bacterium carried by fleas living on rats. The plague arrived in Europe when Italian merchants returned from the Black Sea in October 1347. By the end of the year, Italy and France had been hit by the plague. It spread to Germany, the Netherlands, England, and Scandinavia by 1349.

By 1351, Eastern Europe and Russia were affected. Entire villages disappeared.



With more than 25 million people dead, normal life was challenging. The labor shortage led the workers who survived the plague to ask for higher wages. Farmers looked for projects that would require fewer workers, like grazing sheep instead of growing crops. A smaller population caused a decrease in demand for food. Peasants bargained with their lords and were freed from serfdom, agreeing to pay rent instead. The feudal system was greatly weakened.

Many people believed God was punishing them. Some accused Jews of poisoning wells and causing the plague; these **ANTI-SEMITIC** beliefs led to attacks on Jews, especially in Germany. Many Jews fled Germany for Poland, where the king protected them.

ANTI-SEMITIC
prejudiced against Jews



In art and literature, death became a common topic; historians study paintings and poems from the mid-thirteenth century to learn more about the plague.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How did the Middle Ages begin? What king reigned in Western Europe at the time?
2. What was the purpose of the feudal system? How did it work?
3. Guilds were used for:
 - A. controlling serfs on the manor
 - B. setting a standard of prices among craft workers
 - C. voting on local political issues
 - D. establishing centers of religion in small towns
4. What was the Norman Conquest?
5. The Magna Carta resulted in:
 - A. an increase in the king's power, granting him more independent rule than before
 - B. a decrease in the king's power, limited by a lawmaking council
 - C. a decrease in both the power of the king and the power of Parliament
 - D. no change to the balance of power in lawmaking
6. What happened to people who openly disobeyed the church?
7. How did the plague arrive in Europe?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The Middle Ages began when the Roman Empire collapsed and the King of the Franks, Charlemagne, took control of Western Europe. He was crowned Holy Roman Emperor of the "kingdom of Europe."
2. The purpose of the feudal system was to organize the economy, politics, and military. Kings and nobles owned land but gave pieces to the lesser nobles (vassals). In turn, vassals had to follow the landowner's rules and fight for him. Serfs farmed the land and lived on a lord's manor.
3. B. setting a standard of prices among craft workers
4. The Norman Conquest was the period when William of Normandy became king of England after his victory at the Battle of Hastings.
5. B. a decrease in the king's power, limited by a lawmaking council
6. People who didn't obey the church could be excommunicated. People believed that meant they wouldn't go to heaven when they died.
7. The plague arrived in Europe when Italian merchants returned from the Black Sea. The ships carried rats that had fleas that carried the deadly bacterium.

★ Chapter 17 ★

The EUROPEAN CRUSADES

★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

in the MUSLIM WORLD

ROUGHLY LATE 11TH CENTURY
TO 13TH CENTURY

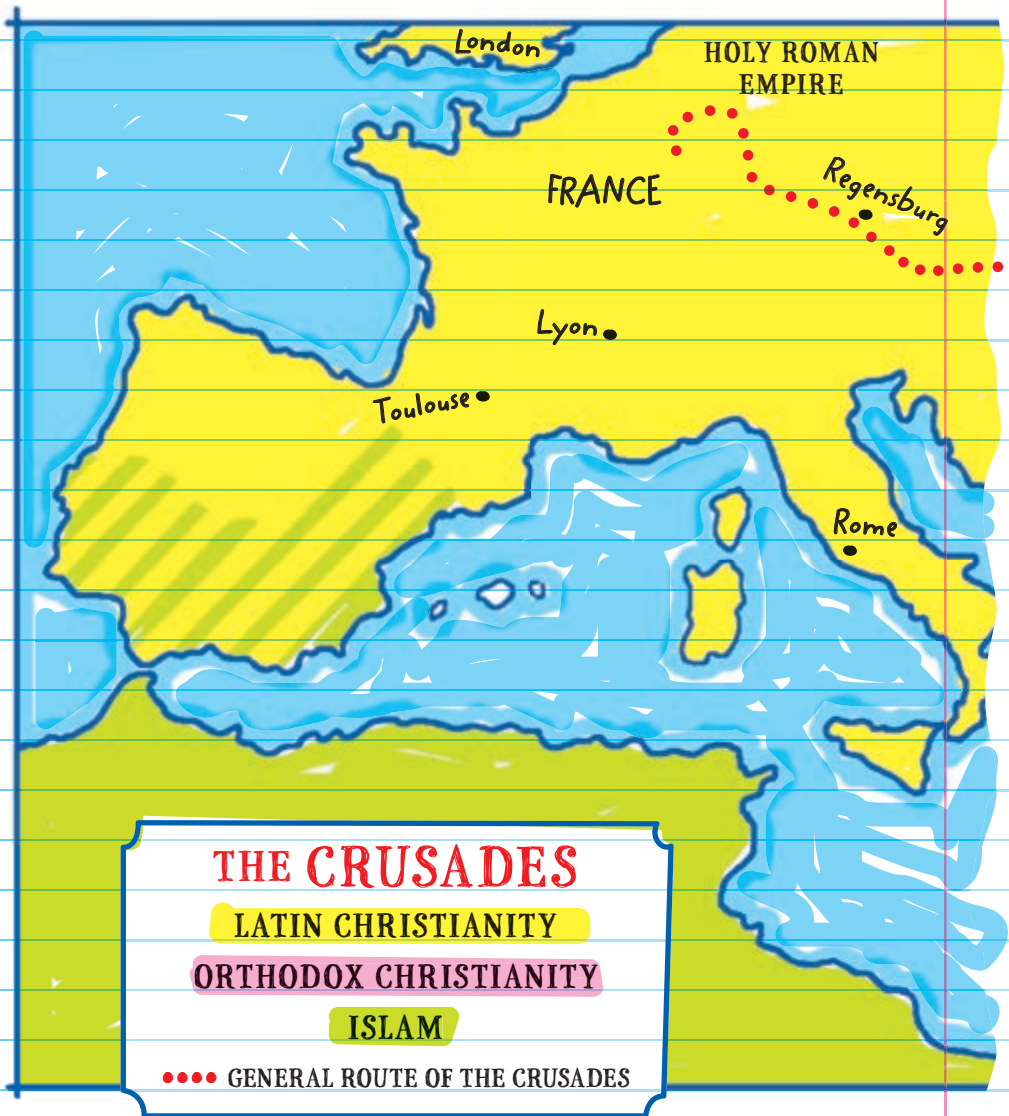
The **CRUSADES** were a series of military expeditions in which Europeans tried to gain control of the Holy Land of Jerusalem from the Muslims. They began in the eleventh century, when the Byzantine emperor in Constantinople asked Christian states in Europe to help fight against the Muslim **SELJUK TURKS**, and lasted almost 200 years.

POPE URBAN II

At the Council of Clermont in 1095, **POPE URBAN II** called for Christians to help free Jerusalem. He declared that those who died in the holy war would be immediately **ABSOLVED** of their sins. People were convinced that fighting

ABSOLVE
to free from blame
or guilt

this war was the will of God. The pope hoped the Crusades would stop Christians from fighting among themselves. The Seljuk Turks posed a particular threat to the Christian



religion: They had risen to power in Jerusalem and attacked European Christians making pilgrimages into the city. The pope also wanted power for himself and the church.



The FIRST CRUSADE

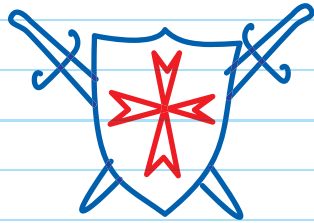


In the summer of 1096, 12,000 French peasants, along with two armies from Germany, marched through Europe in the **PEOPLE'S CRUSADE**. They lost one-third of

their people before they reached Constantinople. Untrained, in rags, and with no money, they wandered, attacking and stealing from villages. The emperor gave them supplies and ships and sent them to fight the Turks in Asia Minor.

In 1097, great lords led armies of mostly French warriors, along with vassals, wives, cooks, children, and clerks, in

the **NOBLES' CRUSADE**. These knights fought for religion but also sought adventure. They welcomed the chance to fight and possibly gain wealth or a fancy title. Many poor people saw the military as a way to rise in social class.



The French warriors reached and took Jerusalem in 1099 in a deadly massacre of the city's Muslim, Christian, and Jewish inhabitants alike. Most crusaders returned to Europe, but some stayed and organized four crusader states. Italian port cities like Genoa, Pisa, and Venice saw an opportunity and began trading with the crusader states, growing rich and powerful in the process. The Muslims began to strike back, but the crusaders fought them once more.

LATER CRUSADES

The **SECOND CRUSADE** was less successful than the first. King Louis VII of France and Emperor Conrad III of Germany failed in their fight against the Muslims in the 1140s. A **THIRD CRUSADE**, in 1187, was fought against the Muslim sultan **SALADIN**, who had regained control of Jerusalem. Led by German Emperor Frederick Barbarossa, English King Richard I (**RICHARD THE LIONHEART**), and French King Philip II (Philip Augustus), the conquest was doomed. Frederick drowned early in the fight. The French and English, who had arrived by sea, struggled to make it inland. Philip headed back home to France, leaving King Richard I to negotiate a settlement with Saladin. The agreement allowed Christian pilgrims access to Jerusalem once more.

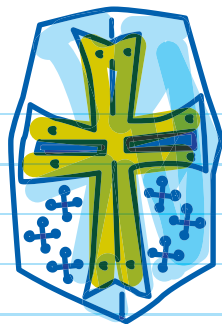


KING RICHARD I

is known as one of the greatest English kings of the Middle Ages, while his younger brother John is considered one of the worst. Richard's courage on the battlefield earned him the nickname "Richard the Lionheart." According to English legend, he and Robin Hood lived at the same time.

Six years after Saladin's death, **POPE INNOCENT III** called for another crusade, the **FOURTH CRUSADE**. The army sacked Constantinople in 1204. This increased the division between the Eastern Orthodox Church and the Roman Catholic Church.

There were nine crusades in all, some failures, some gaining successes through diplomacy—but eventually defeats led to the end of the Crusades.

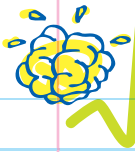


EFFECTS of the CRUSADES

The Crusades helped Italian port cities prosper and increased trade with the East. Rugs, jewelry, glass, and spices became big commodities. The Crusades also brought new ideas to Western Europe and the Middle East. Advances made by the Arab dynasties in mathematics, technology, and medicine boosted European knowledge in these areas, and Europeans learned to make better maps and ships.

The Crusades helped break down feudalism. Many vassals sold their land to pay the rising war taxes and freed their serfs to fight in the Crusades. This allowed kings to claim the land of the nobles and form stronger central governments. Kings gained new wealth through trade with the East, which helped them develop nation-states.

Unfortunately, the Crusades also caused the deaths of untold numbers over centuries of warfare. It bred religious intolerance, including attacks on the Jews. The split between Eastern and Western Christianity became permanent.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What were the Crusades?
2. How did the Crusades affect the division of power in medieval society?
3. What did the agreement signed between Richard the Lionheart and Saladin state?
4. The treaty between King Richard and Saladin was signed during the:
 - A. First Crusade, in 1099
 - B. Second Crusade, in the 1140s
 - C. Third Crusade, in 1187
 - D. Fourth Crusade, in 1204
5. What was the effect of the Crusades in terms of trade?
6. What is the importance of the city of Jerusalem?
7. How did the Crusades positively affect life in Europe? How did they negatively affect life in Europe?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The Crusades were a series of military expeditions that lasted more than 150 years in which Europeans tried to get control of the Holy Land of Jerusalem.
2. The Crusades helped break down feudalism because many vassals sold their land to pay war taxes and freed their serfs to fight in the Crusades. Kings also created stronger central governments by amassing new wealth through the claimed land of the nobles and trade with the East.
3. The agreement between Richard the Lionheart and Saladin stated that Christian pilgrims could visit Jerusalem.
4. C. Third Crusade, in 1187
5. The Crusades helped Italian port cities prosper and increased trade with the East, which introduced new types of goods, like rugs, jewelry, glass, and spices.
6. Jerusalem was (and is) called the Holy City. It was (and is) valued by Jews, Christians, and Muslims.
7. The Crusades brought new trade with, and advances in mathematics, technology, and medicine from, the Arabs. Europeans learned to make better maps and ships. However, the Crusades also caused the deaths of many, bred religious intolerance, and created a permanent split between Eastern and Western Christianity.

Unit



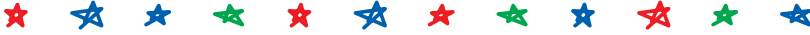
Renaissance and Reformation 1350-1650

The **RENAISSANCE** began a time of cultural change that originated in Italy in the 1300s and spread through Europe over the next two centuries. "Renaissance" literally means "rebirth," and it was a time of rebirth of ancient Greek and Roman culture.



★ Chapter 18 ★

The RENAISSANCE



BEGINS



The Renaissance emphasized the importance of the individual as well as **SECULARISM**. The interest in humans apart from religion was called **HUMANISM**. It grew in part from the Crusades, when Europeans and Muslims interacted. The rise of the middle class introduced new points of view and led to the belief that humans are unique individuals capable of great things.

SECULARISM

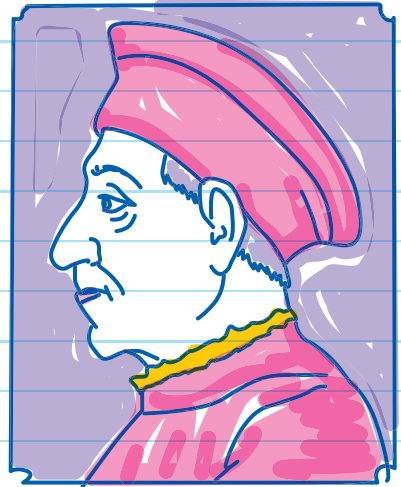
related to worldly things; not connected with religion

HUMANISM

system of thought that focuses on humans rather than divine matters

ORIGINS of the RENAISSANCE

The Renaissance began in Italy, where powerful port cities had become city-states independent of the control of a king or even the church. Wealthy Italian leaders borrowed and loaned money without regard for the church's regulations against **USURY**. Some of the wealthiest families, like that of **COSIMO DE' MEDICI**, became **PATRONS** of the arts and promoted the study of classical (ancient) literature.



USURY

the practice of lending money at a very high interest rate

PATRON

a person who supports artists, writers, or creative institutions with money, gifts, or social or political influence

RENAISSANCE LITERATURE

In Renaissance literature, the focus was less on religion and the church and more on Greek and Roman ideals of nature and beauty. Humanism's interest in the classics was a major part of the Renaissance. Humanists studied grammar, poetry, philosophy, history, and rhetoric—subjects that today are called "the humanities."



The first great humanist was **FRANCESCO PETRARCA** (known as **PETRARCH**), a poet whose **SONNETS** focused on a love of nature in the tradition of Roman writers. Petrarch is considered the father of Italian Renaissance humanism. He was super smart and was curious about finding Latin manuscripts to study their ideas. His searches set off other searches in **MONASTIC** libraries throughout Europe.

MONASTIC
pertaining to
monasteries, or the
way of life of monks
and nuns

SONNET

a type of poem that originated in Italy, consisting of fourteen lines that rhyme according to a pattern. It discusses an idea in the first eight lines that's figured out (or at least the thought is completed) in the last six lines. Shakespeare's rhyme pattern is ABAB CDCD EFEF GG.

Petrarch's is ABBA ABBA CDE CDE or ABBA ABBA CDC DCD.
(Each letter corresponds to the rhyming final words of each line.)

Another great humanist was **WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE**, a famous English poet and playwright. Shakespeare used plots from ancient texts rebooted in an updated way for his comedies, tragedies, and histories.



SHAKESPEARE'S WRITING EMPHASIZED HUMAN EMOTIONS THAT ARE STILL PRESENT IN OUR LIVES TODAY.

RELIGIOUS HUMANISM

There were religious humanists too. **ERASMUS**, a Roman Catholic priest, wanted to study and understand Christianity. He decided that the Catholic Church needed some changes and wrote "**IN PRAISE OF FOLLY**" (1509), mocking church practices. Much of what he wrote was considered controversial, and some people even thought Erasmus was calling for the destruction of the Catholic Church. But Erasmus only wanted to make certain reforms and leave other things unchanged. This would eventually inspire Martin Luther to call for reform within the church.

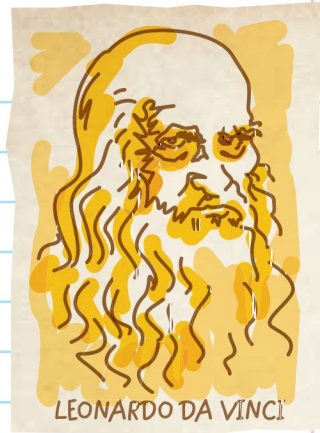
The invention of the movable-type printing press in the mid 1400s by **JOHANNES GUTENBERG** was a turning point during the Renaissance. The printing press led to the mass production of books and made new ideas available to more Europeans faster than ever before.

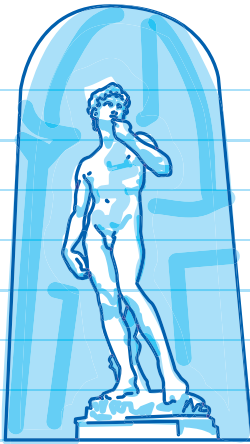
RENAISSANCE ART

Renaissance art also marked a return to ancient Greece and Rome. Painters and sculptors still featured religious scenes, but their central interest was imitating nature and rendering the human body in its most beautiful form. In architecture, painting, and sculpture, the focus was on the human-centered world.

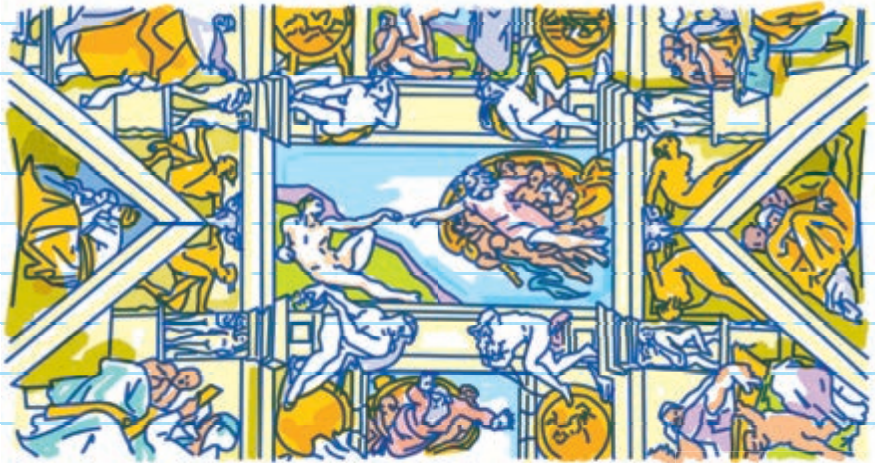
MAJOR ARTISTS

Artists like **LEONARDO DA VINCI** (famous for the *MONA LISA* and *THE LAST SUPPER*) studied anatomy. They worked with the laws of perspective to create realistic works of art.





MICHELANGELO's statue of the biblical hero **DAVID** is a declaration of the perfection of the human form. Michelangelo wanted to portray the human being as a reflection of divine beauty: The more beautiful the body, the more godlike the figure. His fresco on the ceiling of the **SISTINE CHAPEL** features ideal bodies in perfect proportions.



The **SISTINE CHAPEL** is a chapel in the Apostolic Palace, which is the official residence of the pope. It's famous for its architecture and frescoes and is located in Vatican City.

The sculptor **DONATELLO** studied Greek and Roman statues and sculpted figures such as the famous Christian figure **SAINT GEORGE**.



Architect **FILIPPO BRUNELLESCHI** studied the buildings of classical Rome and designed churches with classical columns and rounded arches as an alternative to **GOTHIC** cathedrals.



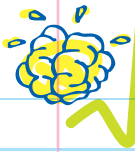
GOTHIC

a style of architecture used in Western Europe from roughly the 1200s through the 1400s and characterized by pointed arches and vaulting and the use of detailed woodwork and stonework

FLEMISH

people of the Flanders region—an area now divided among Belgium, France, and the Netherlands

Outside of Italy, **FLEMISH** artist **JAN VAN EYCK**, for example, imitated nature by painting on wooden panels. By experimenting with oil paints, he was able to capture true-to-life details.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What does the term "Renaissance" refer to? Why was it used to describe this time?
2. What is secularism?
3. How did secularism contribute to the emergence of the Renaissance in Italy?
4. Who was Cosimo de' Medici?
 - A. the leader of an important Italian guild
 - B. a patron of the arts
 - C. a strong supporter of the pope
 - D. a famous Italian artist
5. Define "humanism." How did it change educational approaches?
6. Erasmus believed that:
 - A. the Catholic Church should be destroyed.
 - B. the Catholic Church should be reformed.
 - C. the Catholic Church was perfect just the way it was.
7. Name two important Renaissance artists and describe their achievements.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. "Renaissance" literally means "rebirth." "Renaissance" was used to describe this time because there was a rebirth of ancient Greek and Roman culture.
2. Secularism is an attention to things and ideas not connected with religion.
3. Secularism allowed people to study humans (humanism) and things apart from religion. It introduced new points of view and led to the belief that humans are unique and capable of great things.
4. B. a patron of the arts
5. Humanism is the study of people. It changed education by dividing the world into subjects that today are called "the humanities," such as grammar, poetry, philosophy, history, and rhetoric.
6. B. the Catholic Church should be reformed.
7. Any two of the following:
 - **LEONARDO DA VINCI:** famous for *The Last Supper* and the *Mona Lisa*; studied anatomy; worked with the laws of perspective to create realistic works of art
 - **MICHELANGELO:** famous for his fresco on the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel and his statue of the biblical hero *David*, a testament to the perfection of the human form

- **DONATELLO**: a sculptor who studied Greek and Roman statues and created statues such as one of *Saint George*
- **FILIPPO BRUNELLESCHI**: an architect who studied the buildings of classical Rome and designed churches with classical columns and rounded arches as an alternative to Gothic cathedrals
- **JAN VAN EYCK**: a Flemish artist who imitated nature by painting on wooden panels and captured true-to-life details by experimenting with oil paints

★ Chapter 19 ★

★ ★ ★ ★ ★ THE ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ REFORMATION

EUROPE IN THE 1500s



The **REFORMATION** is the reform, or change, that established **PROTESTANTISM** as a branch of Christianity. Humanists like Erasmus believed that the Roman Catholic Church needed to reform its ways and focus more on inner piety and less on external displays of religion like pilgrimages and **RELICS**.

PROTESTANT

a Christian who does not adhere to the Catholic, Anglican, or Eastern Churches; also, one who protests

RELIC

an object from the past, usually associated with a saint or martyr

CORRUPTION in the CHURCH

In the early 1500s, the church had a big problem with corruption. From 1450 to 1520, a series of popes called "the Renaissance popes" were more interested in politics than religion. The church became a place where some people tried to advance their careers and increase their wealth, and where some priests were illiterate and unfamiliar with the Bible.

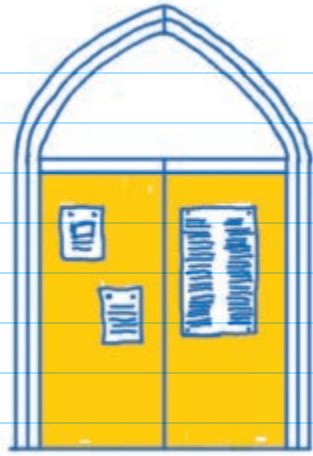
Ordinary folks were just trying to figure out how to get into heaven. The church began to sell them **INDULGENCES**, which you could buy to get out of punishment for sin.

INDULGENCES

pardons, sometimes sold along with relics to sinners, who were expected to venerate (show respect to) the relics

MARTIN LUTHER

In 1517, a monk named **MARTIN LUTHER** took his criticism to the church in his **95 THESES**, a list of grievances (complaints) against the church. He posted his list on a church door, and it was printed and spread all over Germany. It appealed to both nobles who resented the pope's power and peasants who believed in Luther's message of equality. Luther held that it was faith alone—not doing a lot of good acts (**GOOD WORKS**)—that brought about **SALVATION**. He especially criticized the selling of indulgences.



SALVATION

the act of being saved or protected from sin

Pope Leo X didn't take Luther seriously, but Luther kept on. Luther wanted to establish a reformed German church with a new system of **SACRAMENTS**.

SACRAMENT

a religious symbol or ceremony in the Christian church

The Catholic Church finally excommunicated Luther in 1521. The emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, **CHARLES V**, declared Luther an outlaw in his **EDICT OF WORMS**, forcing Luther into hiding.

↑
AS IN THE PLACE—NOT THE ANIMAL. EWW!

Luther gained the support of many German rulers, who took control of the Catholic churches in their territories and formed government-supervised state churches. Luther's

beliefs became the first Protestant faith, **LUTHERANISM**.

In 1555, under the **PEACE OF AUGSBURG**, Lutherans won the right to practice their religion. German states were free to choose between Catholicism and Lutheranism, and the Roman Catholic Church was no longer such a powerful political body.

CALVINISM

There were divisions within Protestantism. **JOHN CALVIN**

(1509-1564), a French Protestant, agreed with Luther that faith alone was enough for salvation. He talked about the

"power, grace, and glory of God." He

believed that God **PREDESTINED** certain people to be saved (**THE ELECT**),

and others to be damned (the

REPROBATES). Followers of Calvin

were called **CALVINISTS**, and they

spread their faith to others as missionaries, emphasizing salvation

through grace and good works.

Calvinism was based in Geneva, Switzerland, where Calvin set up a

CONSISTORY. Genevan citizens could be punished for "crimes" like dancing, swearing, drinking, and playing cards.

Calvinism spread to parts of France, Scotland, and the Netherlands. By the mid-sixteenth century, it had become the most prominent form of Protestantism.

PREDESTINE

to predetermine or choose in advance

REPROBATE

wicked or unprincipled person beyond the hope of salvation

CONSISTORY

a court for enforcing moral discipline

CHANGES in the ENGLISH CHURCH

The call for religious reform spread to other parts of Europe. In 1534, **KING HENRY VIII** had Parliament formally separate the Catholic Church in England from the pope in Rome (though many believe it was because he wanted more personal control and, mainly, the right to divorce his wives).

HENRY VIII

HENRY VIII wanted to divorce his wife Catherine because she had given birth to a girl and Henry needed a male heir for the throne. He asked the pope to **ANNUL** (cancel) his marriage so he could marry **ANNE BOLEYN** instead. The pope was taking too long, so Henry VIII turned to the English church courts instead. In 1533, the archbishop of the highest church court in England, **THOMAS CRANMER**, ruled that the king's marriage to Catherine was null and void. Henry married Anne, but she had a baby girl too. Henry tried again and ended up having six wives. Still, his daughter with Anne went on to become **QUEEN ELIZABETH I**.

The **ACT OF SUPREMACY** in 1534 made the king the supreme head of the **CHURCH OF ENGLAND**, which was also called the **ANGLICAN CHURCH**. Henry VIII chose whom to appoint to important church positions. People who opposed these changes were often beheaded.

After Henry VIII's death, the Church of England became more and more Protestant, especially during **EDWARD VI's**

reign. (Edward was Henry's nine-year-old son, so he didn't have much of a say in the matter.) His half sister, **QUEEN MARY**, was called "Bloody Mary" when she tried to restore the church to its Roman Catholic roots by having 300 Protestants burned at the stake. (Queen Mary's reign lasted from 1553 to 1558, and she was pretty much despised by the end of it.) After Mary's death, **QUEEN ELIZABETH I** restored Protestantism to England.

The Catholic Church needed to change or it would continue to split apart. The **COUNTERREFORMATION** (also known as the **CATHOLIC REFORMATION**) brought about three changes (**THREE PILLARS**) in the Catholic Church:

the formation of the **JESUITS**

by a Spanish theologian named **IGNATIUS LOYOLA**.

Jesuits took a vow of obedience to the pope and acted as missionaries.

the reform of the papacy

the establishment of the **COUNCIL OF TRENT**—

a group of bishops, theologians, and other religious figures—to work out any kinks in Catholic teachings



ELIZABETH I

Queen Elizabeth became “supreme governor” of both church and state under the new Act of Supremacy. Her goal in foreign policy was to goal of keep a balance of power between France and Spain. If one country got too powerful, she’d support the weaker one to even things out.

The SPANISH ARMADA

Catholicism was strong in Spain under **KING PHILIP II**. From his father, Charles V (former Holy Roman Emperor, King of Spain, and Archduke of Austria), Philip inherited kingdoms in Italy, the Netherlands, and what Europeans called the New World (the Americas). He insisted that his entire empire conform to Catholicism. England was under the reign of Elizabeth I. In 1588, Philip II sent his impressive **SPANISH ARMADA** to overthrow Protestantism there (as well as the queen). Spain's navy was worn down from a century of voyages over the Atlantic Ocean to protect their colonies



ARMADA

a fleet of warships

in the New World. The English ships were fast and destroyed the Spanish fleet. The failed invasion left Spain bankrupt. The balance of power shifted out of Spain's favor and into the hands of England and France.

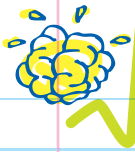
The REFORMATION in FRANCE

By the early 1560s, **HUGUENOTS**, French Protestants, made up only a small part of the total French population but nearly half of the French nobility. The tension between Catholics and Huguenots resulted in the **WARS OF RELIGION**, a series of civil wars (1562-1598). In 1589, a Huguenot leader named **HENRY OF NAVARRE** became **KING HENRY IV**, and later helped end the war. He converted to Catholicism so he'd be accepted by the mostly Catholic French. In 1598, he created the **EDICT OF NANTES**, which declared Catholicism to be France's official religion but allowed Huguenots to worship freely and hold public office.

RELIGIONS IN EUROPE



- ROMAN CATHOLIC
- ANGLICAN
- LUTHERAN
- ISLAM
- CALVINIST
- ANABAPTIST (a radical Protestant movement)
- CHRISTIAN MIX
- EASTERN ORTHODOX



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What does "The Reformation" refer to?
2. What one practice of the church put Martin Luther over the edge?
3. Explain why Martin Luther's teachings may have been so appealing to peasants.
4. Who were the "elect" and "reprobates" in Calvin's view?
5. What do many believe was Henry VIII's primary motivation in breaking with the Roman Catholic Church?
 - A. to separate church and state
 - B. to promote his religious views
 - C. to marry Anne Boleyn
 - D. to gain power over the pope
6. Who were the Huguenots?
7. What was the Spanish Armada, and why was it used to attack England?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The Reformation refers to the change where Protestantism branched off of the Roman Catholic Church.
2. Martin Luther criticized the church's sale of indulgences. He didn't think it was right that people could pay their way out of punishment for sin.
3. Martin Luther's teachings were appealing to peasants because he taught about equality. He thought that faith alone—not doing a lot of good works or paying for indulgences—could bring about a person's salvation.
4. In Calvin's view, the "elect" were people predestined to be saved, and the "reprobates" were predestined to be damned.
5. C. to marry Anne Boleyn
6. The Huguenots were French Protestants who made up a small part of the French population but nearly half of the French nobility.
7. The Spanish Armada was King Philip II's fleet of ships. He sent the Spanish Armada to overthrow Protestantism (and the queen) in England, but the English ships destroyed the Spanish fleet.

Unit

5

The Age of Exploration 1400-1800

Europeans set sail and spread around the world. They started new systems of trade with profitable new goods. They also spread religion and the African slave trade, and they wiped out much of the Native American population.



★ Chapter 20 ★

EUROPE



SETS SAIL

WHY EUROPEANS EXPLORED: GOLD, GLORY, and GOD

Trade and the Crusades got Europeans excited about foreign goods like silk and spices, which were unavailable in Europe. Merchants wanted to expand beyond the shores of Europe and find direct routes to the goods. Rulers across Europe sought fame, power, and glory, believing that conquering distant lands would bring them what they wanted, often in the name of God. Europeans had heard of Marco Polo's journey to the East and wanted to gain riches in far-off lands.

PORTUGUESE EXPLORERS

In 1415, young **PRINCE HENRY THE NAVIGATOR** of Portugal helped take over **CEUTA**, a rich Muslim trading city in North Africa. From Ceuta, the Portuguese gained access to expert maps of North Africa. Although Prince Henry never explored distant lands, Portuguese sailors trained in his navigation school in Lisbon and sailed down the western coast of Africa on his ships. Wherever they went, the Portuguese established trading posts. They also returned to Portugal with African captives who could be traded as slaves—the beginning of the European slave trade.



WEST AFRICA in the 1400s was no longer made up of major kingdoms. Instead, it consisted of more than 100 independent kingdoms that constantly went to war over land and trade. Even before these wars took place, enslaving captured enemies was an established practice in West Africa. The winning kingdom received free labor from the defeated kingdom. In addition, the victor would often sell the slaves to traders. (Arab Muslim traders included slaves with their shipments of salt and gold as early as the 600s CE.) By the last half of the 1400s, two of the more successful kingdoms, the **KONGO** (on the Zaire River) and the **NDONGO** (to its south), had dominated their neighbors and sold their enemies into slavery. By the time the Europeans arrived in the 1480s, the African slave trade was already big business.

BARTOLOMEU DIAS, a Portuguese explorer, sailed to the southern tip of Africa in 1488. Nine years later, in 1497, **VASCO DA GAMA** sailed around the southern tip of Africa into the Indian Ocean. He reached Calicut, India, and returned many times for spices. With their expert seamanship, the Portuguese opened the seas for Europe's age of exploration.

The ADVENTURES of SPAIN

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS had three ships (the **NIÑA**, the **PINTA**, and the **SANTA MARÍA**). He wanted to reach India and the East by traveling west around the earth. Though he was from Italy, **QUEEN ISABELLA** of Spain paid for his voyage. Queen Isabella was a leader who saw Columbus's potential, even though many kings in Europe did not believe in his expedition plans.

In 1492, Columbus sailed the ocean blue. Columbus thought he had reached India but was really in the Americas. This is why the Caribbean islands are sometimes called the West Indies and why Native Americans are sometimes called Indians. Columbus returned three more times to the region in search of gold. He explored Hispaniola (the island of present-day Haiti and the Dominican Republic), Cuba, Jamaica, and the coasts of Central and South America. Though many of the people who already lived in those areas were friendly to Columbus and his men when they arrived, the European settlers were more interested in gold than in friendship and, in general, treated the native people cruelly.

In 1519, the Spanish conquistador **HERNÁN CORTÉS** reached Tenochtitlán, in modern-day Mexico, which was home to the Aztec Empire. Legend has it that **MONTEZUMA**, leader of the Aztecs, welcomed the Spaniards because the Aztecs had never seen armor and horses, and they believed that Cortés was **QUETZALCÓATL**, a pale-skinned god. With advantages such as superior weapons (guns) and the help of other tribes who disliked the Aztecs for taking so many prisoners, Cortés eventually destroyed the city (in 1521) and the Aztec Empire.

FRANCISCO PIZARRO embarked on a conquest in the Inca Empire, located in modern-day Peru. He arrived in 1532 and captured the Inca king **ATAHUALPA**. Pizarro promised to spare the king if he filled a room with gold. After Atahualpa

COLUMBUS'S

FIRST VOYAGE —

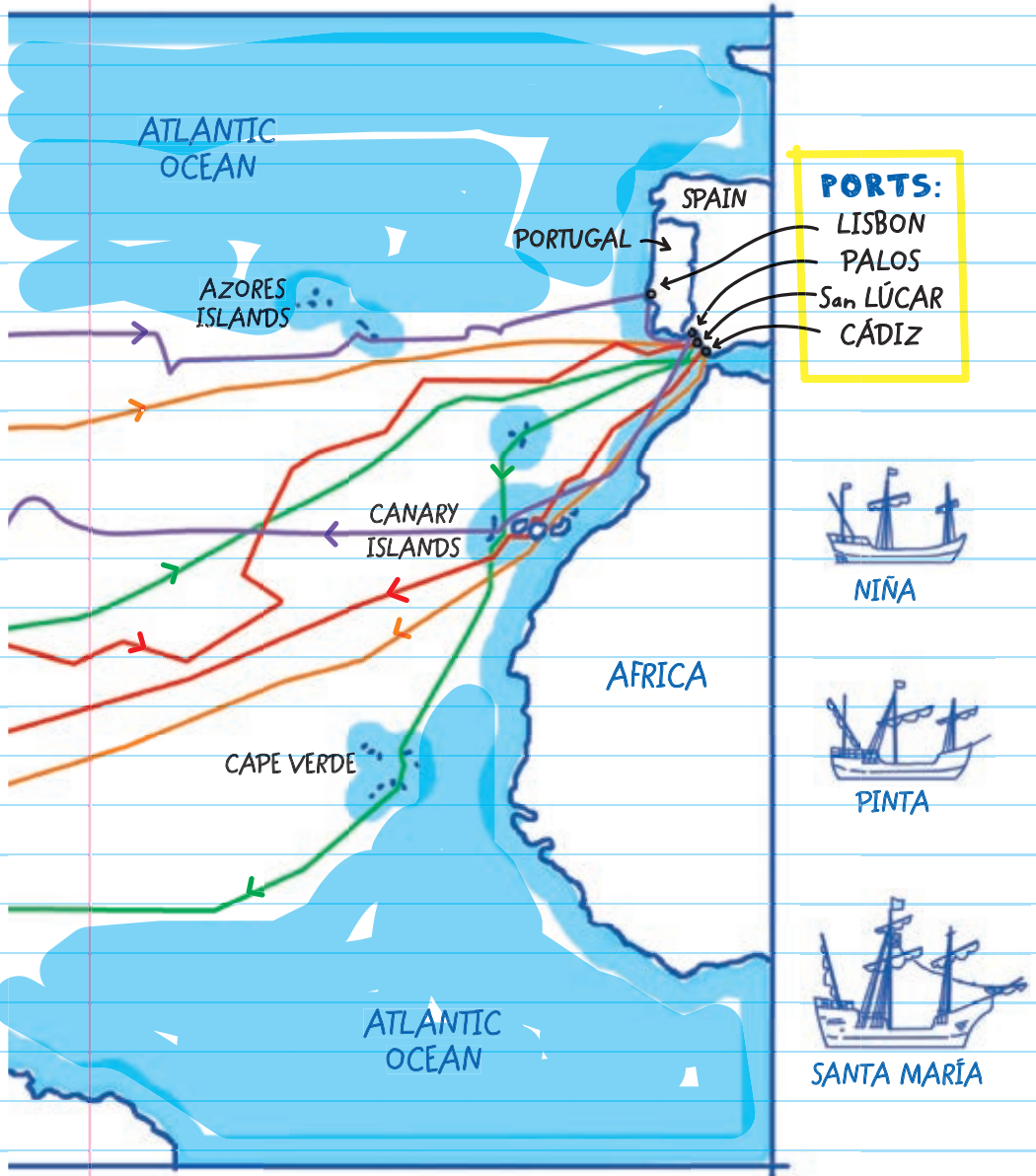
SECOND VOYAGE —

THIRD VOYAGE —

FOURTH VOYAGE —



VOYAGES



EXPLORERS

1520: FERDINAND MAGELLAN, a Portuguese man sailing on behalf of Spain, reached the tip of South America. He died on the trip, but his ships returned in 1522 as the first crew to **CIRCUMNAVIGATE** the earth.

CIRCUMNAVIGATE
sail around (“circum-” — think, “circle”)



had his subjects bring enough gold to fill the room, Pizarro killed him anyway. The Spanish army used guns and horses to defeat the Incas. Diseases brought from Europe helped both Dias and Pizarro destroy these empires by killing off huge numbers of the population.

THE COLUMBIAN EXCHANGE

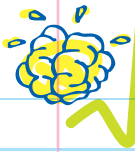
There had been no mixing of plants and animals between the Americas and the rest of the world for over ten thousand years. Things like corn, tobacco, cocoa, and potatoes didn't exist elsewhere until they were brought back from the Americas. In return, Europeans brought wheat, barley, grapes, and onions, as well as cattle, pigs, and horses, to the Americas. The plants changed the diets of people all over the world, and the animals changed the way land was used in the Americas.

The humans hadn't been exposed to any of each other's germs either. Diseases such as smallpox, measles, and the flu were common in Europe, but Native Americans didn't have

IMMUNITY. About 20 million people died from disease in a 100-year span in Central America alone. This mixing of plants, animals, viruses, and bacteria is known as the **COLUMBIAN EXCHANGE** or the **GREAT BIOLOGICAL EXCHANGE**.

IMMUNITY

resistance to a disease or sickness, particularly due to previous exposure to the germs



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What prompted the Europeans to pick up and set sail?
2. Describe the beginnings of the European slave trade. How did it start?
3. Bartolomeu Dias, Vasco da Gama, and Prince Henry the Navigator are often cited as three of Portugal's most important explorers. Who claimed what?
4. How was the Aztec Empire conquered?
5. Who funded Columbus's infamous journey west? Where did Columbus wind up?
6. The Spanish conquerors of America were called:
 - A. emperors
 - B. conquistadors
 - C. governor-generals
 - D. expatriates
7. Who was Quetzalcóatl?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Short answer: "Gold, Glory, and God."

After the Crusades, Europeans were more interested in foreign goods, and merchants wanted to find more profitable trade routes. Rulers across Europe also sought fame, power, and glory, often claiming new lands in the name of God.

2. The European slave trade began when the Portuguese returned from their explorations with African captives.

3. Bartolomeu Dias claimed the southern tip of Africa. Vasco da Gama sailed around the southern tip of Africa into the Indian Ocean and reached Calicut, India. Prince Henry never actually claimed anything himself, but sailors on his ships explored the western coast of Africa.

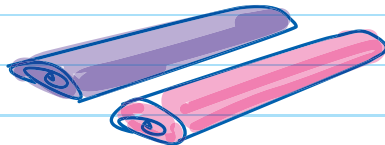
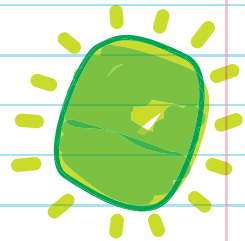
4. Spanish conquistador Hernán Cortés and his men conquered the Aztec Empire by using guns and with the help of the people who had been dominated by the Aztecs. European diseases probably also weakened the Aztec people.

5. Queen Isabella of Spain funded Christopher Columbus's voyages. Columbus ended up in the Americas. He explored Hispaniola (present-day Haiti and the Dominican Republic), Cuba, Jamaica, and the coasts of Central and South America.
6. B. conquistadors
7. Quetzalcóatl was an Aztec god. According to legend, Montezuma believed that Cortés was the return of Quetzalcóatl.

★ Chapter 21 ★

EUROPE EXPLORES ASIA (OR TRIES TO)

Europeans were fascinated with Asian products, like silk, jade, and porcelain. Trade posts were set up in India and Southeast Asia in the 1500s, but trading with China and Japan wasn't as easy.





EUROPEAN TRADE IN ASIA



ASIA



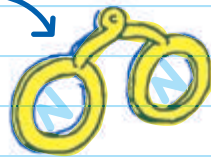
-  DUTCH TRADE POSTS
-  PORTUGUESE TRADE POSTS
-  ENGLISH TRADE POSTS
-  SPANISH TRADE POSTS
-  FRENCH TRADE POSTS

PORTUGUESE TRADE with CHINA

The Portuguese set up a post in **MACAO**, China, but it was China's way or the highway (the highway being the Silk Road). Trade was strictly controlled and not formally recognized by the Chinese government. During the **MING DYNASTY** (1368–1644), the Chinese were at the height of their power. They didn't trade much. When they did, they requested silver for their goods. Europeans preferred to trade with manufactured goods.

What the two countries did exchange was a lot of cultural ideas. Christian missionaries from Portugal brought the Chinese people things like reading glasses.

The Chinese taught the Portuguese the ideas of Confucius and impressed them with their architecture and the wide availability of books.



DUTCH and ENGLISH TRADE with CHINA

The Dutch seized part of the island of Taiwan in the 1630s and 1640s, but the Chinese drove them out during the **QING DYNASTY** in 1661. Though the Dutch did some trading with China after that, it was limited and selective depending on the current leadership.

About a century after the Chinese pushed out the Dutch, the Qing set up a trading post on a small island but limited trade to October through March. The British followed China's **STIPULATIONS** but ended up importing way more than they exported and got into debt. The Chinese rejected a British request for better trade policies, resulting in a worse trade conflict years later.

STIPULATION
a condition, requirement,
or demand

DUTCH TRADE with JAPAN

Trade with Japan was similarly limited. The Portuguese had landed there in the 1540s by chance after being blown off course. Problems arose between the Portuguese and the Japanese over religion and European missionaries. When trade with Taiwan didn't work for the Dutch, they became trading partners with the Japanese. Under strict surveillance, Japan allowed the Dutch to establish a trading post on an island called Deshima, close to Nagasaki. The Dutch remained the only major European trading power in Japan until the 1800s.

KEY ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS DURING EUROPE'S AGE OF EXPLORATION:

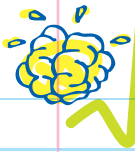
THE BEGINNINGS OF CAPITALISM: The start of an economic system in which people invest in trading and goods for profit. Goods were no longer **BARTERED** (traded for other products) but were instead traded for money. Silver and gold coins were used, and new banking systems and trading companies were created to manage the sale of goods.



MERCANTILISM: Capitalism was largely based on the theory of **mercantilism**, the major economic theory of the sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth centuries. This theory said that a nation's worth was based on its supply of gold and silver. It also stressed the importance of having an excess of exports over imports to maintain a favorable balance of trade.

BALANCE OF TRADE: Nations wanted a favorable **balance of trade**, meaning that the goods they exported would be worth more than those imported. They could make money by selling high-priced products to other nations and spend less money buying less-expensive products from other nations. Colonies played a major role in providing both raw materials and markets for finished goods.

All this led to the development of a market economy, a market driven by the supply and demand of slaves and goods, like sugar. It also led to the rise of the new middle class.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What did the Chinese typically accept when trading their goods?
2. Until the 1800s, how many trading partners did Japan have? Who were they?
3. What was the main factor that caused distrust between Japanese rulers and the Portuguese?
4. The only major trading post in Japan before the 1800s was located in a place called:
A. Nagasaki
B. Deshima
C. Kyoto
D. Tokyo
5. Define "capitalism."
6. According to mercantilism, what does a nation's wealth depend on?
7. What class grew in response to the new market economy?
A. the middle class
B. the upper class
C. the lower class
D. slaves

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The Chinese accepted silver when trading.
2. There was only one main trading power in Japan until the 1800s—the Dutch.
3. Distrust between the Portuguese and Japanese was over religion and the presence of Christian missionaries.
4. B. Deshima
5. Capitalism is an economic system in which people invest in trading and goods for profit.
6. Mercantilism said that a nation's wealth is based on its supply of gold and silver.
7. A. the middle class



★ Chapter 22 ★

AMERICAN



COLONIES

1607-1776

European colonies grew in North America, South America, and Central America. The Spanish controlled land all the way from the present-day U.S. to southern South America. One part of South America wasn't under Spanish rule: Brazil was claimed by Portuguese explorer **PEDRO ALVAREZ CABRAL**, and Portuguese is spoken there to this day.

The ENCOMIENDA SYSTEM and VICEROYS

The Spanish relied on enslaved Africans to work for them, and they used an **ENCOMIENDA SYSTEM** that gave them royal permission to force Native Americans to work. Native Americans were supposed to receive food and other care in return but

ENCOMIENDAS

small areas of land where native peoples were enslaved to farm or dig in mines

were treated poorly. Much of the population died of disease. The Spanish thought there was more gold than there really was and often punished the natives for not finding gold in the mines.

The Roman Catholic Church tried to convert Native Americans to Christianity. The Catholic Church controlled Spain's colonies, along with **VICEROYS**, who were in charge of **VICEROYALTIES**. The clergy acted as a local government. They forced Native Americans to follow Spanish ways and beliefs, though sometimes they allowed for a blending of Native American and Spanish cultures.

VICEROY

a person who rules a section of land called a viceroyalty in the name of a king or queen

BRITISH and DUTCH SETTLEMENTS

The first permanent British settlement in what was to become the United States was **JAMESTOWN**, settled in 1607 in Virginia. Jamestown flourished once **CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH** developed relations with the Native Americans, who taught the settlers how to grow maize and helped them cultivate tobacco.



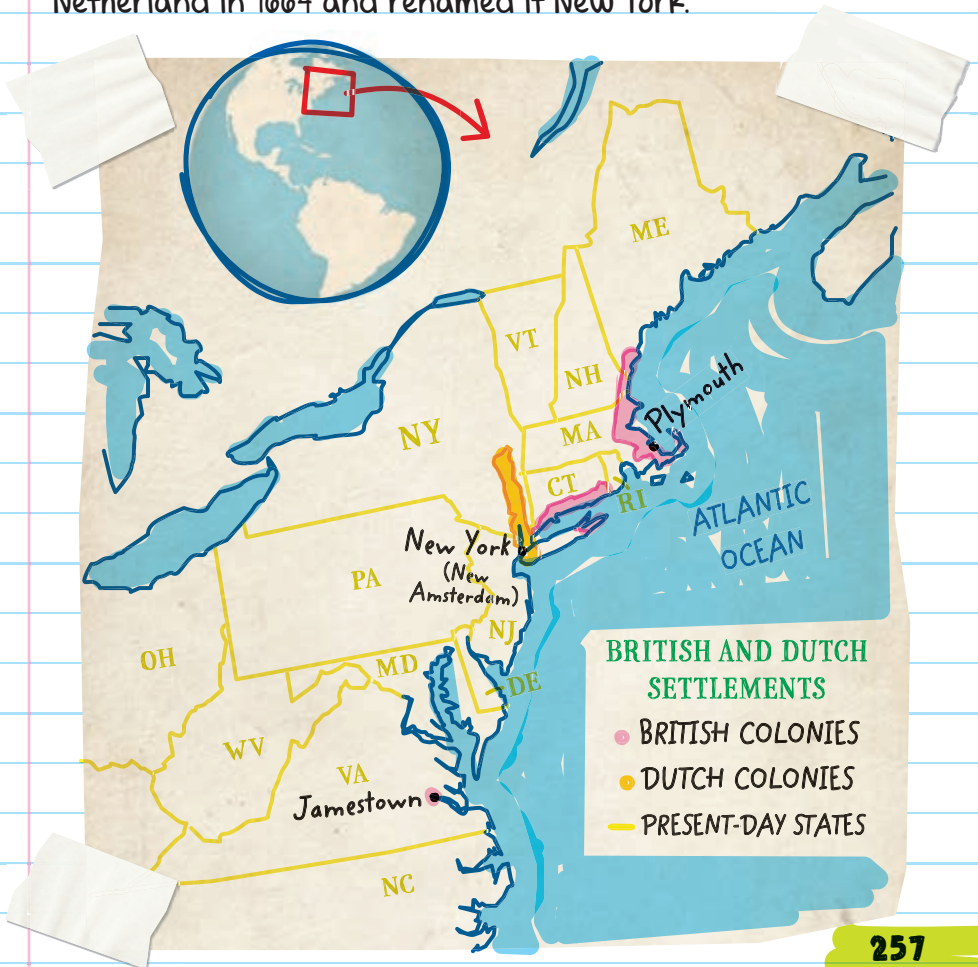
JAMESTOWN

Another British settlement was **PLYMOUTH**, started in 1620 by the **PILGRIMS**, who were called that because of their journey, or pilgrimage, to seek religious freedom.

The Dutch established a **COLONY** named New Netherland in 1624, and then the city of New Amsterdam, along with colonies in the Caribbean. The British took over New Netherland in 1664 and renamed it New York.

COLONY

a settlement of people living in a new territory that is controlled by its parent nation



Numerous English colonies sprang up on the East Coast of North America. These colonies expanded and pushed the Native American population westward. As before, Europeans brought diseases that ravaged the native populations.



FRENCH SETTLEMENTS

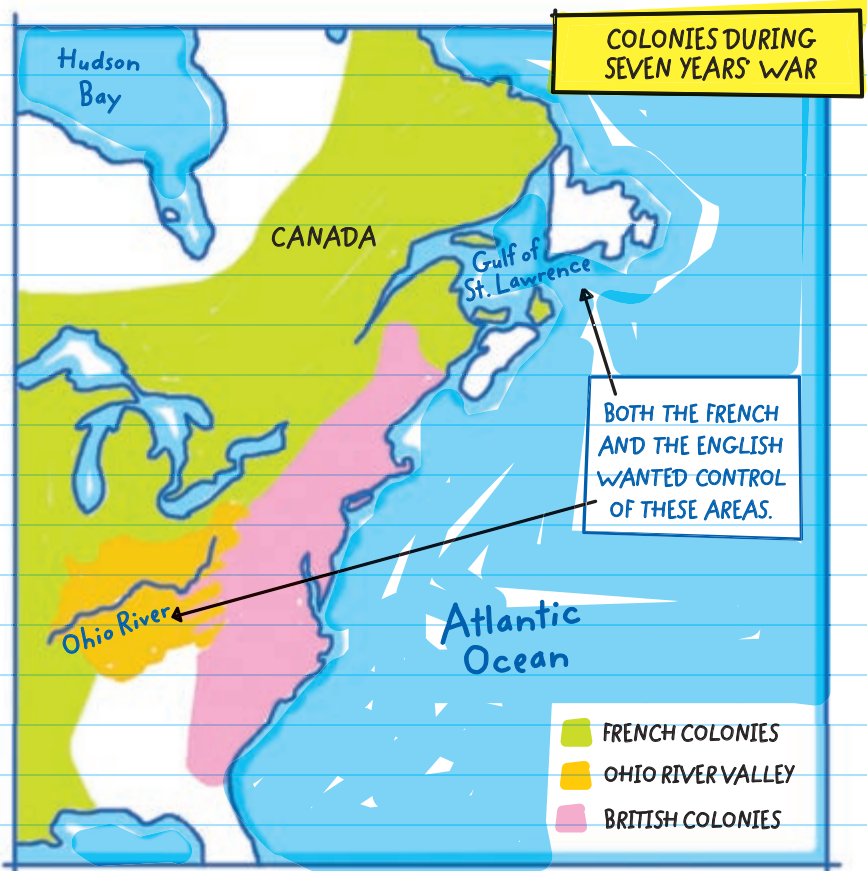
In 1608, **SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN** established a French settlement in what is today the Canadian province of Quebec.



The French traded fur with the help of Native Americans and eventually claimed land from the Great Lakes to Louisiana. The French colonies were only thinly populated, unlike the British North American colonies, which were home to over one million people by 1750.

The SEVEN YEARS' WAR

The French and the English had become the major COLONIZERS of North America. In 1756, they fought over the



land in the **FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR**, also known as the **SEVEN YEARS' WAR**. Both the French and the English wanted to control the fur trade and waterways of the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the Ohio River Valley. French trade activity was preventing the British from expanding.

The Europeans and their Native American trading partners joined together to fight their common enemy. The French learned **GUERRILLA WARFARE** from the Huron tribe, and the Iroquois helped the English because of their hatred

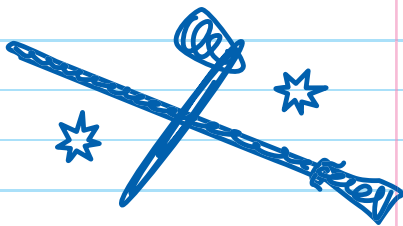
for the French explorers like Samuel de Champlain, who had slaughtered many Iroquois chiefs. George Washington fought for the English in the French and

Indian War, but learned the French could be beat using guerrilla tactics. The English colonists also had help from Britain's **PRIME MINISTER**,

WILLIAM PITT THE ELDER, who heavily funded the British navy for the war. The French were eventually defeated. Under the terms of the **TREATY OF PARIS**, the French surrendered control of Canada and the lands east of the Mississippi River to England.

GUERRILLA WARFARE

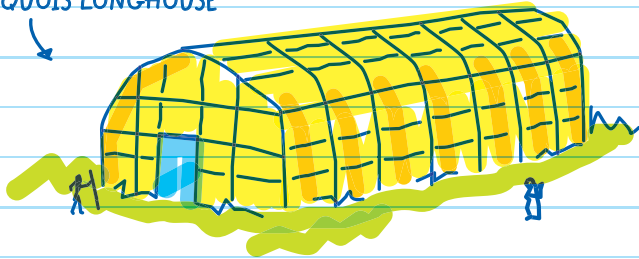
using small raids to disrupt army supply lines and engage in surprise attacks when the terrain is to one's advantage



NATIVE AMERICAN ADVANCEMENTS:

The Iroquois had a strong system of government, built some of the best canoes in the world, lived in longhouses, and were excellent traders.

IROQUOIS LONGHOUSE





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Name the explorer who colonized the South American country of Brazil.
2. How did this explorer's influence in Brazil differentiate the country from the rest of South America?
3. Spanish and Portuguese settlements in Central and South America generally formed along coastlines. Why do you think this might have been?
4. What was the encomienda system and how did the Spaniards benefit from it?
5. Match the colonizer to the colony:

A. Dutch	1. Jamestown
B. French	2. New Netherland
C. British	3. Quebec
6. It's pretty obvious how long the Seven Years' War lasted. What factors led up to it? Who were the key players, and what were they fighting for?

7. Samuel de Champlain established which of the following settlements?

A. Plymouth

B. Louisiana

C. Quebec

D. Montreal

8. What did the French learn from the Hurons?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Pedro Alvarez Cabral
2. Because Cabral was Portuguese, Brazil was controlled by Portugal, so Portuguese was spoken there (and is spoken there today)—unlike other South American countries where Spanish is spoken.
3. Coastlines were easy entrances for ships and allowed for trading between colonies and their rulers overseas.
4. The encomienda system allowed Spaniards to force Native Americans to work on Spanish-held plantations. Native Americans were supposed to get food and other care for their work but were treated poorly. The Spaniards profited greatly from the free labor.
5. A. Dutch: 2. New Netherland
B. French: 3. Quebec
C. British: 1. Jamestown
6. The Seven Years' War happened because both the French and the English wanted to control fur trade and the waterways of the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the Ohio River Valley. Also, French trade activity was holding back the British from expanding.
7. C. Quebec
8. Guerrilla warfare

Unit



Revolution and Enlightenment 1500-1865

Revolutions meant new types of governments, which meant new thoughts about the role of these governments in economics, politics, and society. New concepts in thought and science, and lots of change, were the theme for these three hundred years.



★ Chapter 23 ★

The SCIENTIFIC REVOLUTION

★ ★ ★ AND THE ★ ★ ★ ENLIGHTENMENT

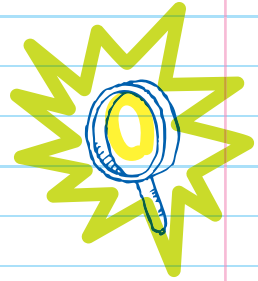
New ideas inspired by humanism and Luther's Reformation spread into the realm of science.

The SCIENTIFIC METHOD

The **SCIENTIFIC METHOD** means using a step-by-step process to conduct experiments.

Everyone should get the same results from an experiment if they follow the same set of rules, which, in turn, would prove that the results are correct. **FRANCIS BACON**, who developed the scientific method around 1620, was an English philosopher.

Bacon believed scientists needed to



use systematic reasoning to understand nature, so he developed a set of instructions for how people should collect and analyze evidence. Many other scientific and mathematical developments were made during this **SCIENTIFIC REVOLUTION** (approximately 1500–1700).

The SCIENTIFIC REVOLUTION

Some ancient scientists believed the earth moved around the sun. However, in general, people believed that Earth was the center of the universe, based on the ideas of the astronomer

PTOLEMY, who lived in the 100s CE. His

GEOCENTRIC theory made Earth the motionless core in a universe of spheres rotating around it. That put humans at the

center of the universe, and God

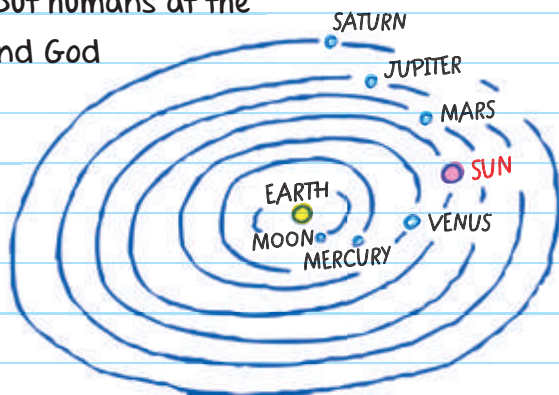
and the Heavens in the outermost sphere, which was the "prime mover"

that moves all other spheres. The Roman

Catholic Church accepted

Ptolemy's theory.

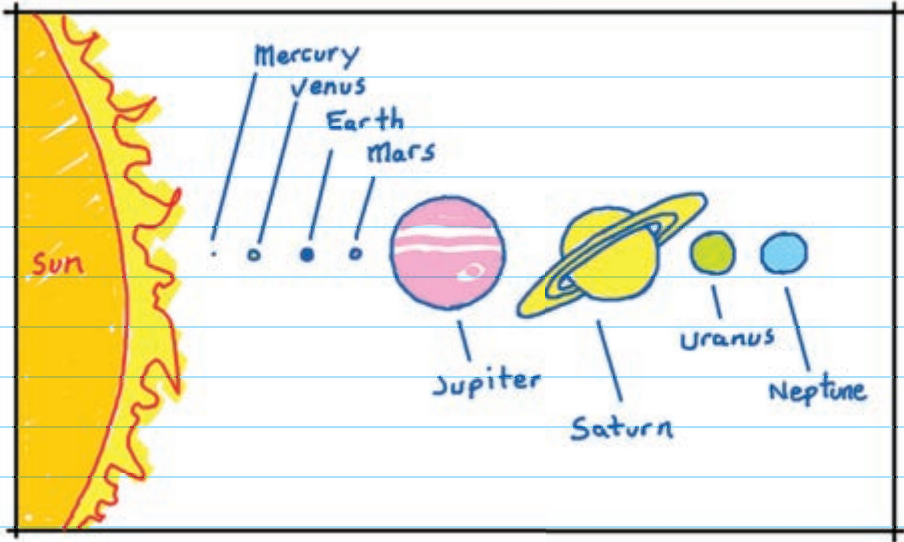
GEOCENTRIC
Earth-centered



In 1543, the Polish mathematician and Catholic priest

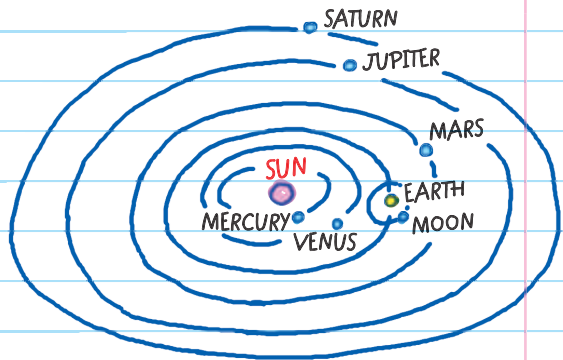
NICOLAUS COPERNICUS revived the proposition that the

solar system was **HELIOCENTRIC**—that the sun was at the center—which was originally conceived by the ancient Greek



astronomer and philosopher **ARISTARCHUS**. Copernicus found that while planets revolved around the sun, the moon revolved around the earth. Astronomer **JOHANNES KEPLER** agreed, and he calculated that planetary orbits are **ELLIPTICAL**, an oval rather than circular shape.

These findings made the Catholic Church nervous, but when the mathematician **GALILEO GALILEI** confirmed with a telescope that Ptolemy's theories were wrong,



the church got really upset. Galileo's telescope showed that the planets had mountains and moons, just like Earth. They weren't heavenly bodies made of pure spheres of

light. Galileo published his findings in **STARRY MESSENGER** in 1610—and the church sentenced him to life imprisonment. Other scientists were also jailed for proposing theories that opposed the teachings of the Catholic Church.



Remember Galileo with this rhyme:

Galileo said, “The Earth revolves around the Sun.”
So the Catholic Church imprisoned him,
and his teaching days were done.

DISCOVERIES in MATH and PHYSICS

In the 1630s, **RENÉ DESCARTES** proposed a system of geometry using letters in math. Descartes's work became the basis of analytic geometry.

“I THINK, THEREFORE I AM”

Descartes was a philosopher who also wrote about doubt and uncertainty, and about casting aside everything he had ever learned and starting from scratch. The only thing he believed he could truly know to be true, beyond a doubt, was that he himself existed. That’s where “I think, therefore I am” comes from—that was Descartes.

THE SCIENTIFIC

1507-1542:

Nicolaus Copernicus publishes two books about how the solar system is heliocentric, which places the sun at its center.



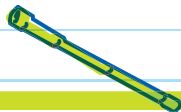
1616:

The Catholic Church bans Copernicus's books.



1610:

Galileo uses a telescope to look at the planets and the moon. He publishes his discoveries in *Starry Messenger*.



1628:

William Harvey publishes a book on anatomy and shows that the human heart is what pumps blood through the body.



REVOLUTION

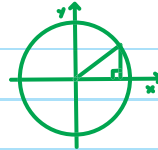
1632:

Galileo's book is banned by the Catholic Church.



1630s:

René Descartes studies mathematics to create analytic geometry.



1633:

Galileo is accused of heresy by the church and goes on trial. He is sentenced to life in prison and is closely watched by church authorities.



1687:

Sir Isaac Newton publishes *Philosophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica*, where he describes his theory of gravity in the universe.





SIR ISAAC NEWTON studied the motion of planets and of objects on Earth. In the late 1600s, he presented a set of laws that mathematically explained motion and explained that every object in the universe is attracted to every other object by a force called **GRAVITY** (or: why stuff falls down). Newton's ideas led people to see the universe as a massive machine with specific laws. His ideas dominated the view of how the universe works until **ALBERT EINSTEIN** proposed his theory of relativity in the twentieth century (a different way of explaining the finer details of how the universe works).

English doctor **WILLIAM HARVEY** made advances in anatomy when he discovered that the human heart (not the arteries, as previously thought) pumps blood in a circuit throughout the body. He published a book on his findings in 1628.

The ENLIGHTENMENT

The Scientific Revolution led to the **ENLIGHTENMENT**, a movement in Europe during the eighteenth century. People believed that science, reason, and natural laws of behavior would help them better understand the world and bring them to a more

ENLIGHTENED

to be very knowledgeable or aware; freed from ignorance

ENLIGHTENED state. Also called the **AGE OF REASON**, the Enlightenment affected thinking in politics, literature, art, religion, and, of course, science.

The ENLIGHTENMENT and INDIVIDUAL RIGHTS

The Enlightenment brought about new theories on how the government should be run. Many ideas were based on the rights of individuals. Descartes thought that anyone with a good education could reason and make good decisions, and people could govern themselves.

JOHN LOCKE had ideas about an individual's rights. He disagreed with the idea of the divine right of kings and believed that all people had **NATURAL RIGHTS** to **LIFE, LIBERTY, AND PROPERTY**. His book *TWO TREATISES OF GOVERNMENT* (1690) argued that people, not the king, should hold the power of the government. According to Locke, the government needed to follow the natural laws of the people and protect their rights. If it failed to do so, the people should have the government overthrown. The American Declaration of Independence used many of Locke's ideas.

Use this repetition to remember John Locke:
John **LOCKE** was against the divine right of kings—
he didn't want to get **LOCKED** into someone else's
rules, but instead pursue his own rights.
Life, Liberty, and Property = Locke approved!

According to **JEAN-JACQUES ROUSSEAU**, people in a society both depend on each other and compete with each other.

They need a **SOCIAL CONTRACT** in which everyone agrees to be governed by the general will of society as a whole, and that'll be what's best for everyone. Rousseau wrote about this idea in **THE SOCIAL CONTRACT**, published in 1762.

The ENLIGHTENMENT and ECONOMIC THOUGHT

ADAM SMITH, a Scottish philosopher, supported the idea of **LAISSEZ-FAIRE** in his work **AN INQUIRY INTO THE NATURE AND CAUSES OF THE WEALTH OF NATIONS** (1776).

LAISSEZ-FAIRE
a French term that means "to let people do what they want" or let the economy develop naturally

↪ OFTEN ABBREVIATED AS "THE WEALTH OF NATIONS"

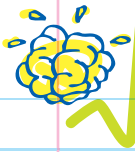
A laissez-faire government protects citizens from invasions, defends them from injustice, and takes care of public works needed for trade (like keeping roads in good shape).

A laissez-faire government does NOT interrupt the development of the economy, regulate it, or interfere.

Smith believed that if individuals pursue their own economic self-interests, everyone benefits. He is considered the father of **CAPITALISM**.

CAPITALISM
an economic system in which the production and distribution of goods is controlled by individuals and corporations, not the state

↪ THE ECONOMIC SYSTEM OF THE U.S.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Who developed the scientific method, and what is it?
2. What theory did Galileo prove to be right?
3. What sorts of ideas did Sir Isaac Newton come up with?
4. What was the principal idea of the Enlightenment?
5. Who is considered to be the father of capitalism?
 - A. John Locke
 - B. Adam Smith
 - C. Jean-Jacques Rousseau
 - D. René Descartes
6. What is a laissez-faire government?
7. Who said, "I think, therefore I am"?
 - A. Locke
 - B. Smith
 - C. Voltaire
 - D. Descartes

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Francis Bacon developed the scientific method, which is a set of instructions for how people should collect and analyze evidence. The scientific method means using a step-by-step process to conduct experiments.
2. Galileo Galilei confirmed that the heliocentric theory (that the earth moves around the sun) is right and that the geocentric theory (the earth is the center of the universe) was wrong.
3. Sir Isaac Newton presented a set of laws that mathematically explained motion and explained that every object in the universe is attracted to every other object by a force called gravity.
4. The principal idea of the Enlightenment was that science, reason, and natural laws of behavior would help people better understand the world and bring them to a more enlightened state.
5. B. Adam Smith
6. A laissez-faire government does not interrupt economic development or regulate the economy, but it does protect and defend citizens as well as take care of public works necessary for trade.
7. D. Descartes

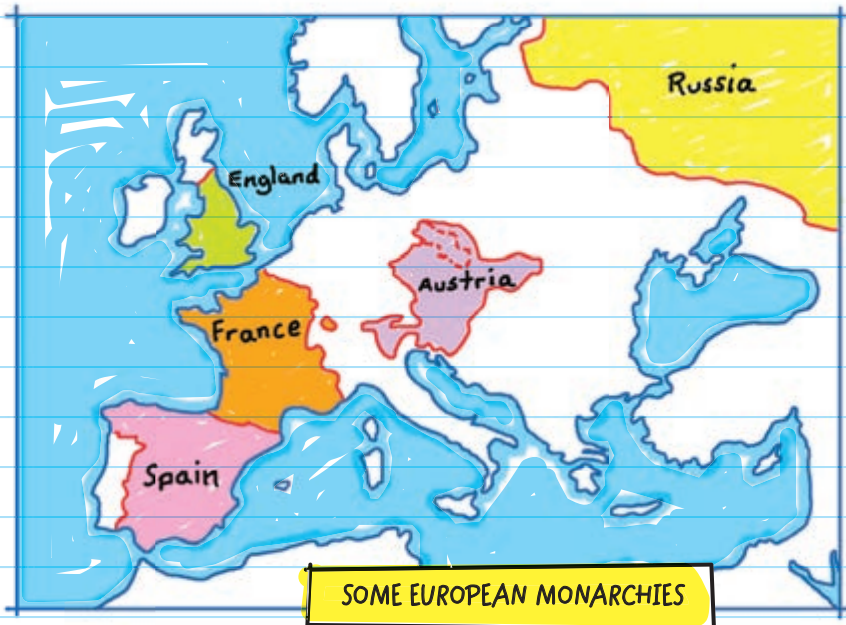
★ Chapter 24 ★

MONARCHIES



RISE in EUROPE

Monarchies arose as a form of government all across Europe. Some monarchs improved conditions in their nations. Others took advantage of their power, prompting revolt.



SPANISH MONARCHS

CHARLES I of Spain inherited the Holy Roman Empire and became **CHARLES V** (the guy who outlawed Martin Luther). When Charles gave up his throne in 1550, his brother Ferdinand took over the Holy Roman Empire, and Charles V's son **PHILIP II** became king of Spain.



CHARLES V



PHILIP II

Philip II had **ABSOLUTE RULE**, meaning that he wielded ultimate control over the government and its people. He had the authority to lead an **INQUISITION** to hold trials for people accused of "false" religious beliefs, and he removed many Protestants, Jews, and Muslims from Spain. But after he tried to conquer England with his Armada and lost, Spain's power declined.

INQUISITION

an official investigation

FRANCE UNDER KING LOUIS XIII

Absolute monarchs also ruled in France. Henry IV reigned peacefully with the Huguenots and Catholics after his conversion to Catholicism. **LOUIS XIII** was only a young boy when he became king after Henry, so **ARMAND JEAN DU PLESSIS DE RICHELIEU** helped him and his mother **MARIE DE' MEDICI** (the regent) rule and helped keep things in order. He built relations with Protestant governments and let the Huguenots keep their

HE LATER BECAME
CARDINAL ARMAND
RICHELIEU.

religious rights. But he took away their political and military rights to prevent them from growing too powerful. Paranoid

* Blah Blah, Richelieu, Blah Blah...*



about losing power, Richelieu set up a network of spies to uncover secret plots by discontented nobles. He crushed conspiracies and executed the conspirators.

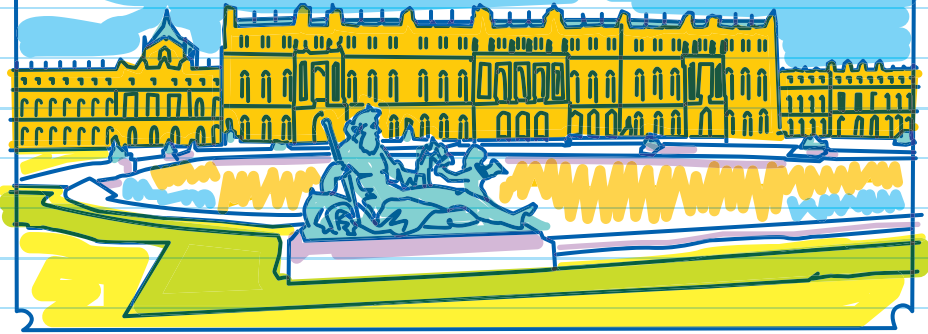
This was the time of *The Three Musketeers*! It is a popular adventure novel about an elite fighting force in France.

FRANCE'S "SUN KING"

LOUIS XIV was only four when he inherited the monarchy in 1643. He got help from chief minister **CARDINAL MAZARIN**, who took control of the government. Like Richelieu, Mazarin crushed any opposition from nobles.

Eventually, Louis XIV grew old enough to rule on his own and became an absolute monarch for over half a century. Altogether he reigned for over 72 years. He stripped power from nobles, local officials, and others and created an elaborate and decadent royal court at **VERSAILLES**. Every decision had to be approved by him. Louis XIV gained complete authority over foreign policy, the church, and taxes.

VERSAILLES



He called himself the **SUN KING**—the source of light for all his people. His rule was based on the divine right of kings; a rebellion against a king was a rebellion against God.

Louis XIV waged four wars between 1667 and 1713. The cost of Louis's courts, palaces, and wars grew too great for France's budget. When he died in 1715, France faced enormous debt and a legion of enemies.

Louis XIV tried to convert the Huguenots to Catholicism by destroying Huguenot churches and closing their schools. Nearly 200,000 Huguenots fled to England, the German states, and elsewhere in order to escape the king's **PERSECUTION**.

RUSSIAN MONARCHS

Russian monarchs were called **CZARS** (derived from "Caesar"). **PETER I** ruled from 1682 to 1725 and loved Western Europe. He wanted Russia to adopt customs and manners from Western Europe and be more like it. He ordered Russian men to shave their beards to look more like Western Europeans. If they didn't, they were taxed! Peter I built a strong navy, enlarged Russia, and built the great city of St. Petersburg, which earned him the nickname **PETER THE GREAT**. More than three decades after his death, **CATHERINE THE GREAT** ruled from 1762 to 1796. She expanded Russia, encouraged education, and modernized farming.

AUSTRIAN MONARCHS

In Austria, **MARIA THERESA** became ruler of the immense **HAPSBURG EMPIRE** in 1740 after the death of her father, Charles VI. She was the only woman ever to rule the 650-year-old dynasty. When Maria Theresa took the throne in 1740, Prussia's



KING FREDERICK THE GREAT invaded, declaring that he didn't accept Maria Theresa as the legitimate ruler of the empire. The war grew when France joined Prussia against Austria and Great Britain came to Austria's defense, in what became known as the **WAR OF THE AUSTRIAN SUCCESSION** (1740-1748). The war ended with the signing of the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748.

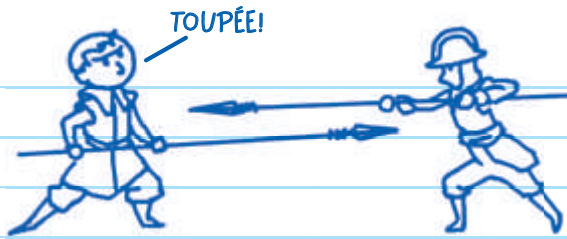
Maria Theresa built a strong government, created a fair justice system, united the Hapsburg Empire, and improved conditions for serfs, all while having sixteen children.

The BEGINNINGS of the STUART MONARCHY in ENGLAND

England didn't have an absolute monarchy; it had a **LIMITED MONARCHY**. England's government was in part controlled by Parliament.

After Elizabeth I's death in 1603, the **TUDOR** dynasty came to an end. Elizabeth's cousin **JAMES I** (king of Scotland) took the throne as the first in the line of many **STUART** dynasty leaders. James refused to work with Parliament. He believed it was his divine right to rule. This attitude led to the growing discontent of the **PURITANS**, a group of Protestants in England inspired by Calvinist ideas. Many Puritans who were part of the House of Commons (the lower house of Parliament) didn't support the king's strong alliance with the Church of England and wanted to separate the church from the king.

James's son **CHARLES I** ruled next, and his distaste for Parliament was even stronger than his father's. In 1628, he ordered Parliament to stop meeting and didn't let them meet for twelve years! Civil war followed. Parliament's supporters (called **ROUNDHEADS** because of their short



haircuts) went to battle in 1642 against the king's supporters, the **CAVALIERS**, or **ROYALISTS**. By 1646, the Roundheads had won, and Charles I was taken captive.

ENGLAND during the PROTECTORATE

OLIVER CROMWELL, one of the military leaders behind the Roundheads, worked to protect people's rights against absolute power. Cromwell dismissed members of Parliament who weren't on his side. The Parliament that remained, the so-called **RUMP PARLIAMENT**, ordered Charles I to be executed for **TREASON** in 1649.

TREASON

a betrayal, especially of one's country or sovereign (leader)

Parliament overthrew the monarchy and the House of Lords and declared England a new kind of republic,

COMMONWEALTH

term for the English government beginning when the monarchy ended in 1649 and lasting until the Restoration in 1660

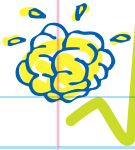
a **COMMONWEALTH**. Then Cromwell formed a military dictatorship and ruled as a different kind of **absolute** ruler, not as king but as **LORD PROTECTOR** of England during the period known as the **PROTECTORATE** (1653-1659).

↑ THIS IS IRONY!

ENGLAND after the RESTORATION of the STUART MONARCHY

When Cromwell died in 1658, Charles I's son **CHARLES II** took the throne and restored the monarchy. But things were different. During the English **RESTORATION** (beginning in 1660), Charles II suspended laws that Parliament had passed earlier that discriminated against Catholics and Puritans, and Parliament in turn said that only Anglicans could hold military and civil offices. More religious and political disagreement followed. Just before his death, Charles II converted to Catholicism, leaving his brother **JAMES II** to follow his reign. James II was also Catholic, and problems with Parliament worsened.

Parliament asked **WILLIAM III** (also known as **WILLIAM OF ORANGE**), the captain general of Holland, to rule England. James left London, and in 1689 William III and **MARY II**—James II's son-in-law and daughter—were declared king and queen of England during the **GLORIOUS REVOLUTION** (so-called because it involved very little bloodshed and the time period that followed was peaceful). The pair accepted Parliament's offer to take up the throne and signed the English **BILL OF RIGHTS**, which set forth Parliament's right to make laws and **LEVY** (impose) taxes. It also said the monarchy could raise an army only with Parliament's consent, and it helped create a system of government based on a limited monarchy.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What does it mean for a leader to use absolute rule?
Give an example of using this power.
2. During the 1600s, a popular nickname for Cardinal Richelieu was "the Iron Cardinal." Who was Cardinal Richelieu, and why might the people have called him that?
3. Who was the "Sun King"?
4. "Czar" is the Russian way of saying _____.
5. What advancements did Peter and Catherine of Russia make to earn "the Great" after their names?
6. Who were the Puritans?
7. The Glorious Revolution was led by _____ and _____ in 1689.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Absolute rule means the leader has complete and ultimate control over the government and its people. Philip II of Spain used absolute rule to hold trials for people accused of "false" religious beliefs and remove many Protestants, Jews, and Muslims from Spain.

2. Cardinal Richelieu helped Louis XIII rule France. He formed relationships with Protestant governments and let the Huguenots keep their religious rights. However, he might have been called the Iron Cardinal because he took away the Huguenots' political and military rights, created a network of spies, crushed conspiracies, and executed conspirators.

3. Louis XIV called himself the Sun King.

4. Caesar

5. Peter earned his name by building a strong Russian navy, enlarging Russia, and building the city of St. Petersburg. Catherine earned her name by expanding Russia, encouraging education, and modernizing farming.

6. The Puritans were a group of Protestants in England inspired by Calvinist ideas. Many Puritans were part of the House of Commons and wanted to distance the Church of England from the king.

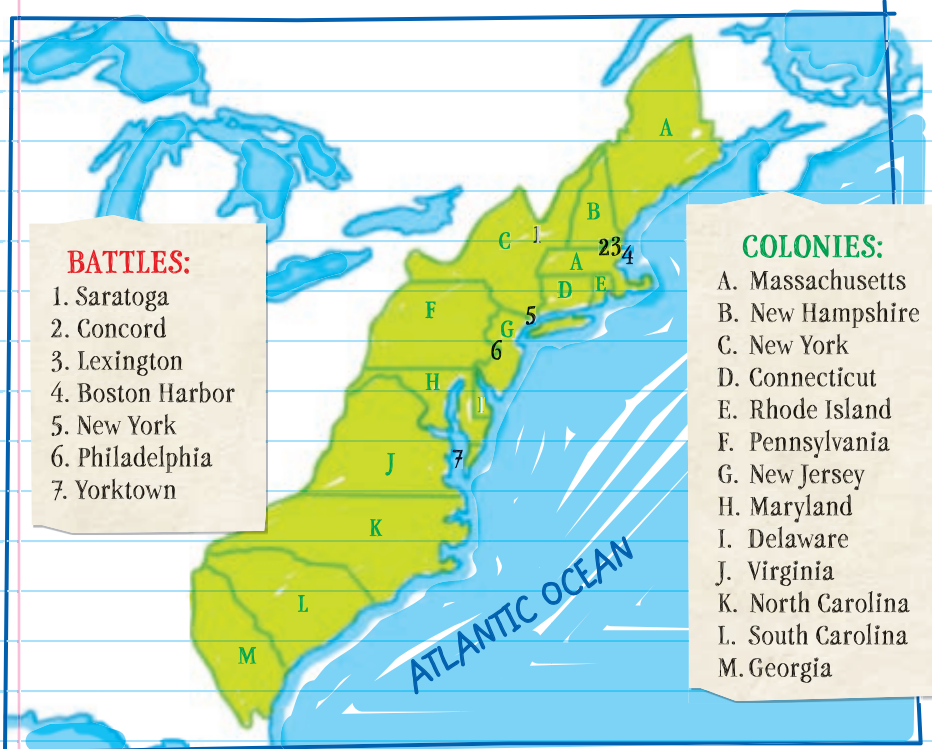
7. William III (or William of Orange) and Mary II

★ Chapter 25 ★

The AMERICAN ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ REVOLUTION

1775-1783

In 1776, America formally declared independence from the British. How did it happen?

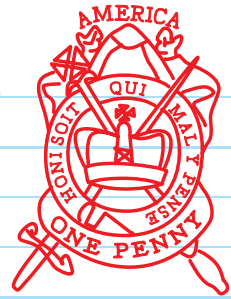


The BEGINNINGS of the REVOLUTION: TAXES

Back in 1607, 105 colonists from Britain established their first permanent North American homes in Jamestown. A hundred or so years later, what has been estimated as up to 1,700,000 people of European descent were living in British North America. Many of these settlers had never even been to Europe. Britain profited economically from having colonies in America and required all goods to be shipped on British ships. But after the Seven Years' War with the French, the British government was suddenly in debt. The colonists were upset that they had to leave their families to fight England's war.

Since the war took place in America, the British believed the colonists should help pay off the debt, so they taxed them. The **SUGAR ACT** of 1764 actually LOWERED taxes on molasses that were brought into the colonies, hoping to minimize **SMUGGLING**. Because they were trying to stop smugglers, ships were searched by customs officers. Any suspected contraband could be taken away, even before the smuggler was convicted. Colonists believed that the Sugar Act violated their legal rights as British citizens by denying the right to trial—and some went even further: **JAMES OTIS**, a lawyer in Boston, argued that Parliament didn't have a right to tax the colonists at all, since the colonists didn't have representatives there to debate the taxes. In 1765, Parliament passed the **STAMP ACT**, which required that

all printed materials be produced on British paper and bear a stamp for which taxes needed to be paid.



The colonists were upset—they already paid taxes to Great Britain, and they didn't feel they had the same rights as other English citizens. They had no choice in electing governors or anyone in Parliament.

It was **TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION**.

When Parliament taxed the colonists under laws called the **TOWNSHEND ACTS**, the colonists refused to pay.

"NO TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION" WAS A PHRASE USED BY THE COLONISTS IN PROTEST.

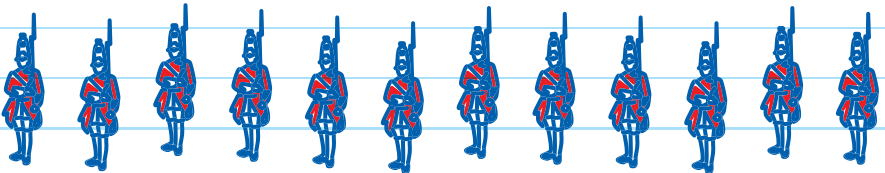
STAMP AGENTS WERE TARRED AND FEATHERED, AND MOBS PREVENTED STAMP DISTRIBUTIONS.



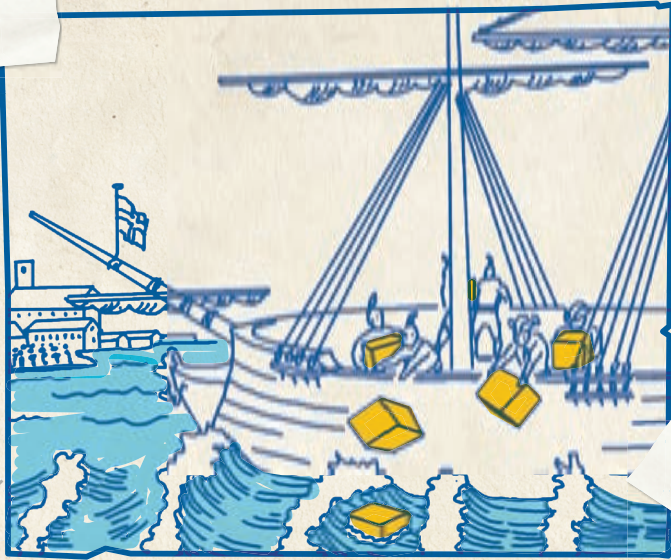
In response, England's **KING GEORGE III** sent troops to Boston. In March 1770, an argument between a British soldier (a **REDCOAT**) and a **CIVILIAN** attracted a crowd and grew violent. The Redcoats killed five colonists in the **BOSTON MASSACRE**.

CIVILIAN

a person who is not on active duty with the armed services or a police force



Parliament passed the **TEA ACT** in 1773, which allowed the British to sell tea to the colonists at a reduced rate but destroyed the businesses of local tea merchants.



On December 16, 1773, protestors threw British tea overboard into the Boston harbor in the **BOSTON TEA PARTY**.

WAR and the STRUGGLE for INDEPENDENCE

The colonists organized themselves, creating the **FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS** in Philadelphia in 1774. The colonists were encouraged to take arms and get ready. When King George III sent more Redcoats to the colonies, **PAUL REVERE** took his famous midnight ride on April 18, 1775, to warn the colonists. British troops marched to **CONCORD** and **LEXINGTON**, Massachusetts; the colonists fought back and the **AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR** officially began.

Colonists who supported independence were called **PATRIOTS**, while those who remained loyal to Britain were called **LOYALISTS**. Many Loyalists fled the colonies, often heading to Canada.

At the **SECOND CONTINENTAL CONGRESS**, **GEORGE WASHINGTON** became commander in chief of the colonists' army, called the **CONTINENTAL ARMY**.



A number of battles between the Continental Army and the British followed. The colonists tried to make peace with King George III by sending him the **OLIVE BRANCH PETITION**, which stated that the colonists still wanted to be loyal to England as long as their rights were protected, but King George III ignored it and sent more British troops to the colonies.

Initially most Native Americans didn't take sides in the Revolutionary War, but the majority of those who fought supported the British. The British convinced many tribes to fight against colonists settling in frontier regions.

The Second Continental Congress debated what to do, and on July 4, 1776, the colonies declared their independence from the British in the **DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE**.

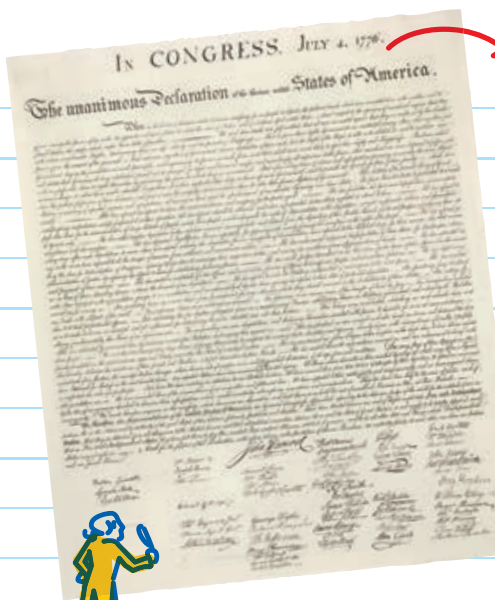


THOMAS JEFFERSON wrote it, stating that the people had the right to overthrow their government if the government did not take care of them. It gave people the right to "**LIFE, LIBERTY, AND THE PURSUIT OF HAPPINESS**," which are also called

INALIENABLE rights. Jefferson's ideas were influenced by the French Enlightenment thinkers and John Locke.

The committee to draft the Declaration of Independence also included John Adams and Benjamin Franklin.

INALIENABLE
absolute; not capable of being surrendered or transferred



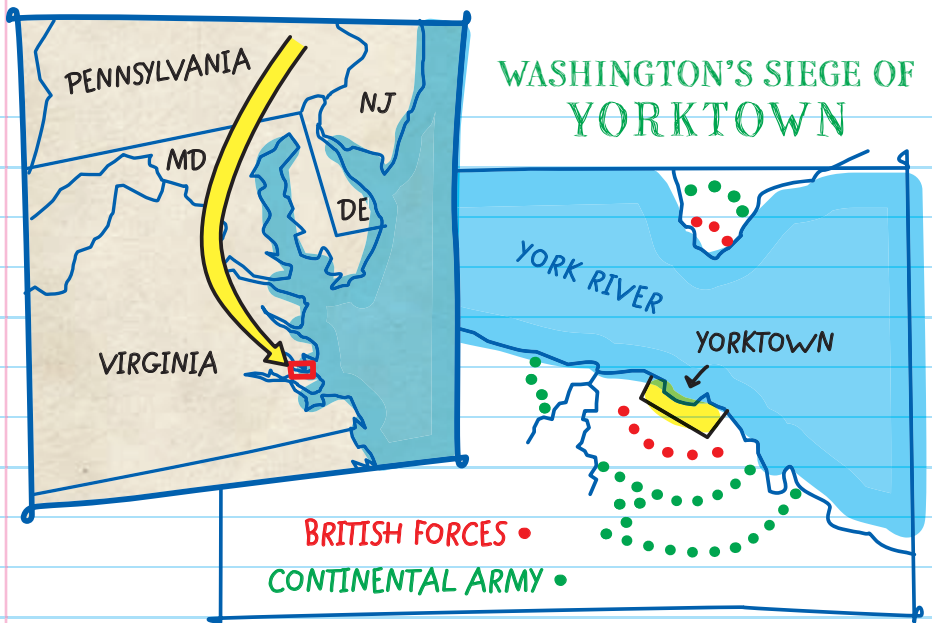
The DECLARATION of INDEPENDENCE in 40 WORDS

Government is a social contract. If the ruler doesn't protect the people and their natural rights, the contract is broken and the people can overthrow him. King George III broke the contract, so now the U.S. is its own nation.

The FIGHTING GOES ON

Although the colonists had declared their independence, the war wasn't over yet. The Continental Army soon got help from the French, which led to a victory in the **BATTLE OF SARATOGA** in 1777. After that, the French supplied more arms and money to the colonists as a way of getting back at the British after their losses during the Seven Years' War of 1756. Some French officers, such as the **MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE**, even served in Washington's army. The colonists and the French used guerrilla warfare tactics that they learned from the Native Americans to ambush the English in the forests.



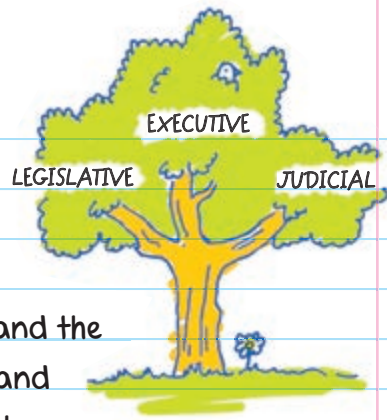


Other countries were also eager to get back at the British and help tear down the empire the British had built. Spain and the Dutch Republic (present-day Netherlands) entered the war against the British. Under the leadership of George Washington, the colonists defeated the British army at the **BATTLE OF YORKTOWN** in 1781, which ended the fighting. In 1783, both sides signed the **TREATY OF PARIS**, which formally recognized the colonists' independence from the British.

INDEPENDENCE at LAST

The colonies wrote the **ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION** in 1777 to govern the new country, but it granted too much power to the states and not enough power to the federal government to enforce laws. In 1787, a new document, the **CONSTITUTION**, outlined a set of rules in which national and state governments would share power. The national government

was to be divided into the three branches that are in place today: the **LEGISLATIVE** branch (which creates the laws), the **EXECUTIVE** branch (which carries out the laws), and the **JUDICIAL** branch (which interprets and explains the laws). Each branch has the power to restrain, or check, the acts of the other branches. This created a system of **CHECKS AND BALANCES** to keep each branch in order. In 1790, the Constitution was **RATIFIED** by all thirteen United States.



RATIFY
to formally approve

Congress proposed some changes, ten of which were approved as **AMENDMENTS** to the Constitution and became known as the **BILL OF RIGHTS**. Ratified in 1791, they guaranteed:

AMENDMENT
changes, additions, or modifications

the right of free speech

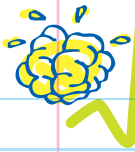
freedom of the press and of religion

trial by jury

the right to bear arms

the protection of property rights, and more

Rights for women, African Americans, and Native Americans were still not secure, but the United States of America had begun.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What does "no taxation without representation" mean?
2. What happened after the colonists decided not to pay taxes?
3. Who wrote the Declaration of Independence?
4. The Declaration of Independence calls for three inalienable rights. What are they? Who influenced the writing of the Declaration?
5. How many constitutional amendments are in the Bill of Rights?
6. Whose rights were not included in the Bill of Rights?
7. Why was the Battle of Saratoga such a decisive one?
 - A. It was the first battle of the American Revolution.
 - B. It led to British victory over New York and Philadelphia.
 - C. It prompted French participation and the support of the colonists.
 - D. It marked the decisive victory of the colonists over the British.
8. American independence came through which 1783 Treaty?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. "No taxation without representation" was a phrase that colonists used to protest the fact that they had no choice in electing governors or any of the people in Parliament yet still had to pay taxes to Great Britain.
2. When the colonists refused to pay taxes, King George III sent troops to Boston and there was a confrontation called the Boston Massacre in which Redcoats killed five colonists.
3. The Declaration of Independence was written by Thomas Jefferson.
4. The three inalienable rights are "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness." The Declaration was influenced by the French Enlightenment thinkers and John Locke.
5. There are ten amendments in the Bill of Rights.
6. The Bill of Rights didn't include rights for women, African Americans, or Native Americans.
7. C. It prompted French participation and the support of the colonists.
8. The Treaty of Paris in 1783 formally recognized the American colonists' independence from the British.

★ Chapter 26 ★

The FRENCH ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ REVOLUTION

1789-1799



Like the Americans, the French wanted to overthrow their royal government. They were tired of the injustice of the class system in France. The first shot in the Battles of Lexington and Concord in the American Revolution was called "the shot heard 'round the world" in part because it showed people of other countries that they could replace monarchy with democracy.

DISCONTENT RISES in FRANCE

France, like England, had to repay war debt. To figure out how, in May 1789, French **KING LOUIS XVI** called a meeting of the **ESTATES-GENERAL**, which included representatives from the three estates of French society:



THE FIRST ESTATE was the clergy. It was a mix of poor parish priests and cardinals and bishops from noble families, and it made up the smallest part of the population.

THE SECOND ESTATE was the nobility. The nobility made up a larger share of the population and owned about one-fourth of the country's land.





THE THIRD ESTATE was peasants, craft workers, and middle-class members of society, who formed about seventy percent of the French population but owned very little land compared to the other estates. Many of them didn't have any land to live on at all.

Members of the Third Estate resented the privileges granted to the nobles. Neither the First nor the Second Estates were required to pay the French tax on land, called **TAILLE**. Only the poorest paid it.

The middle class in France was also called the **BOURGEOISIE**, when the term denoted someone who lived in a walled town.

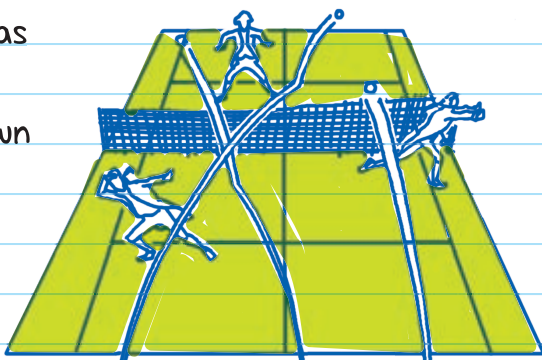
Bad harvests in 1787 and 1788 led to food shortages, rising food prices, and unemployment. The king continued spending his wealth on fancy entertainment and elaborate dinners. The people were starving, and there was his wife, **MARIE ANTOINETTE**, throwing another party!



The PEOPLE TAKE ACTION

Fed up with the monarchy's system of ruling and desperate for change, in June 1789, members of the Third Estate declared themselves the **NATIONAL ASSEMBLY**, a new governing body for France. The National Assembly had to meet in an indoor tennis court because they were locked out of the meeting hall in Versailles;

they believed the king was trying to get them to disband. In what is known as the **TENNIS COURT OATH**, they swore to continue meeting until a new constitution was written.



Louis XVI encouraged nobles and clergy to join this new assembly while at the same time mobilizing troops to dissolve it. On July 14, 1789, French citizens in Paris stormed the city's prison—the **BASTILLE**—in search of weapons and ammunition to defend themselves, but no ammunition was found. The angry crowd destroyed the Bastille one brick at a time. Revolts spread across the country.

JULY 14TH IS NOW
KNOWN AS BASTILLE DAY
AND CELEBRATES FRENCH
INDEPENDENCE. IT'S LIKE
FRANCE'S JULY 4TH!

MORE CHANGES in the GOVERNMENT

The National Assembly took over to create a government based on the new American democracy. The French wrote a document called the **DECLARATION OF THE RIGHTS OF MAN AND OF THE CITIZEN**. Approved in August 1789, it granted basic rights to individuals, such as "liberty, property, security, and resistance to oppression."

Many noblemen and clergy left France and convinced countries like Prussia and Austria to invade. The French government arrested the king for supposedly supporting these armies. A new constitution was set up in 1791, calling for a limited monarchy; there was still a king, but he was limited by the power of a **LEGISLATIVE ASSEMBLY**, which would make laws. However, this new government allowed only men who paid certain taxes and who were over twenty-five to vote, which was still not equality for all.

PROBLEMS in FRANCE ESCALATE

On top of all this, the people of France were still hungry. Mobs in Paris became violent. The **PARIS COMMUNE**, a group of radicals, called for universal male **SUFFRAGE** and for the Legislative Assembly to suspend the monarchy.

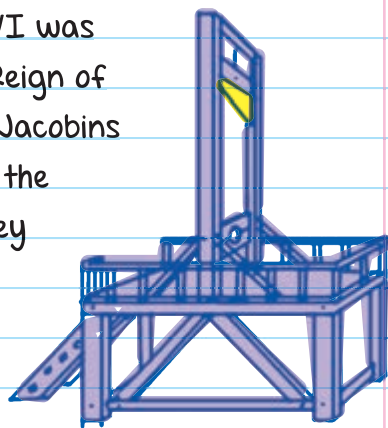
SUFFRAGE
the right to vote

In 1792, a new **NATIONAL CONVENTION** began meeting. They drafted a new constitution and abolished the monarchy to form a **REPUBLIC**, but it was unstable. Leaders struggled for power, and the National Assembly became divided. Various political clubs had formed during the revolution, each with its own ideas about how the republic should work.

A group led by **MAXIMILIEN ROBESPIERRE**, called the **JACOBINS**, declared a "policy of terror" to control their opponents, arresting people left and right for supporting the king or disagreeing with their **DECREES**. During the **REIGN OF TERROR** (1793–1794), thousands of people were **GUILLOTINED** at a public square in Paris that is now called **PLACE DE LA CONCORDE**, including Marie Antoinette. (Louis XVI was executed a few months before the Reign of Terror began.) Robespierre and the Jacobins ruled as dictators under the title of the **COMMITTEE OF PUBLIC SAFETY**. They kept an army of over a million men to push back invaders in the **FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS** (1792–1802). In July of 1794, Robespierre was arrested and accused of being a tyrant; he was executed the next day.

DECREE

a formal order having the force of law



GUILLOTINE

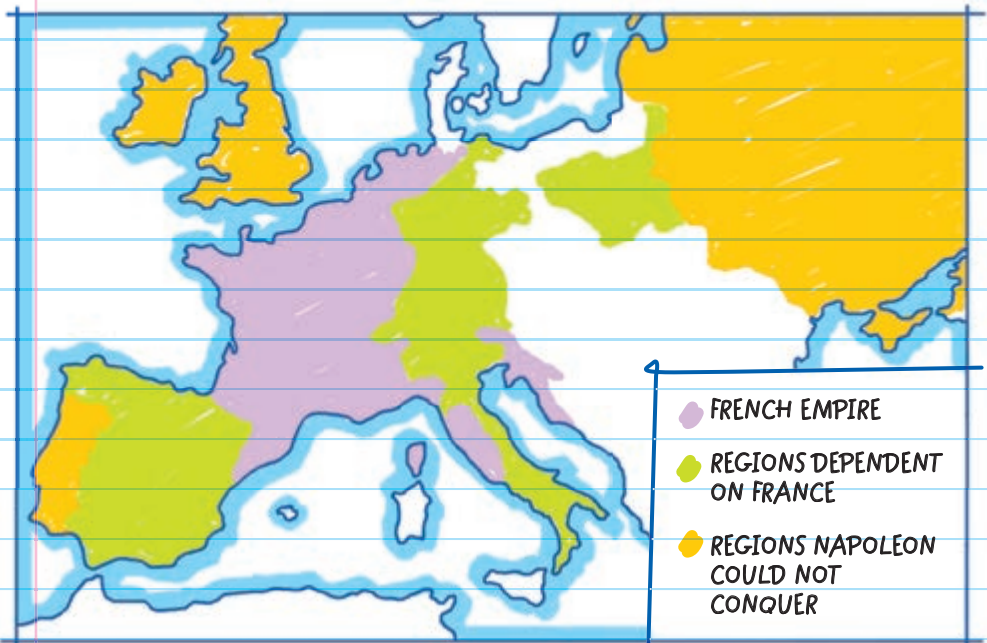
a device designed to cut the head off of a person

A NEW LEADER COMES to POWER

With Robespierre's death, the Reign of Terror came to an end. A new government, the **DIRECTORY**, took over. But they were weak. People did not know the best way to rule the country.

A national army hero named **NAPOLEON BONAPARTE** abolished the Directory and set up a new government in 1799, finally ending the French Revolution. Five years later, he declared himself **EMPEROR NAPOLEON I**.

By 1812, Napoleon had expanded France's empire to include present-day Italy, Germany, Switzerland, and other European countries (but not Britain).



British viscount Horatio Nelson defeated Napoleon's fleet at the **BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR** in 1805. Napoleon was a famous war leader who expanded France, but he made the mistake of expanding too much by invading Russia. His troops froze and fled. He also created the **NAPOLEONIC CODE** in 1804 to protect individual liberty, property rights, the right to work, and the right to one's own opinions. All citizens were equal before the law. On the **NEGATIVE** side: He censored nearly all of France's newspapers and books to protect his image. He had mail opened by the government police. Liberty was replaced by **DESPOTISM**.

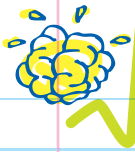
DESPOTISM

system of government in which the ruler has absolute, unlimited power

Eventually, Napoleon was **EXILED** from France by an alliance of European countries, but he escaped and went back to France. Napoleon was defeated at the **BATTLE OF WATERLOO** in present-day Belgium in June 1815 and was exiled again until his death in 1821. The emperor was gone, and the French still hadn't created a democracy.

EXILE

forced or voluntary absence from one's country or homeland



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What impact did the American Revolution have on French allies across the ocean?
2. French society was divided into three classes prior to the Revolution. What were they called and who was in each class?
3. What happened on July 14, 1789?
4. What was the French version of the Declaration of Independence called? What did it say?
5. What group did Maximilien Robespierre lead during the Reign of Terror?
6. Which of the following is one of the principles of the Napoleonic code?
 - A. All citizens are equal before the law.
 - B. Women's rights are recognized.
 - C. Rights of the military are most important.
 - D. Individual liberty is not allowed.
7. What happened to Napoleon at the Battle of Waterloo?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The American Revolution showed the people of other countries, including France, that they could replace monarchy with democracy, which is why they call the first shot in the Battles of Lexington and Concord "the shot heard 'round the world."
2. The First Estate was made up of the clergy. The Second Estate were the nobility. The Third Estate were peasants, craft workers, and middle-class people.
3. On July 14, 1789, French citizens stormed the Bastille, the prison in Paris, in search of weapons and ammunition and destroyed the prison one brick at a time.
4. The French version of the Declaration of Independence was called the Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen. It granted basic rights to individuals, such as "liberty, property, security, and resistance to oppression."
5. Maximilien Robespierre led the Jacobins. They ruled as dictators and called themselves the Committee of Public Safety.
6. A. All citizens are equal before the law.
7. Napoleon was defeated and sent into permanent exile after the Battle of Waterloo.

★ Chapter 27 ★

NATIONALISM ACROSS EUROPE

★ ★ ★ ★ ★ and ★ ★ ★ ★

INDEPENDENCE MOVEMENTS

★ ★ ★ ★ ★ in ★ ★ ★ ★

SOUTH AMERICA

★ ★ ★ and HAITI ★ ★

After Napoleon's rule ended, the many parts of Europe he had dominated were on their own. For nine months, European representatives from these countries met at the **CONGRESS OF VIENNA** (1814–1815). Meanwhile, in South America, several countries declared their independence.

NATIONALISM in EUROPE

The countries that took part in the Congress of Vienna (Russia, Sweden, Norway, France, the United Kingdom, Spain, Portugal, Austria, Denmark, and Prussia) tried to restore order by bringing back royal families that had been kicked out under Napoleon's rule. But **NATIONALISM** was growing in each country—the feeling that the people in each country were linked to each other through a common culture, not through loyalty to a monarch. The rise of nationalism was partly a response to Napoleon's rule: Napoleon had united the French people by encouraging national songs and holidays and promoting patriotism through flags and other symbols. This kind of national pride developed throughout Europe.

NATIONALISM

pride in one's nation;
patriotic feelings, ideas,
and/or actions

The 1830s REVOLUTIONS in EUROPE

Nationalism inspired people from all over Europe to fight against the kings and queens they no longer identified with. Several revolutions broke out in 1830.

After **CHARLES X** was appointed king of France in 1824 and tried to ignore the new French constitution, the French people staged the **JULY REVOLUTION** to bring in a new king, **KING LOUIS-PHILIPPE**, who restored power to the French people.

The Polish people revolted against the Russian rule of the czar, but they were unsuccessful.

A revolution led to the formation of the new country of Belgium.

A number of revolutions erupted in 1848 as well. Again, many of them failed, but the idea of nationalism held strong.

REVOLUTION AND UNIFICATION IN EUROPE



ITALY UNITES

In 1861, Italy became an independent country with the help

of **GIUSEPPE GARIBALDI** and his "red shirts," ← **BECAUSE THEY WORE RED**

who fought the Austrians for Italian independence

and raised an army of 1,000 volunteers. Garibaldi took control of Sicily in 1860, and then of Naples and Piedmont.

In 1861, a new state of Italy was declared under

KING VICTOR EMMANUEL II. It didn't include Venice

(controlled by Austria) or Rome (under France's control). In

1870, after France's defeat in the **FRANCO-PRUSSIAN WAR**,

these two areas were finally made part of Italy, with Rome as its capital.

GERMANY UNITES

Under the leadership of Prussian **KING WILHELM (WILLIAM**

I), **PRIME MINISTER OTTO VON BISMARCK** collected taxes

to strengthen the Prussian army and govern Prussia without

Parliament's input or approval. Bismarck went to war with

the Austrians and quickly defeated them. This gave Prussia

control of all of northern Germany. In 1870, in the Franco-

Prussian War, Prussia won France's provinces of Alsace

and Lorraine (and renamed the region Alsace-Lorraine).

This convinced the southern German states to join the North

German Confederation. In 1871, William I of Prussia was

named **KAISER**, or emperor, of the German Empire.

↑
ALSO FROM "CAESAR"

HAITI DECLARES INDEPENDENCE

The small island of **HISPANIOLA**

became independent in 1804. One part of Hispaniola was **SAINT-DOMINGUE**, a French sugar

colony with a population of slaves,

who were badly mistreated. Under the

leadership of **FRANÇOIS-DOMINIQUE**

TOUSSAINT-LOUVERTURE, over 100,000

of these slaves revolted and took over

Hispaniola. The Haitian slaves had made

their own language so the French would not be aware of their

plans and strategies. On New Year's Day in 1804, the western

part of the island declared itself free. This part is called

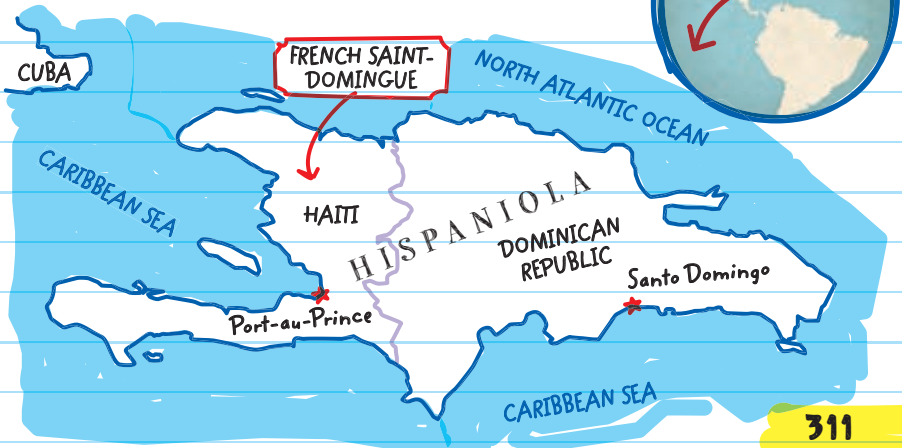
HAITI, and it was the first independent state in all of Latin

America. **JEAN-JACQUES DESSALINES**, another

leader in the Haitian revolution, became the

first ruler of this new nation.

HISPANIOLA is an island in the Caribbean consisting of modern-day Haiti and the Dominican Republic. It's one of the places Christopher Columbus explored during his 1492 voyage to the Americas.



FREEDOM for SOUTH AMERICA

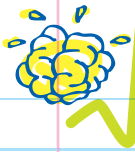
South America was under the control of Spain and Portugal until the 1800s, when **SIMÓN BOLÍVAR** led revolutions all over the continent. Spain was weak after its wars with Napoleon, and Bolívar took advantage of this and declared Venezuela independent in 1811. Spain fought for control in Venezuela for another decade, but eventually the country was freed from Spanish control. In 1819, Bolívar declared and won (with a small army) independence for a new nation, Colombia. Bolívar was a hero all over South America, freeing countries left and right.



JOSÉ DE SAN MARTÍN fought for the independence of Argentina and Chile. He helped free Peru from Spanish rule with Bolívar's help. By the end of 1824, Uruguay, Paraguay, and Bolivia were also liberated from Spanish rule. Bolívar and San Martín supported **CREOLE** rights and led Creole armies against **PENINSULARES**.

CREOLES
Spaniards born in the New World

PENINSULARES
Spaniards in the New World born in Spain



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Define "nationalism."
2. Who was responsible for unifying Italy?
3. Who was responsible for unifying Germany?
4. Venezuela's independence came in what year?
 - A. 1824
 - B. 1819
 - C. 1811
 - D. 1807
5. The first independent state in Latin America was _____.
It was originally a _____ colony.
6. Which famed South American leader led Venezuela and Colombia to independence?
7. Why were the residents of Saint-Domingue unhappy? Who led them to independence?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Nationalism is the feeling that the people in each country are connected to each other through their common culture (not through loyalty to a king or queen). Nationalism can also mean that you're proud of your nation.
2. Giuseppe Garibaldi and the "red shirts" were responsible for liberating Italy from the Austrians. (In 1861, a new united state of Italy was declared under King Victor Emmanuel II.)
3. King Wilhelm (William I) and Prime Minister Otto von Bismarck. (Prussia took control of northern Germany and the provinces of Alsace and Lorraine—renaming the region Alsace-Lorraine—and convinced the southern German states to unite with the North German Confederation.)
4. C. 1811
5. Haiti; French
6. Simón Bolívar led Venezuela and Colombia to independence.
7. The people of Saint-Domingue were unhappy because they were enslaved. François-Dominique Toussaint-Louverture led over 100,000 slaves to revolt. (In 1804, the western part of the island declared itself free and is now called Haiti.)

★ Chapter 28 ★

THE AMERICAN



CIVIL WAR

1861-1865

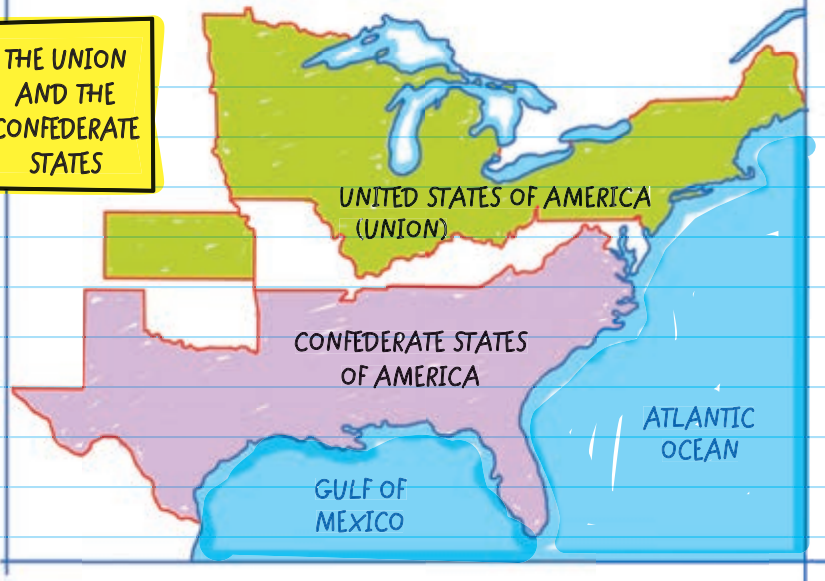
In the mid-1800s, nationalism was sweeping the U.S. Northern states and Southern states had different ideas about the balance of power between the states and the federal government, and different ideas about **ABOLITIONISM**, the movement to end slavery. The North and South also both wanted to control the best farmland. This led to the **AMERICAN CIVIL WAR**.

SLAVERY DIVIDES AMERICA

In the South, where the economy was based on tobacco and cotton, plantation owners wanted to continue using enslaved people. By the 1850s, over 3 million African Americans were enslaved in the South.

Northern states had economies based on smaller farms and manufacturing; they had little need for slave labor.

THE UNION AND THE CONFEDERATE STATES



As each new state was added to **THE UNION**, there was debate on whether or not it would allow slavery. When California applied for statehood in 1850, it wanted to be a free state, but this would have upset the balance of an equal number of free and slave states. A compromise was decided: California would be a free state, and the people of each new state or territory thereafter would decide about slavery where they lived.

THE UNION
the United States; during the American Civil War, it also referred to the Northern army and Northern states

The ABOLITIONIST CAUSE

In 1855, in the territory that would later become the states of Kansas and Nebraska, citizens voted on whether or not the territory would be free. Many people already living there wanted it to be free, but thousands of people crossed the border to vote for a pro-slavery government. This fueled the abolitionist cause.

Abolitionist **JOHN BROWN** led riots, killing several people; hundreds more died later that summer in a period of time that became known as "**BLEEDING KANSAS**." Brown led a raid on an **ARSENAL** (a place where weapons are stored) in Virginia so he could arm slaves. The raid failed and Brown was sentenced to death, but he became a hero for the abolitionist cause.

FREDERICK DOUGLASS, an escaped slave, wrote several autobiographies, including **THE NARRATIVE OF THE LIFE OF FREDERICK DOUGLASS** (1845), and traveled around the nation to educate people about his harsh experiences as a slave. Douglass advised **ABRAHAM LINCOLN**, who was elected the sixteenth president of the United States in 1860, on the issue of slavery. Douglass also influenced President Lincoln to eventually let African American men fight in the Civil War. Many African American divisions, like the 54th regiment, helped the North win.

←
THESE DIVISIONS WERE MADE UP OF MEN FROM BOTH FREE AND SLAVE STATES.



Lincoln thought that the divisions over slavery were dangerous to the strength of the government and its unity. He wasn't in favor of abolishing slavery altogether (not yet), but he believed that slavery shouldn't spread beyond the states where it was already practiced and that it could be encouraged to die out.

The Case of Dred Scott: **DRED SCOTT** was a slave who sued for his freedom. In 1857, the Supreme Court ruled that Scott was property, not a U.S. citizen, even if he was in a free state (he had spent time living in free states)—so he had no rights at all. This case further fueled the cause of abolitionism.

HARRIET TUBMAN risked her life to smuggle slaves into the North through the **UNDERGROUND RAILROAD**. It was not really a railroad, but a network of secret routes and places, such as farms and houses, that helped people get to freedom.



The CONFEDERACY FORMS

In 1860, South Carolina decided to **SECEDE** from the Union to preserve its right to continue slavery. Six other states followed. In February, they formed the **CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA** (or **CONFEDERACY**) and chose **JEFFERSON DAVIS** as president. In his inaugural address the following March, Lincoln stated that secession was illegal, but that war was not an option. In the end, though, he couldn't stop it.

SECEDE
to formally withdraw
from an alliance or
association

The Union army represented the Northern states and was nicknamed the **YANKEES**. The Confederate army represented the Southern states and was nicknamed the **REBELS**.

The **AMERICAN CIVIL WAR** began in April 1861, when Confederate troops captured Union-controlled Fort Sumter in South Carolina. After that, Virginia, Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina joined the Confederacy.

Use this rhyme to remember when the Civil War began:

In eighteen hundred sixty-one, the American Civil War had just begun.

1. South Carolina
2. Mississippi
3. Florida
4. Alabama
5. Georgia
6. Louisiana
7. Texas
8. Virginia
9. Arkansas
10. North Carolina
11. Tennessee

THIS IS THE ORDER IN WHICH THE STATES JOINED THE CONFEDERACY.



Although Virginia joined the Confederacy, the western part of the state wanted to remain loyal to the Union, so it formed its own state in 1863—West Virginia.

CIVIL WAR BATTLES

The first **BATTLE OF BULL RUN**, in Virginia in July 1861, was the first major battle of the Civil War. The Union and Confederate armies were made up mainly of volunteer soldiers, unprepared for war. The Union forces tried to capture Virginia's state capital, Richmond, but Confederate troops, led by Thomas Jackson, held their ground. Jackson got his nickname,

STONEWALL JACKSON, here, when someone

yelled, "There is Jackson, standing like a stone wall!" There were so many casualties that both sides realized the war would be long and difficult.

The North had more people, supplies, and factories, but the South extended the war with clever generals who knew how to use guerrilla warfare.



A second Battle of Bull Run followed about a year later, and again the Union soldiers were forced to retreat, possibly because of a bad choice of generals. The **BATTLE OF ANTIETAM**, in September 1862, was the first Civil War battle on Union territory, in Maryland. It was the bloodiest one-day battle in U.S. history. After this battle, Lincoln warned that slaves living in Confederate states would be freed unless these states returned to the Union. The states didn't comply, and Lincoln issued the **EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION** on January 1, 1863, theoretically freeing over three million people.

Lincoln did not actually have the constitutional power to end slavery, but he had the authority to seize enemy property—including slaves. So this military order could free all slaves in any area that was in rebellion. It encouraged some slaves to escape.

The **BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG**, in Pennsylvania in July 1863, was the turning point of the Civil War: Union troops won and gained the upper hand. General **GEORGE C. MEADE**, now in charge of the Union troops, decided to practice **TOTAL WAR**: to not only defeat the Confederate army (which was under the command of General **ROBERT E. LEE**) but to destroy the region's resources and morale.

SEE
NEXT
PAGE

THE GETTYSBURG ADDRESS

Gettysburg is also where Lincoln delivered his **GETTYSBURG ADDRESS**. On November 19, 1863, four months after the battle, Lincoln spoke at the Soldiers' National Cemetery there about how the Civil War would lead to new freedom for America and that no soldier would die in vain. The speech begins with the line "Four score and seven years ago"—a reference to the American Revolution—and is considered one of the greatest speeches in history.

The first line of the Gettysburg Address, "Four score and seven years ago, our fathers brought forth, upon this continent . . ." is a clue to the year in which it was delivered. A "score" is 20, so four score and seven = $4 \times 20 + 7 = 87$ years.

$$1776 + 87 = 1863.$$



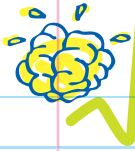
Union general **WILLIAM TECUMSEH SHERMAN** led his troops from Atlanta to Savannah on a **MARCH TO THE SEA** in 1864, destroying railroads, plantations... everything in sight.

“TOTAL WAR” was a term coined by Union general William Sherman in 1864. Total war is a military strategy of including any and all civilians and civilian resources as military targets. It often results in many casualties. Sherman himself recognized the brutality of this tactic, but reasoned that it would destroy the Rebels and end the war faster.



The **OUTCOME** and **AFTERMATH**

The American Civil War between the Union and Confederate armies lasted four years (1861-1865). In April 1865, at **APPOMATTOX COURT HOUSE** in Virginia, Lee and his Confederate army surrendered to **GENERAL UYLSSES S. GRANT**, ending the war. In January 1865, Congress passed the **THIRTEENTH AMENDMENT**, which officially abolished slavery. The Union was preserved.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What were two major issues that caused so much conflict between the Northern and Southern states?
2. What was the controversy when California wanted to join the Union?
3. Who was Frederick Douglass and what did he influence Lincoln to do?
4. The _____ army represented the Northern states, while the _____ army represented the Southern states.
5. The American Civil War began when Confederate troops bombarded:
 - A. Fort MCHenry
 - B. Fort Sumter
 - C. Fort Davis
 - D. Fort Ticonderoga
6. When did the American Civil War end?
7. What amendment made the end of slavery in the U.S. official?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Slavery and states' rights divided America. (In the South, where the economy was based on tobacco and cotton, plantation owners wanted slavery. Northern states had little need for slave labor.)
2. The controversy was that California wanted to be a free state, but this would have made an unequal number of free and slave states.
3. Frederick Douglass was an escaped slave who wrote several autobiographies and traveled around the nation to educate people about his horrible experiences as a slave. He also advised President Lincoln on the issue of slavery and influenced him to let African American men fight in the Northern army.
4. Union, Confederate
5. B. Fort Sumter
6. The American Civil War ended when the Confederate army surrendered in April 1865 at Appomattox Court House in Virginia.
7. The Thirteenth Amendment officially abolished slavery.

★ Chapter 29 ★

★ ★ ★ THE ★ ★ ★ INDUSTRIAL ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ REVOLUTION

1760–MID-1800s

During the **INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION**, new technology greatly changed the way products were produced and people lived. It began in the 1760s with advances in farming, peaked with the development of factories, and lasted until about the mid-1800s.



The BEGINNING of the REVOLUTION

The Industrial Revolution began in Great Britain, which had profited from an

AGRARIAN
related to the land
or farming

AGRARIAN revolution with new crops and farming practices, which led to greater food production, which led to a larger population with longer life spans. In the 1700s, many peasants were forced to move to towns because of the **ENCLOSURE MOVEMENT** laws and became the new labor population for the factories that were sprouting up all over England.

Another reason Great Britain was the first to have an Industrial Revolution was because of its natural resources. It had iron for building machines and coal for running them. Its rivers provided waterpower and routes for transporting raw materials and finished goods. Britain also had a massive **EMPIRE** and a large market of buyers for its products.

The British Parliament passed the **ENCLOSURE ACTS**, laws that fenced off lands that peasant farmers had used in the past so that they could no longer use the common land. Land became individually owned, and some people were forced to look for jobs in cities.



The SIGNIFICANCE of the REVOLUTION

The Industrial Revolution allowed more goods to be produced at a very fast rate. The work was largely done in factories, where workers, including men, women, and children, endured long hours and little pay. Factories relied on a **DIVISION OF LABOR** in which each worker did the same task over and over again to make the same product. People often worked in cramped, humid spaces with loud machines, and with their eyes and lungs full of dust. Factories were hotbeds of injuries, sickness, and disease. But people needed to work. Immigrants were brought in to work in the factories for low wages.

Larger populations and foreign markets had made industrial manufacturing profitable, particularly in terms of woven and knitted cloth. New spinning machines made textiles cheaper to produce, and textile factories took over England and Scotland.

The REVOLUTION TAKES OFF

The Industrial Revolution also hit Belgium, France, Germany, and other countries. The governments encouraged industrialization by improving railroad and canal networks. The Japanese industrialized too, in the late 1800s.



A PEEK INTO AMERICAN LIFE ★ during the ★ INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

The American Industrial Revolution is said to have begun in Rhode Island in 1793, when **SAMUEL SLATER** built the first American spinning mill, a factory that makes cloth. Rhode Island's geography was perfect for water-powered mills, and the War of 1812 made it tough to get imported goods, inspiring Americans to find more efficient ways to produce their own. The most famous factory was started by Francis Cabot Lowell in 1814 and mostly employed young women. It was so successful that it led to the founding of an entire town, called **LOWELL, MASSACHUSETTS**. The "Lowell girls" were paid well, but they worked long hours in grueling conditions.



The **INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION** was the first time many people in America needed a clock. On a farm, you can plan your day by the movement of the sun; in a factory, not so much.

The Industrial Revolution was a time of great innovation.

NEW TECHNOLOGY OF THE ERA INCLUDED:

INTERCHANGEABLE PARTS: First introduced by **ELI WHITNEY** (who invented the **COTTON GIN**) for muskets for the army, these pre-manufactured, identical parts created the possibility of **MASS PRODUCTION**.

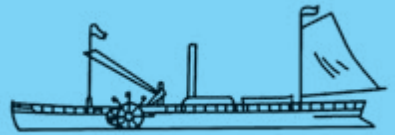
The **TELEGRAPH**, invented by **SAMUEL F. B. MORSE** in 1837, improved communication. Using **MORSE CODE**, telegraphs sent short pulses of energy along a wire that were translated into letters that spelled out messages.

LOCOMOTIVE

a machine that moves on its own, usually powered by steam or electricity



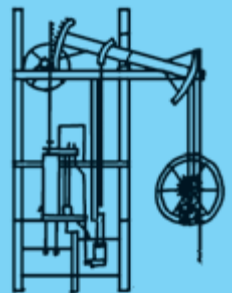
STEAM POWER:



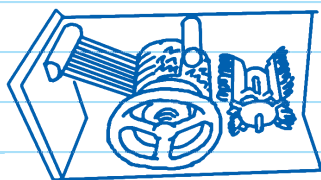
The **STEAMBOAT**, perfected by **ROBERT FULTON** in 1807, improved river transportation.

The **STEAM LOCOMOTIVE**, created by **PETER COOPER** in 1830, improved land transportation and led to the development of railroads.

Once **STEAM ENGINES** were introduced in the 1830s, factories no longer had to be located near rivers.

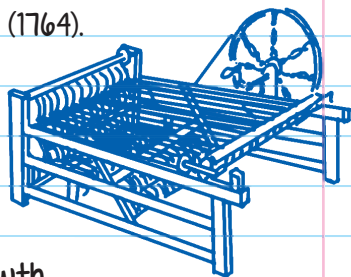


New technology helped people who were headed west. They could now use better agricultural tools, like the **JOHN DEERE PLOW** and the **MCCORMICK REAPER**. Wheat became a cash crop, cities such as Chicago sprang up, farms in the Midwest began to supply the factory workers in the Northeast with food, and the Northeast began to supply the Midwest with manufactured goods. Large distances seemed to become smaller, thanks to American innovation.



One of the most significant inventions was the **COTTON GIN**. Invented by Eli Whitney in 1793, it could clean seeds from cotton quickly. It allowed plantation owners in the South to speed up processing harvests so that workers in the North could make more cotton goods. On the flip side, however, the cotton gin also created a need for more slaves. Another invention of the Industrial Revolution was James Hargreaves's **SPINNING JENNY** (1764).

His machine allowed several spools of yarn to be spun simultaneously and sped up the cotton production process.



The Industrial Revolution led to the growth of cities, with many workers moving from the country (where they had farmed) to the city for jobs in factories. Cities were growing, but their sanitary conditions were poor and disease was common.



CHILD LABOR

The Industrial Revolution was a time of incredible engineering and mechanical achievement but at the cost of millions of children. Child laborers were paid much less than adults, and by 1810, approximately 2 million children worked at least six 10-hour days a week for as little as 40 cents a day. The majority of child laborers were from poor immigrant families that relied on their children's wages to eat. These children worked in dark rooms or mines with polluted air and many did not go to school or play. Church groups and teachers worked hard to change child labor laws. By 1878, Great Britain and most of Europe had passed laws that improved working conditions and shortened workdays, as well as raised age requirements. The U.S. Congress wouldn't pass the Fair Labor Standards Act until 1938, and today millions of children around the world still work long hours under dangerous conditions with little access to education.

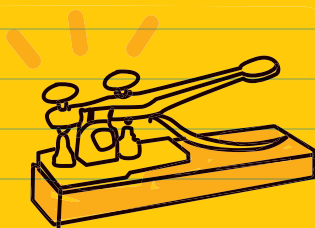
The SECOND INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

From the late 1800s until about World War I, a **SECOND INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION** followed.

In 1855, the British made steel production less difficult and less expensive, making railroad construction easier and skyscrapers possible with the **BESSEMER STEEL PROCESS**.

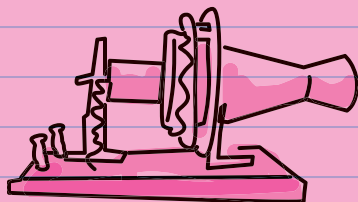
INVENTIONS GALORE

1866: The first
TRANSATLANTIC TELEGRAPH
wire was put in place.



1867: The first commercially successful **TYPEWRITER**
was invented by Christopher Sholes, Carlos Glidden,
and Samuel W. Soule.

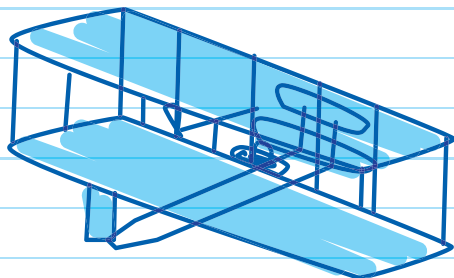
1876: ALEXANDER GRAHAM BELL invented the TELEPHONE, launching the telecom industry, which was started by the Bell Telephone Company.



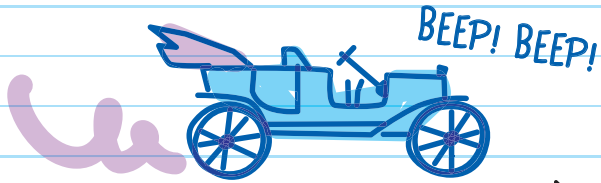
1876: THOMAS EDISON opened a lab in Menlo Park, New Jersey, and went on to patent more than 1,000 inventions. In 1879, he invented the first electric LIGHTBULB.



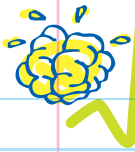
1903: ORVILLE AND WILBUR WRIGHT made the first airplane flight at KITTY HAWK, NORTH CAROLINA, on December 17.



1908: Henry Ford devised the Model T car, created by his innovative assembly line system.



ASSEMBLY LINE → If everyone on the line does one job over and over (specialization and division of labor), people working together can produce more in a shorter time. Those workers are also paid less because they have fewer skills.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was the first Industrial Revolution? Be sure to note the time period in your answer.
2. The spinning jenny was invented in 1764 by:
A. Edmund Cartwright C. James Hargreaves
B. James Watt D. Eli Whitney
3. Which two natural resources contributed to the growth of the Industrial Revolution in Great Britain?
A. Steel and coal C. Cotton and steel
B. Iron and coal D. Wood and steel
4. Describe working conditions for many factory workers during the Industrial Revolution. Why were they so miserable?
5. How did Eli Whitney's development of interchangeable parts aid the U.S. in its quest to industrialize?
6. How did industrialization lead to the growth of cities? What were the downsides of industrialization?
7. What was the Second Industrial Revolution?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The first Industrial Revolution began in the 1760s and lasted until about the mid-1800s. It was a time when new technology changed the way products were made, how farming was done, and the way people lived.
2. C. James Hargreaves
3. B. Iron and coal
4. In factories, men, women, and children worked long hours for little money. Each person did the same task over and over again. People often worked in places that damaged their health—the factories were cramped, humid spaces with loud machines, and they were full of dust. There were many injuries, as well as sickness and disease, at the factories.
5. Eli Whitney's innovation allowed products with identical parts to be put together easily and mass-produced. Interchangeable parts made production much faster than before.
6. The Industrial Revolution led to the growth of cities because many workers moved from the country to the city for jobs in factories. The downside was that the cities often had poor sanitary conditions and a lot of disease, and people worked in factories under terrible conditions.

7. The Second Industrial Revolution was when steel became a mass-produced material, which helped in the creation of railroads. The telegraph, typewriter, telephone, and first electric lightbulb were also invented during the Second Industrial Revolution.

★ Chapter 30 ★

★ ★ ★ ★ ★ THE ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

WOMEN'S MOVEMENT

Women in the 1800s were expected to take care of the family and stay at home. They had little freedom and few rights. Most women in Europe and the U.S. didn't have a legal identity apart from their husbands. In the late 1700s, the first Industrial Revolution created a demand for more workers, so women began taking jobs in factories, and later on as secretaries, salesclerks, and typists. Some women became teachers and nurses. But the **FEMINIST** movement began long before then.

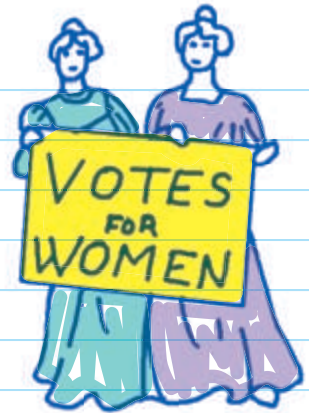
FEMINISM

the belief that all sexes should have equal social, political, economic, and other rights

A VINDICATION OF THE RIGHTS OF WOMAN

In 1792, a British writer named **MARY WOLLSTONECRAFT** argued for equal rights for men and women in her work

A VINDICATION OF THE RIGHTS OF WOMAN. Wollstonecraft stated that the power of men over women was just as wrong as the **ARBITRARY** power of monarchs over their subjects. She argued that if the Enlightenment was based on an ideal of reason in all humans, women must have reason too and were entitled to the same rights as men. Wollstonecraft sought equality in education and in economic and political life. In the 1830s, many women in Europe and the U.S. pushed for the right to divorce and own property. Women fought to go to universities. They set out to enter professions previously limited to men.



ARBITRARY
determined by individual preference as opposed to the law

The FIGHT for SUFFRAGE

In the 1840s and 1850s, the women's rights movement began to focus on voting rights. They believed that suffrage (the right to vote) was essential. These women, called **SUFFRAGISTS**, campaigned in many different ways. In Britain, some suffragists went on hunger strikes and chained themselves to the prime minister's house.

In the U.S., leaders like **SUSAN B. ANTHONY** and **ELIZABETH CADY STANTON** gave lectures and spoke at rallies. At the Seneca Falls Convention,



SUSAN B.
ANTHONY

held in New York in 1848, Stanton presented the **DECLARATION OF RIGHTS AND SENTIMENTS** she had written. Based on the Declaration of Independence, it stated that both men and women are created equal and have rights including life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. One hundred suffragists at the convention signed the Declaration of Rights and Sentiments to demand the right to vote. Most were women, but a few men, such as Frederick Douglass, supported women's suffrage.

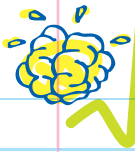


ELIZABETH
CADY STANTON



In 1893, New Zealand became the first country to grant women the right to vote in national elections. In the U.S., Wyoming became the first territory to grant the right to vote to women, in 1869 (it officially became a state in 1890), but it wasn't until 1920 that women's suffrage extended nationwide, via the **NINETEENTH AMENDMENT**. Women over the age of twenty-one finally gained the right to vote in Britain in 1928.

Women all over the globe were fighting for their rights. In 1910, the International Feminist Congresses met for the first time, in Argentina. The second meeting was in Mexico in 1916.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. In *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* (1792), what did Mary Wollstonecraft argue for?
2. Name two leading figures in the fight for women's suffrage.
3. How might the first Industrial Revolution have led to the women's rights movement?
4. What are some examples of things suffragists did to campaign for their rights?
5. What was the first place in the U.S. to grant women the right to vote?
6. When was women's suffrage made official across America?
7. What was the first country to grant women the right to vote in national elections, and when?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Mary Wollstonecraft argued for equal rights for men and women by comparing the power of men over women to the arbitrary power of monarchs over their subjects. She also argued for equality in education and in economic and political life.
2. Two leading figures in women's rights are Susan B. Anthony and Elizabeth Cady Stanton, who gave lectures and spoke at rallies. (Frederick Douglass was also a supporter.)
3. The first Industrial Revolution created a demand for even more workers, so women began taking jobs in factories and later on as secretaries, salesclerks, and typists. Some women became teachers and nurses. Therefore, the Industrial Revolution encouraged an expanded role for women outside of the home.
4. In Britain, some suffragists went on hunger strikes and chained themselves to the prime minister's house.
5. Wyoming became the first U.S. territory to grant the right to vote to women, in 1869 (it did not officially become a state until 1890).
6. Women's suffrage was made official across America in 1920 through the Nineteenth Amendment.
7. New Zealand was the first country to grant women the right to vote in national elections. It happened in 1893.

Unit

7

The Era of Imperialism 1800–1914

The era of **IMPERIALISM** was a time of great competition among many nations worldwide and great damage for many colonized nations. For some people, imperialism meant expanding an empire and taking over new lands. For others, it meant losing their identity and resources to new rulers from a faraway place. How did imperialism work—or, in many cases, not work at all?

IMPERIALISM

the act of extending rule over a foreign country or territory and/or holding colonies

★ Chapter 31 ★

EUROPEAN

IMPERIALISM



WHY EUROPEANS SOUGHT COLONIES and TERRITORIES

European explorers sought "gold, glory, and God" in their first voyages across the sea to the East and the Americas.

In the era of imperialism, which began in the early nineteenth century, European nations sought to conquer and claim foreign lands. These lands were seen as resources for raw materials that European countries needed to industrialize.

It was a time of great competition: If one country claimed land for a certain resource (like sugarcane or rubber) it could dominate the market and make all the profit. If it could find new markets in other lands to buy its own goods, the country would be even more powerful.



BECAME KNOWN AS "WHITE GOLD"



If a European country was overpopulated, it could just ship off some citizens to colonies in Asia or Africa or wherever its colonies were. Europeans were convinced that if they wanted to profit and be competitive in a growing world, imperialism was the way to go.

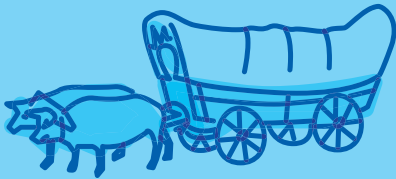


Many countries fell to imperial rule in the nineteenth and part of the twentieth centuries, often at the expense of people **INDIGENOUS** to the land. Just as the Mayans, Incas, Aztecs, Iroquois, and other Native Americans suffered at the hands of foreign rulers, imperialism was destructive to many cultures.

INDIGENOUS
from a certain region; native



Meanwhile, in the U.S., **MISSIONARIES** traveled west of the Mississippi River along the Oregon Trail. Their reports of the beautiful land of the West encouraged others to follow. They believed that American expansion to the Pacific coast was part of **MANIFEST DESTINY**: the idea that the U.S. was chosen by God to spread across the continent and that the expansion of the U.S. was the people's "manifest," or obvious, destiny.



MISSIONARY

someone who goes on a mission to a foreign place to spread his religion

BRITAIN ESTABLISHES TRADE with INDIA

In 1600, the British set up a monopoly on trade with India by establishing and expanding the **EAST INDIA COMPANY**. The opium that was sent to China was grown in India by the East India Company. The British bought spices, tea, cotton, and more from India in exchange for silver for roughly two hundred years. The French and Dutch also traded with India, but eventually control fell completely to Britain and the East India Company.

The OPIUM WAR and ITS AFTERMATH

In the beginning, China wasn't so big on foreigners and was strict about whom and what to let into the country.



By the 1840s, Britain had established a trade route with China, exporting opium (an addictive, dangerous drug) that was grown in India in exchange for tea (less addictive, except for the caffeine).

The Chinese government knew the huge dangers of opium and had made it illegal to import. Chinese government official **LIN ZEXU** wrote an open letter to **QUEEN VICTORIA** of England requesting that she stop the illegal trading, but the letter was ignored, and England's shipments of opium kept hitting China's shores. The Chinese were furious, and in 1839 they dumped about 20,000 chests of the drug into the sea, beginning the **OPIUM WAR** (1839-1842). The Chinese blockaded the Canton (present-day Guangzhou) trading area and forced traders to surrender their opium. The British responded with equal fury and powerful warships, destroying Chinese coastal and river forts and defeating the Chinese.

In the 1842 **TREATY OF NANJING**, China was held responsible for the costs of the war and was forced to open five coastal ports, including Hong Kong, to British trade. British traders who lived there didn't have to follow Chinese laws, but had their own laws in a system called **EXTRATERRITORIALITY**.

EXTRATERRITORIALITY

being exempt, or free from,
local laws

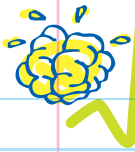
The Chinese were also forced to limit taxes on imported British goods and had to hand over the territory of Hong Kong to the British. This was a lot of punishment for trying to protect their people! And the opium trade continued.

OTHER EUROPEAN COUNTRIES TRADE with CHINA

Other Europeans traded with the Chinese. The Chinese offered the Americans the same trading deal they had with the British. Soon, all of China's ports were teeming with traders, each setting up their own **SPHERES OF INFLUENCE**—areas where imperial powers had the exclusive trading rights or exclusive mining and railroad-building privileges. The Chinese granted other nations these privileges in exchange for money. Britain, the U.S., France, Germany, Russia, and Japan took advantage of the deal.

Because of these new policies, the ruling **QING** dynasty was seen as weak and ineffective. In 1850, a group of rebels started the **TAIPING REBELLION**, calling for social reforms, like giving land to peasants and treating women as equals of men. The rebels seized Nanjing, killing thousands of people and continuing their massacres for years. Foreign nations took advantage of the unrest to expand their presence in China. Eventually the Europeans offered to help the Qing dynasty to get things back in order. In 1864, Chinese forces recaptured Nanjing and ended the rebellion.

The Taiping Rebellion killed 20 million people—one of the deadliest armed conflicts in history. The next year, the British and the French pressured China into giving them more trading power. China agreed to legalize the opium trade (!!!) and open up new ports. China gave more land to Britain (the Kowloon Peninsula), and other areas were seized by Britain when China resisted parts of the treaty. China's attempt to keep foreigners out had failed.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Define "imperialism."
2. How could European nations dominate a resource market?
What effect did this have on their rivals?
3. What started the Opium War?
4. Explain the results of the Treaty of Nanjing.
5. Traders in an area of extraterritoriality would be likely to:
 - A. follow the laws established by the Chinese government
 - B. ignore Chinese law and establish their own set of laws
 - C. live according to no law whatsoever
6. What city saw the start of the Taiping Rebellion of 1850?
 - A. Beijing
 - B. Nanjing
 - C. Nagasaki
 - D. Hong Kong
7. What was the East India Company?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Imperialism is the act of extending rule over a foreign country or territory and/or holding colonies.
2. European nations could dominate a resource market if one country claimed land for a certain resource (like sugarcane or rubber). Then it could make all the profit from selling that resource. As that nation became more powerful in that market, other countries would have less and less ability to enter that market.
3. The Opium War began because England continued to ship opium to China, even though China asked that they stop. In 1839, the Chinese dumped about 20,000 chests of opium into the sea in protest, and thus began the Opium War.
4. In the Treaty of Nanjing, China was held responsible for the costs of the Opium War and was forced to open five coastal ports to British trade. Also, the Chinese had to limit taxes on imported British goods, exempt the British traders from local laws (extraterritoriality), and give Hong Kong to the British.
5. B. ignore Chinese law and establish their own set of laws
6. B. Nanjing
7. The East India Company was a British company created in 1600 that held a monopoly on trade with India.

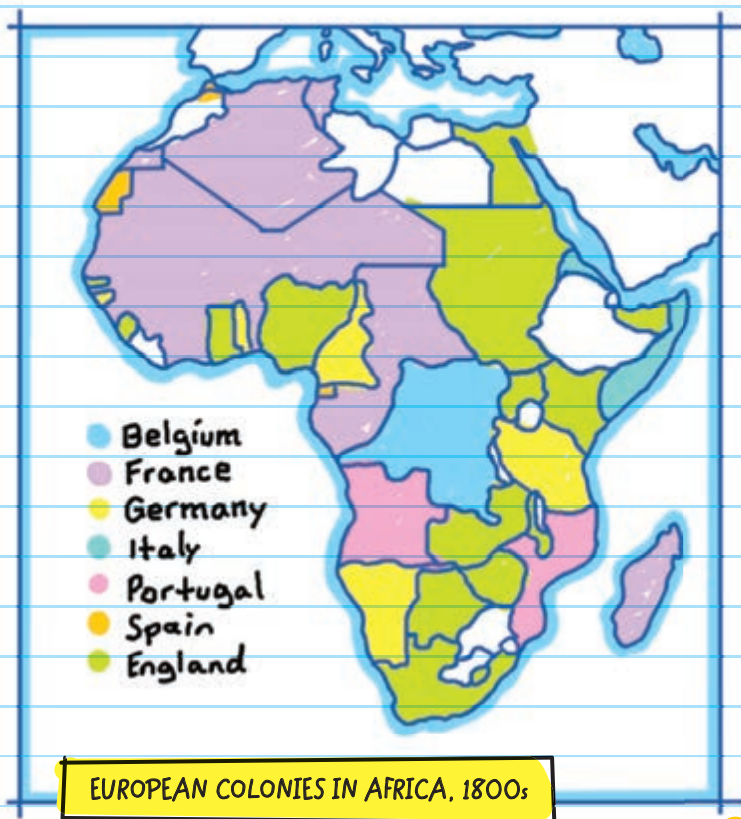
★ Chapter 32 ★

THE SCRAMBLE FOR



AFRICA

1870s-1941



EUROPEANS in AFRICA

On the continent of Africa, European nations had traditionally traded with coastal kingdoms, never venturing far into the continent. This changed in the mid-1800s, when Europeans began sending explorers and missionaries inward.

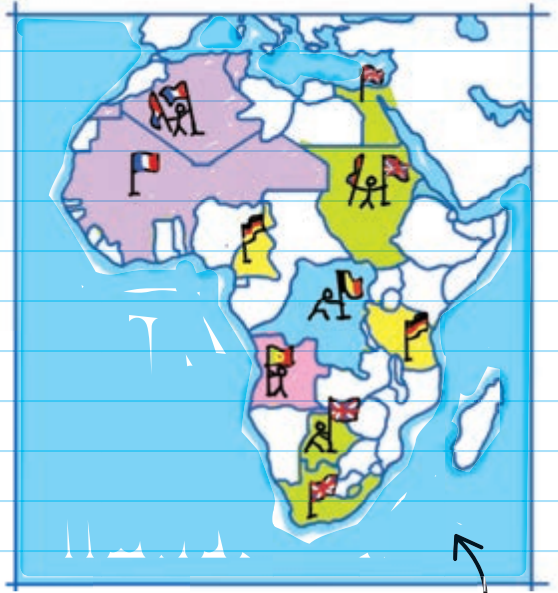
DAVID LIVINGSTONE was a Scottish missionary from London who arrived in Africa in 1841 and spent thirty years traveling the continent. Livingstone was looking for a river route that would allow European commerce and Christianity to "flow" into Africa. Livingstone's letters were detailed enough for people back in England to start drawing maps from them.

When Livingstone disappeared, an American newspaper sent a young Welsh journalist named **SIR HENRY MORTON STANLEY** to track him down. Stanley found Livingstone alive in 1871 and ended up staying in Africa a few years. Stanley explored the Congo River and told the Brits they should set up camp there. The British turned down the idea, but **KING LEOPOLD II** of Belgium was enthusiastic. He wanted to open Africa to his idea of civilization—and make a profit.

The SCRAMBLE for AFRICA

King Leopold II became the driving force behind colonization in central Africa. In the late 1870s, through Stanley, he set up Belgian settlements in the Congo. New trade routes were established, along with new rivalries. The French hurried to plant their flag in northern Africa.

Germany and Britain each tried to claim land in East Africa. Spain claimed western Sahara and part of Morocco, Italy took over Libya and most of Somalia, and Portugal wanted Angola and Mozambique. This rush of colonial activity and Europeans trying to grab a piece of the African continent is known as the **SCRAMBLE FOR AFRICA**.



DISAGREEMENTS AMONG the COLONIZERS ARISE

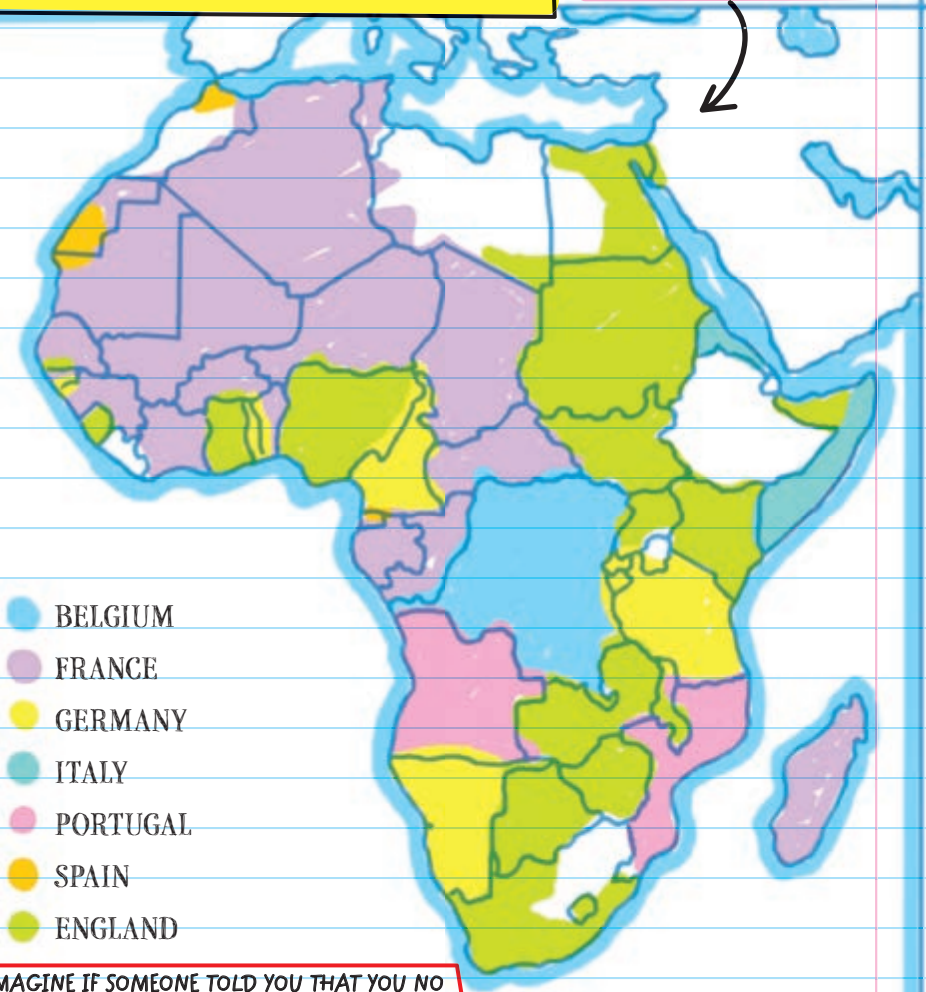
In 1884–1885, these major European nations met at the **BERLIN CONFERENCE** to settle disputes and formalize imperialist policies in Africa without going to war. The group agreed to **PARTITION** the continent. All this happened without the knowledge of the many different groups of people living on the continent, who would now be randomly divided (sometimes across the lines of rival nations) and put to work based on the whims of the Europeans. (No African leaders were invited to the conference.) The imposed borders bunched Africans

PARTITION

to divide a country or state into different parts, usually with different types of political rule

AFRICA TODAY (WITH 1800+ EURO TERRITORIES)

LOOKS LIKE THOSE IMPOSED
ARBITRARY BORDERS ARE STILL
AFFECTING PEOPLE TODAY!



IMAGINE IF SOMEONE TOLD YOU THAT YOU NO
LONGER LIVED IN YOUR OWN COUNTRY! CRAZY!

into arbitrary groups that didn't represent their cultures or heritage and confused the ownership of local resources. (Many of these colonial borders still exist today, along with troubling effects that come with imposing borders that are arbitrary to the indigenous population.) Belgium, Spain,

EXPLOIT

to take advantage of
in an unfair way

Portugal, France, Great Britain, Italy, and Germany began to organize their settlements,

EXPLOITING the people already living there.

People were forced to endure such harsh working conditions that by the early 1900s, anywhere from eight to sixteen million Africans had died.

CECIL RHODES and the BOER WAR

The Dutch were the first colonists in southern Africa, founding Capetown in the seventeenth century. In 1806, when the British took over the area (which they named **CAPE COLONY**),

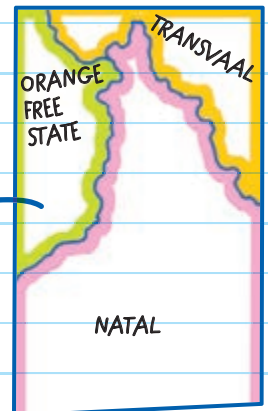
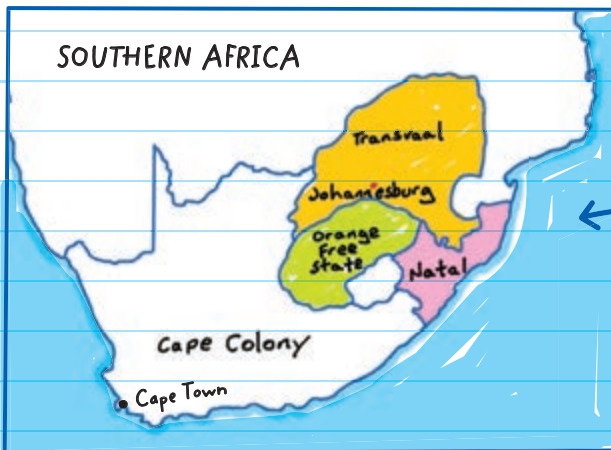
Dutch settlers (also called **BOERS**) decided to leave.

The Dutch created two new republics, **TRANSVAAL**

and the **ORANGE FREE STATE**. At the same time, the British

added their own new colony, **NATAL**, to the east of the Boer states. The Dutch and British settlers were very different: In the British colonies, any wealthy man could vote, regardless of race, in the Boer republics, only white men could vote.

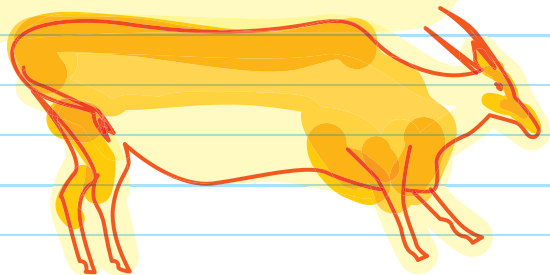
THE BOERS
WANTED TO KEEP
SLAVERY, BUT THE
BRITISH DIDN'T, SO
THE BOERS LEFT.

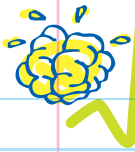


When the British discovered diamonds and gold in the Boer republics, they swarmed into Boer territory in the Transvaal looking to get rich quick. In 1895, the prime minister of Cape Colony, **CECIL RHODES**, who was also the owner of diamond and gold companies and a champion of British expansion in Africa, secretly supported a British raid on Transvaal. The **JAMESON RAID** was a disaster, and Rhodes was forced to resign.

But the damage was done, and the **SECOND BOER WAR** (they had already fought each other about twenty years earlier over control of territory and taxes—the Boers won) broke out between the British and the Dutch settlers in 1899. In 1902, the vast British army defeated the Boers. The British established a new country, the **UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA**, combining the Boer republics with the British Cape Colony.

Rock paintings in Africa date from prehistoric times to as recent as the end of the 19th century. For example, paintings from the Drakensberg mountain range in South Africa show battles between the indigenous San people and the European colonists, who are shown riding on horseback and holding rifles. The Drakensberg artists are also known for their three-dimensional shading.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was trade like between Europeans and Africans before the 1800s?
2. _____ convinced King Leopold II of Belgium to invest in Africa.
3. What led to the "scramble for Africa"?
4. What happened to African nations and groups after the Berlin Conference?
5. The Dutch created two republics in southern Africa in 1806, _____ and the _____.
6. The Second Boer War was fought primarily over which of two resources?
 - A. silver and gold
 - B. diamonds and gold
 - C. emeralds and gold
 - D. silver and bronze

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. European nations had mainly traded with the kingdoms on the African coasts.
2. Sir Henry Morton Stanley
3. The "scramble for Africa" was started by the new settlements in the Congo and the new trade routes through Africa that King Leopold II of Belgium set up. After Belgium began staking its claims, other countries like France, Germany, Britain, Spain, Italy, and Portugal wanted to get a piece of Africa for themselves.
4. After the Berlin Conference, African nations were divided and taken over by European nations. The preexisting African groups, tribes, and nations were arbitrarily divided, even if the divisions didn't make any sense according to the indigenous peoples' history.
5. Transvaal; Orange Free State
6. B. diamonds and gold

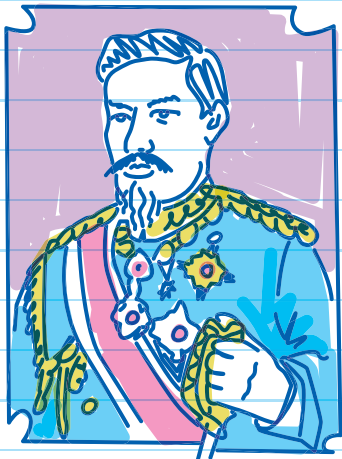
★ Chapter 33 ★

JAPAN



MODERNIZES

Like China, Japan had been strict about whom to let in and trade with. In 1853, an American naval officer named **MATTHEW PERRY** was sent by **PRESIDENT MILLARD FILLMORE** to ask Japan to open its ports to trade with Americans. Japan opened two ports for international trade, ending its period of isolation. Japan also entered a period of modernization.



MUTSUHITO,
EMPEROR OF THE MEIJI

The MEIJI RESTORATION

In 1868, the Tokugawa shoguns, who had outlawed trade with foreigners, were overthrown by a small group of Japanese military commanders and aristocrats, who began the **MEIJI RESTORATION** (1868–1912). This was a period of great growth for the Japanese, when they built

SHIPS

RAILWAYS

BANKING SYSTEMS

COAL MINES

MACHINERY

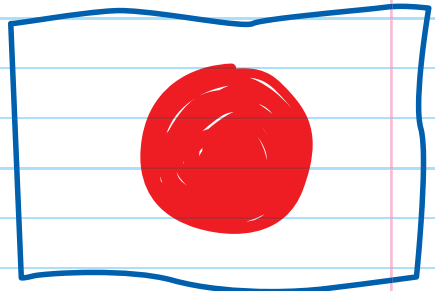
FACTORIES

COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

The Meiji saw the importance of universal education and a common language. Education was reformed based on the American model of schools and universities. Japanese students began studying abroad, and foreign specialists were brought in to teach. In addition, Japan made changes to its military: An imperial army was formed in 1871, with new, modern weapons and compulsory military service, and every Japanese man was required to serve for three years.

JAPAN PRACTICES IMPERIALISM

Like the Europeans, the Japanese were determined to expand. They forced Korea to open its ports to Japanese trade. China was unhappy with Japan's growing influence, and in 1894

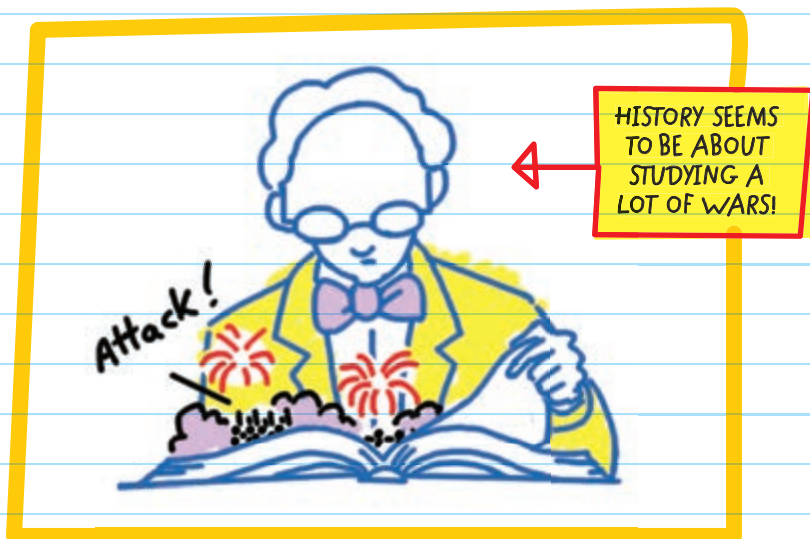




the two countries fought the **FIRST SINO-JAPANESE WAR**, which Japan won. China handed over **TAIWAN** and other lands to Japanese control and was forced to recognize Korea's independence as well.

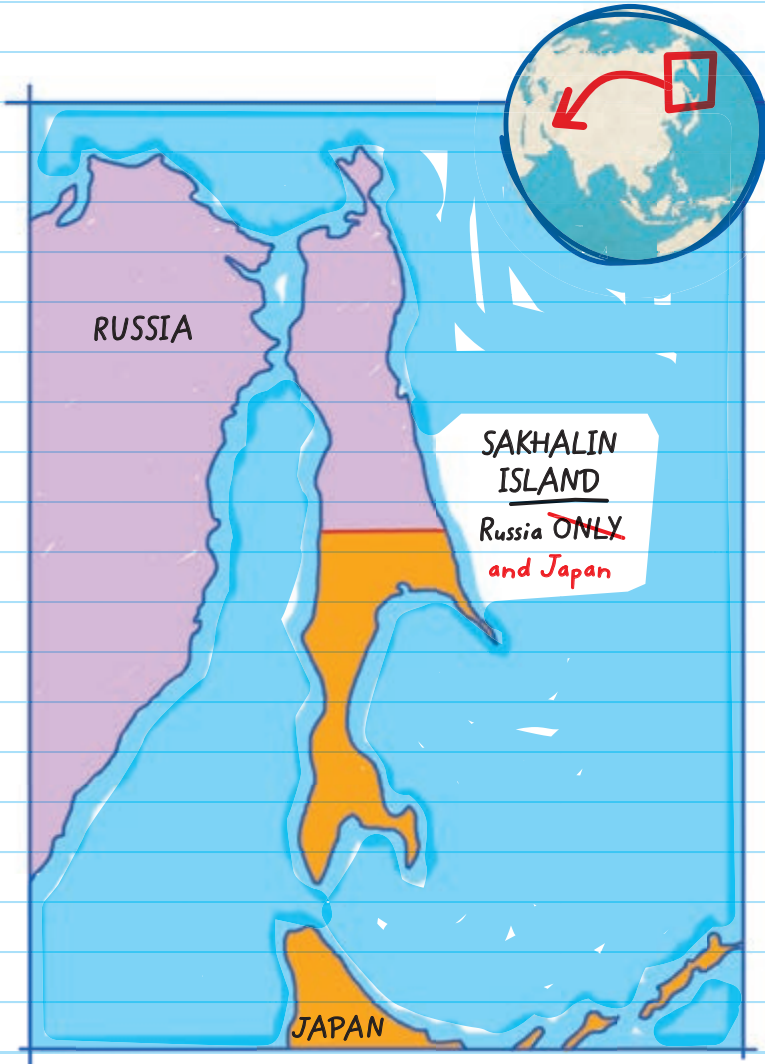
"SINO" IS A PREFIX THAT COMES FROM THE LATIN WORD *SINAE*, WHICH MEANS "CHINA."

Russia also wanted to extend its influence in Korea, but Japan saw Korea as a buffer between it and China and wanted to maintain its dominance there. This led to major tension between Russia and Japan, and resulted in another war.

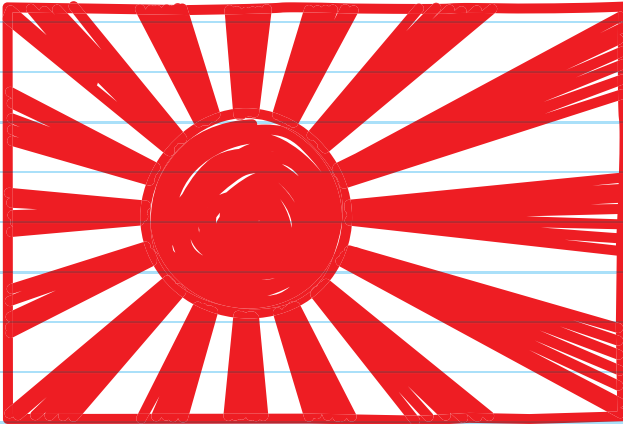


The **RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR** started in 1904 with tiny Japan versus the Russians, who had proven themselves as a major power. The Japanese made a sneak attack on the Russian naval base at Port Arthur, Manchuria (in present-day northeast China). At the same time, the Japanese navy defeated the Russian fleet off the coast of Japan. With the signing of the **TREATY OF PORTSMOUTH** in 1905, Russia handed over control of Port Arthur and the

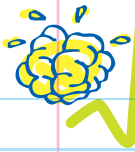
Russian rail system in Manchuria, giving Japan a foothold there. Japan also received part of the island of Sakhalin.



The Japanese victory over Russia shocked the world. It was the first time an Asian nation had beaten a European power in modern times, and it ended Russia's expansion in East Asia. Japan had risen to become a major power in the world, while Russia and China had fallen behind technologically.



FLAG OF THE IMPERIAL JAPANESE NAVY



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was the Meiji Restoration? What reforms came about at this time?
2. What countries did Japan take control of and when?
3. Who was Matthew Perry?
4. What was the result of Perry's intervention?
5. Under which U.S. president did Matthew Perry's actions come about?
 - A. Theodore Roosevelt
 - B. Woodrow Wilson
 - C. Millard Fillmore
 - D. Herbert Hoover
6. The attack on Port Arthur began the war between which of the following nations?
 - A. Japan and Korea
 - B. China and Korea
 - C. China and Japan
 - D. Japan and Russia
7. What did the winner gain from the war in question 6?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



- 1.** The Meiji Restoration was a time when the Japanese built ships, railways, banking systems, coal mines, machinery, factories, and communication systems and updated the military. The Japanese also reformed the education system and modeled it after American schools and universities.
- 2.** Japan took control of Taiwan and other lands from China after the First Sino-Japanese War in 1894. Japan later took control of parts of Manchuria and part of the island of Sakhalin in 1905.
- 3.** Matthew Perry was an American naval officer sent in 1853 to get Japan to open its ports to trade with Americans.
- 4.** Japan opened two ports for international trade.
- 5.** C. Millard Fillmore
- 6.** D. Japan and Russia
- 7.** The winner of the Russo-Japanese War was Japan. Russia had to hand over control of Port Arthur, the Russian rail system in Manchuria, and part of the island of Sakhalin. Japan's victory also gave it a different reputation—it was now seen as a major power in the world.

★ Chapter 34 ★

THE SPANISH- AMERICAN WAR

1898

The U.S. was also interested in imperial expansion. The **SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR** officially was fought for Cuban independence, but it allowed the U.S. to gain several new holdings.

REMEMBER the *MAINE*!

Like many other countries at the time, Cuba in the late 1800s was eager to be free from Spanish rule. In 1892, an exiled Cuban **DISSIDENT** named **JOSÉ MARTÍ PÉREZ** founded the Cuban Revolutionary Party to do just that, but he

DISSIDENT
one who dissents
or disagrees

was killed three years later. He was a hero to many Cuban nationalists, including Cuba's eventual communist leader,

FIDEL CASTRO. U.S. newspapers published sensationalized stories of Spain's mistreatment of Cubans, beginning the practice of **YELLOW JOURNALISM**.

YELLOW JOURNALISM

a type of journalism that relies on exaggeration

In January 1898, the U.S. sent a battleship, the **USS MAINE**, to protect American citizens living in



Cuba. On February 15, 1898, the *Maine* was mysteriously sunk in Havana Harbor, killing over 250 sailors. The American newspapers blamed the explosion of the *Maine* on the Spanish. This made Americans favor war with Spain. But later tests proved that the *Maine* likely blew up from a fire in the ammunitions cargo.

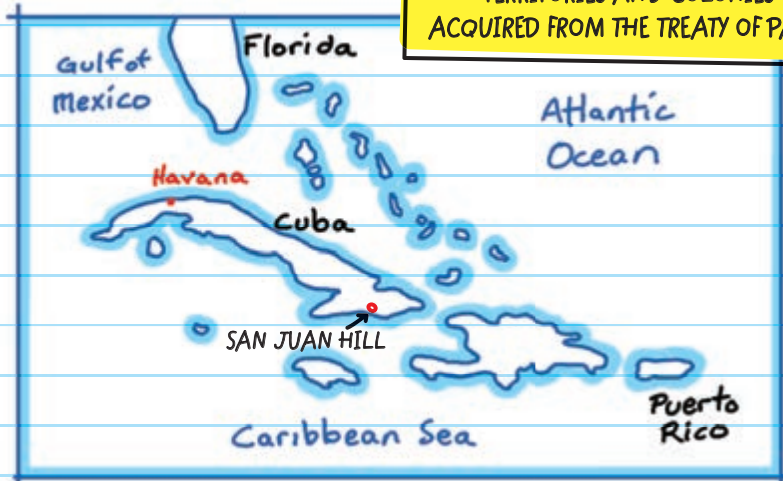
The U.S. DECLARES WAR

Assuming that Spain was to blame, the U.S. declared war on Spain in April 1898, even though **PRESIDENT WILLIAM MCKINLEY** wanted to avoid war. Under the command of **COMMODORE GEORGE DEWEY**,



the U.S. naval forces headed to the Philippines, which were under Spanish rule. With the help of the locals, who also wanted freedom, the Americans defeated a Spanish fleet in Manila Bay.

TERRITORIES AND COLONIES
ACQUIRED FROM THE TREATY OF PARIS



Back in Cuba, a volunteer U.S. **CAVALRY** called the **ROUGH RIDERS** helped to defeat the Spanish in the **BATTLE OF SAN JUAN HILL**. Just four months after it began, fighting in the Spanish-American War ended in August 1898.

CAVALRY
soldiers who serve
on horseback



One of the **ROUGH RIDERS** was Theodore Roosevelt, the future president of the U.S. He was such a strong force in the cavalry that it eventually became known as "Roosevelt's Rough Riders."

The U.S. COMES OUT STRONG

With the signing of the **TREATY OF PARIS** (a different Treaty of Paris than the ones that ended the Seven Years' War and the Revolutionary War), Spain gave up control of Cuba, which became a

PROTECTORATE of the U.S.

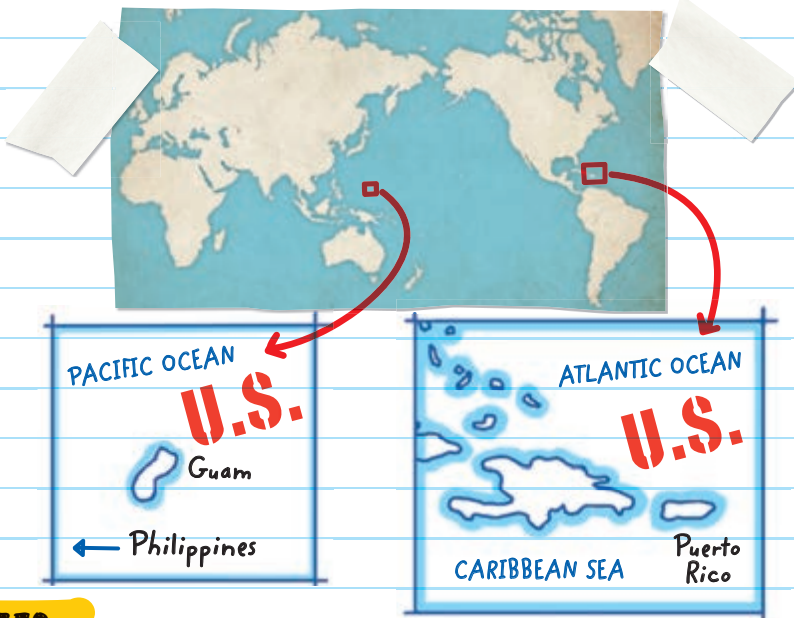
The U.S. acquired Puerto Rico and Guam as territories, and the Philippines became an

American colony. The Spanish

Empire was over in the Americas. Suddenly, the U.S. had a lot of new land. Colonizing the Philippines meant the U.S. was in a strong position for trade with China, keeping China out of Japan's hands and preventing Japanese imperialist expansion.

PROTECTORATE

a state or country that is protected by and partially controlled by a more powerful state or country



Remember: The 1763 **TREATY OF PARIS** ended the Seven Years' War, the 1783 **TREATY OF PARIS** ended the Revolutionary War, and the 1898 **TREATY OF PARIS** ended the Spanish-American War.

America's desire for power and profit led to its becoming the world's richest nation by the beginning of the twentieth century. Less than 200 years after fighting for its own independence, America, for better or for worse, was now controlling its own empire.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. The Spanish–American War was fought over the independence of:
 - A. Guam
 - B. Puerto Rico
 - C. Cuba
 - D. the Dominican Republic
2. Which U.S. commodore's forces defeated a Spanish fleet in 1898?
3. Which of the following did not come under American control following the Spanish–American War?
 - A. Puerto Rico
 - B. the Philippines
 - C. Haiti
 - D. Cuba
4. _____ became a protectorate of the U.S. at war's end; _____ became an American colony.
 - A. Guam; Puerto Rico
 - B. Cuba; Haiti
 - C. the Philippines; Guam
 - D. Cuba; the Philippines

5. The events in questions 1 through 4 occurred under the leadership of which U.S. president?
6. American forces came to Cuba's defense after the failure of rebellion led by _____.
7. Explain the relevance of America's victory over Spain in terms of trade.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. C. Cuba
2. Commodore George Dewey
3. C. Haiti
4. D. Cuba; the Philippines
5. William McKinley
6. José Martí Pérez
7. America's victory over Spain meant that the Philippines became an American colony, so the U.S. was in a better position to trade with China. This new relationship also prevented the Japanese from expanding into China.

★ Chapter 35 ★

REACTIONS

★ ★ ★ ★ TO ★ ★ ★ ★

COLONIZATION

LATE 19TH AND EARLY 20TH CENTURIES

Because who wants a stranger to take over their home and tell them how to live their life?

REBELLION in INDIA

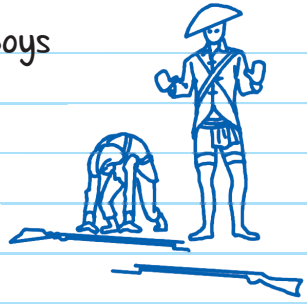
In India, the **SEPOY REBELLION**, also called the **INDIAN MUTINY**, resulted from mistrust and cultural differences between the British and Indians. As the Mughal Empire declined in power, the British East India Company gained stronger control and hired Indian soldiers called **SEPOYS**.





In 1857, a rumor spread in Meerut that the new rifle cartridges given to the sepoys, who followed either Hinduism or Islam, were greased with cow and pig fat. In order to load their rifles, sepoys had to bite off the end of the cartridge. The cow is considered sacred by Hindus, and

the pig is taboo for Muslims. Many sepoy's refused to load their rifles.



The British accused these sepoy's of forming a **MUTINY** and put them in prison, and that in turn sparked a real mutiny. On April 25, 1857, the remaining sepoy's freed their jailed comrades. Soon, the revolt spread to other cities in India, including Delhi, Kanpur, Lucknow, and Jhansi. But rivalries between Muslims and Hindus prevented the sepoy's from waging strong battles, and some Indian troops stayed loyal to the British. The mutiny failed.

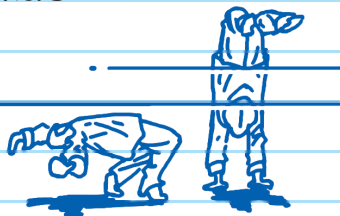
MUTINY
a revolt against
the authority

After the uprising, the British tightened their reins on India. The British government took control of India from the East India Company and established **DIRECT RULE**, sending officials to control certain parts of India. In other parts of the country, they set up the system of **INDIRECT RULE**, using local rulers to control colonies. In 1876, Queen Victoria became "Empress of India." India's people were now her colonial subjects, and India was the "jewel" in her crown. The British improved things like transportation and education in India, but they also prevented Indians from gaining political or military power in their own country.

REBELLION in CHINA

The **BOXER REBELLION** took place in China. The **BOXERS**, as Westerners referred to them, were members of a secret organization called the **SOCIETY OF RIGHTEOUS AND HARMONIOUS FISTS**. They practiced shadowboxing, a form of exercise where you box with an imaginary opponent. The Boxers believed this exercise would protect them from bullets.

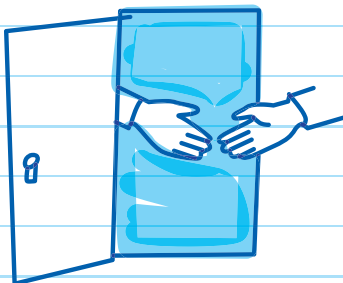
A CLEVER WAY TO DESCRIBE BOXING



The Boxers weren't pleased with the recent foreign imperialist takeovers of Chinese lands. The U.S. now had a colony close to China (the Philippines) and wanted to expand trade.

The OPEN DOOR POLICY

In the second half of the 1800s, European nations and Japan convinced the weaker nation of China to grant them **SPHERES OF INFLUENCE**, or areas within China to control. Since the U.S. didn't have a sphere of influence there, in 1899, Secretary of State John Hay suggested an **OPEN DOOR POLICY** of equal access for multiple imperial powers, including the U.S., to trade with China. There wasn't any reason for the other nations to agree—until the Boxer Rebellion.



The Boxers wanted to destroy foreigners, such as Christian missionaries, who they believed threatened the Chinese way of life. Around 1900, Boxers began wandering the Chinese countryside, killing foreign missionaries, foreign businessmen, the German **ENVOY** to Beijing, and Chinese people who had converted to Christianity.

ENVOY
a diplomatic agent



Under the orders of **WILHELM II**, emperor of Germany, German troops entered China. William got help from Britain, France, Russia, the U.S., and Japan. The troops restored order and demanded an **INDEMNITY** from the Chinese government. The Boxer Rebellion turned out to be very costly for the Chinese.

INDEMNITY
payment for
damages

REBELLION in AFRICA

The people of Africa also resented European domination of their people and land.

Many Europeans exhibited

ETHNOCENTRIC

attitudes, believing that it

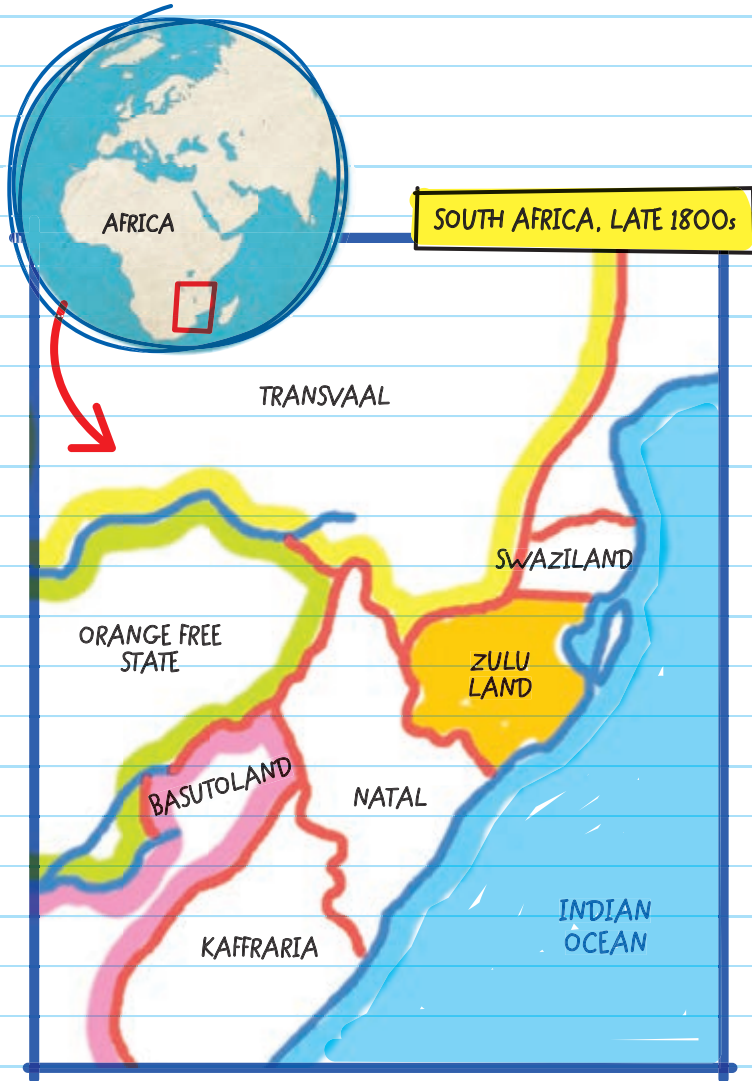
was their duty to God to colonize other countries, and that the indigenous people in the regions they took control of were meant to be under their rule.

ETHNOCENTRICITY
when a group or person believes their
culture is superior to all others

In South Africa, the **ZULU** people successfully fought against Europeans. They resisted the Boers under their powerful leader **SHAKA ZULU**.



After Shaka's death in 1828, the Zulu people continued to remain strong under **KING DINGANE**, but in the **ZULU WAR OF 1879**, the British military defeated the Zulu, putting an end to Zulu independence.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. The British East India Company hired Indian soldiers called _____.
2. What event in particular caused the Indian soldiers to revolt against the British?
3. Explain the difference between direct and indirect rule in the case of Great Britain.
4. Who were the Boxers, and what did they stand for?
5. China had to pay _____ at the end of the Boxer Rebellion.
 - A. an invoice
 - B. foreign missionaries
 - C. an indemnity
 - D. an armistice
6. Queen Victoria considered which of the following colonies the "jewel" in her crown?
 - A. New England
 - B. South Africa
 - C. Thailand
 - D. India

7. The Zulu War of 1879 ended in _____.

- A. a partitioning of South Africa between the Boers and the Zulu
- B. Zulu independence from the Boers
- C. British control over the Zulu
- D. Boer independence from the Zulu

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



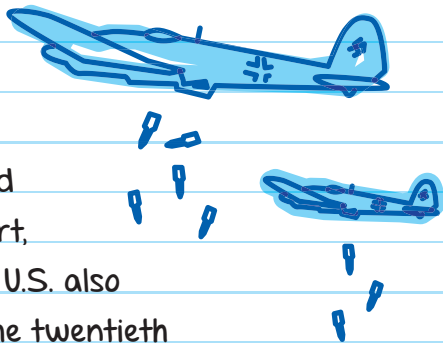
1. Sepoys
2. The revolt against the British started when some sepoy refused to load their rifles because of religious objections. When the British put these soldiers in prison, an all-out mutiny began, and the remaining sepoy freed the jailed soldiers.
3. The British government established direct rule by sending officials to control certain parts of India. In other parts of the country, they set up indirect rule, which used local leaders to control the people.
4. The Boxers were members of a secret organization that was against the foreign imperialist takeovers of Chinese lands.
5. C. an indemnity
6. D. India
7. C. British control over the Zulu

Unit

8

World Conflicts
in the
Early Twentieth
Century: 1914-1945

The twentieth century was a period of major strife. Two world wars tore European nations apart, politically and economically. The U.S. also saw its fair share of troubles. The twentieth century was a violent one.



★ Chapter 36 ★

WORLD WAR I

WHAT THEY WERE FIGHTING ABOUT

The exact cause of World War I (W/WI), initially called the Great War, is hard to pinpoint. Peace in Europe was so fragile that anything could have set off a conflict—it was a powder keg waiting for a spark from:

IMPERIALISM

Especially in Africa

MILITARISM

An arms race was happening.

NATIONALISM

A reinvigorated sense of patriotism

Countries wanted to prove their might

Ethnic groups wanted to form their own nations

ALLIANCES

THE TRIPLE ALLIANCE:
Germany, Austria-Hungary,
and Italy

THE TRIPLE **ENTENTE**:
Great Britain, France, and Russia

ENTENTE

an understanding or agreement

Remember the **MAIN** reasons for World War I using this mnemonic device:

MILITARISM
ALLIANCES
IMPERIALISM
NATIONALISM

The **NATIONALISM** overtaking Europe played a big part in the road to World War I. Each country was proud of its culture, especially newly independent countries like Greece, Romania, and Serbia, which are all in the **BALKANS**, a region of southeastern Europe. Bosnia wanted to break away from Austria-Hungary. The Irish in the British Empire, the Armenians in Turkey, and the Polish in the Russian Empire faced similar struggles.

The surge of **IMPERIALISM** throughout Europe and imperialist rivalries were also big factors. Countries fought for foreign colonies.

Increasing **MILITARISM** also made countries ready to do battle. Industrialization created new materials for warfare and resulted in an arms race. Many European countries were forging **ALLIANCES**—basically picking teams and promising to have each other's backs if things got rough. The two major European alliances in 1914 were:

the TRIPLE ENTENTE: Russia, Great Britain, and France

the TRIPLE ALLIANCE: Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy

When one country went to war, the others followed. (My team and all my team's friends versus your team and all your team's friends.)



The TRIGGER for WAR

The more immediate cause of World War I was the assassination of the **ARCHDUKE FRANZ FERDINAND** of Austria-Hungary and his wife, **SOPHIE**. On June 28, 1914, a Serbian nationalist named **GAVRILO PRINCIP** assassinated the heir to the Hapsburg throne and his wife in Sarajevo, Bosnia. The goal was to free Bosnia from Austria-Hungary and create a large Serbian kingdom with Russia's support. After receiving reassurance from Germany of its support, the Austro-Hungarian Empire declared war on Serbia on July 28, 1914.

MORE DECLARATIONS of WAR

With Austria-Hungary's declaration of war, Russia began to **MOBILIZE** its army, which was considered an act of war in itself. Germany then declared war on Russia and began forming its **SCHLIEFFEN PLAN**, which called for a two-**FRONT** war against Russia and France. To attack France, Germany needed to get through Belgium, which until then was neutral, so the Germans issued an **ULTIMATUM** demanding they be allowed to pass through Belgian territory. This demand outraged the British, who declared war on Germany the next day. The "Great War"—World War I—had begun.

MOBILIZATION

the process of assembling troops and supplies

FRONT

the battle line or place of conflict in a war

ULTIMATUM

a final command or statement of conditions

ALLIANCE RECAP

PEOPLE DEFENDED
THEIR ALLIES.

Germany, an Austro-Hungarian ally,
declared war on Russia, which supported Serbia.

Germany also declared war on France, a Russian ally.

When Germany invaded Belgium,
a neutral country between Germany and France,
Britain, an ally of France and Belgium,
declared war on Germany.

By early August 1914, a full-scale war had developed in Europe. The two sides were:

The CENTRAL POWERS

Austria-Hungary

Germany

The Ottoman Empire

Bulgaria

} PART OF
THE TRIPLE
ALLIANCE

The ALLIED POWERS, or the ALLIES

Serbia

Russia

France

Britain

} PART OF
THE TRIPLE
ENTENTE

Later, Japan and Italy

AMERICAN NEUTRALITY

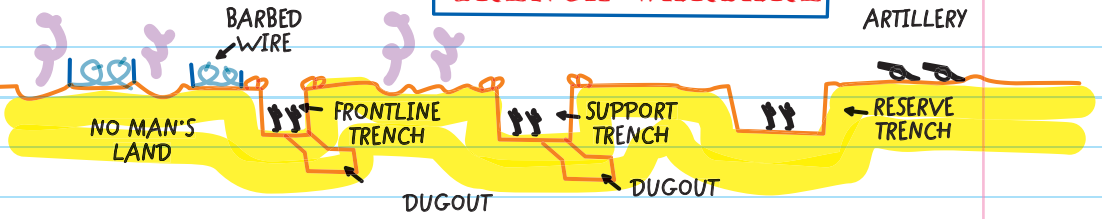
President WOODROW WILSON was determined to follow George Washington's advice to steer clear of foreign conflicts. America planned to continue trading with both the Allies and the Central Powers.



The FIGHTING BEGINS

The **FIRST BATTLE OF THE MARNE** (September 6–12, 1914) was the first battle of World War I and was a victory for the Allied Powers. The French and British stopped the Germans near the Marne River, before the Germans were able to take Paris. Both armies used a new kind of warfare called **TRENCH WARFARE**, in which the combatants' fighting lines consisted of trenches that would shield them from gunshots.

TRENCH WARFARE



Years of trench warfare on the **WESTERN FRONT** left Germany and France at a **STALEMATE**, with neither side able to dislodge the other from its trenches. New fighting techniques created high numbers of casualties on both sides.

STALEMATE
a situation in which no progress can be made; a deadlock

MACHINE GUNS AND ARTILLERY



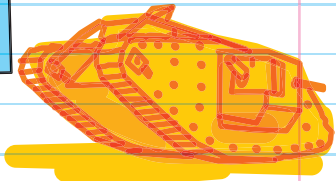
POISON GAS

SUBMARINES

AIRPLANES

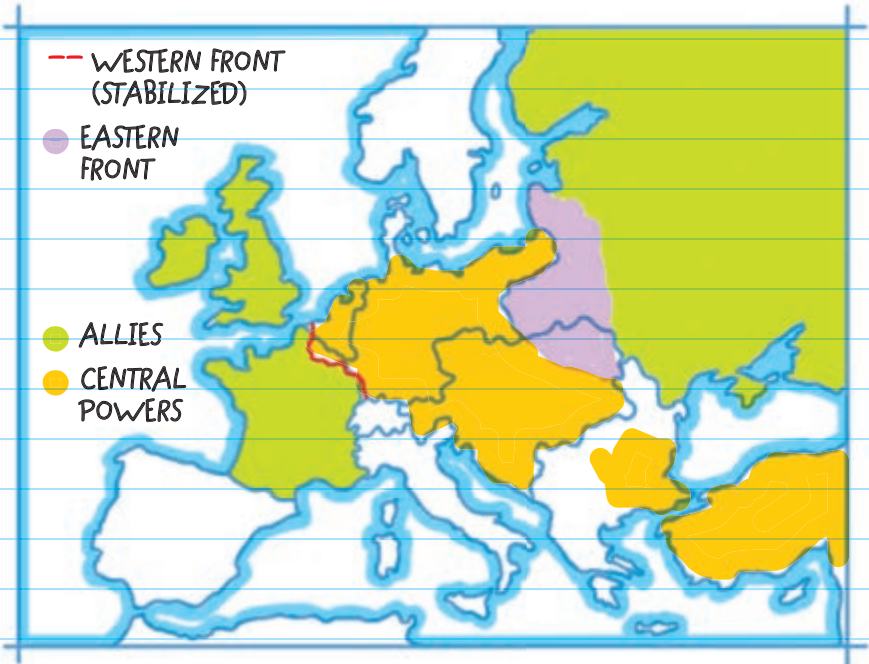
ARMORED TANKS
(first used by the British in 1916)

ARTILLERY
guns too big to carry, such as cannons or rocket launchers





Pilots who shot down lots of enemy planes were called **ACES**. The most famous German ace was Manfred von Richthofen, also called the Red Baron. The most famous American ace was Eddie Rickenbacker.



On the **EASTERN FRONT**, the Russians were defeated by the Germans about a month into the war, but fared better against the Austro-Hungarians. Although Italy had pledged support to Germany and Austria-Hungary, the Italians remained neutral at the beginning of World War I, leading to the demise of the Triple Alliance. After the Germans began using submarine warfare, Italy joined on the side of the Allied Powers (or the Allies) in May 1915.

On May 7, 1915, when a German submarine destroyed the British ship



Lusitania and over 100 Americans

(and 1,000 other passengers) were killed, anti-German sentiment sprang up in the U.S. In 1917, the discovery of the **ZIMMERMAN TELEGRAM**—a proposal from Germany to Mexico for the two countries to form an alliance and wage war against the U.S. (Mexico turned it down)—angered Americans. On April 2, 1917, the U.S. declared war on Germany and joined World War I.

The RUSSIAN REVOLUTION and the CLOSING of the EASTERN FRONT

The U.S. actually entered the war at the perfect time: Russia had recently bowed out of combat. In March 1917, Russia's terrible wartime conditions led to strikes and demonstrations in its capital (then called Petrograd and now called St. Petersburg).

Czar Nicholas II **ABDICATED**, and his army—composed mostly of peasants—joined the side of the protestors. The czar and his whole family were later executed.



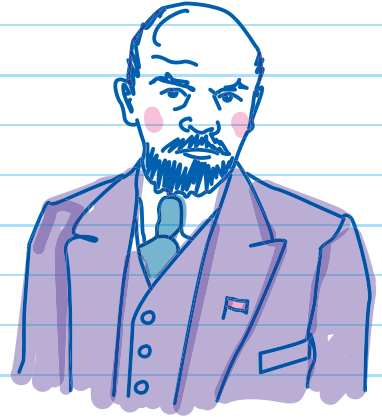
CZAR NICHOLAS II

ABDICATE

to give up power

VLADIMIR LENIN

In October 1917, a violent revolutionary group called the **BOLSHEVIKS**, led by **VLADIMIR LENIN**, seized power and demanded a government by and for the workers and peasants. Lenin established the first **COMMUNIST** government in the world, based on the ideas in



Karl Marx's *Communist Manifesto*. Many upper-class citizens opposed this new communist government. The communist government replaced 300 years of czarist rule by the Romanov family. Russians needed to concentrate on the revolution happening on the home front, so Russia signed the **TREATY OF BREST-LITOVSK**, which ceded much of its territory to the Central Powers. This closed fighting on the eastern front, and Germany was now confident that it would win the war.



The FOURTEEN POINTS

On January 8, 1918, well before the war ended, President Wilson justified why the U.S. had gone to war and gave a set of goals. He also informed Congress that this was "the war to end all wars" and had made a plan to prevent another major war. The plan became known as the **FOURTEEN POINTS**, which stipulated:

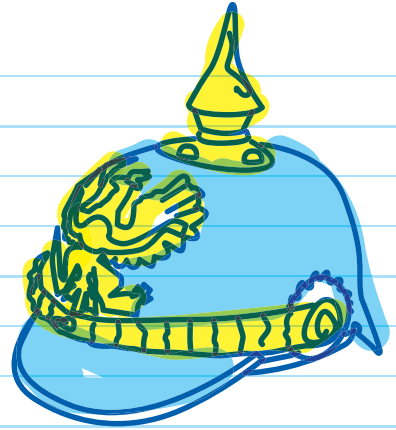
1. No secret treaties/alliances
2. Freedom of navigation on the seas
3. Equality of trade
4. Smaller militaries
5. An adjustment of colonial claims
6. The evacuation and restoration of Russian territory
7. The evacuation and restoration of Belgian territory
8. The evacuation and restoration of French territory
9. A readjustment of Italian borders
10. **AUTONOMY** for the people of the former Austro-Hungarian Empire
11. The evacuation and restoration of Balkan Peninsula (Romania, Serbia, and Montenegro)
12. Autonomy for Ottoman territory
13. The establishment of an independent Poland
14. A LEAGUE OF NATIONS—an organization of countries working together to resolve disputes

AUTONOMY
self-government

OVER THERE

The arrival of American soldiers and materials stopped the Germans from advancing in the **SECOND BATTLE OF THE MARNE**. The **MEUSE-ARGONNE OFFENSIVE**, fought from September through November 1918, marked the final phase of World War I.

On November 11, 1918, following Austria-Hungary's exit from the war, the Germans agreed to sign an **ARMISTICE**.



ARMISTICE

a temporary end to hostilities between warring parties; a cease-fire agreement



The COST of WAR

The war had ravaged Europe and devastated an entire generation of European men. Historians' best guess is that 37 million were killed or wounded in four years of fighting. With no working farms or factories, the European economy was devastated as well. In 1918, a flu **PANDEMIC** called **SPANISH FLU** broke out. It was an extremely contagious strain of influenza that spread around the globe, killing more people than had died during the war. The world was ready for peace.

PANDEMIC

an epidemic, or widespread disease, that affects an entire country or continent, or even the entire world

3%–5% OF THE ENTIRE
WORLD'S POPULATION

PEACE

In 1918, both Kaiser Wilhelm II of Germany and Emperor Karl of Austria stepped down from their thrones. And in 1919, Germany signed the **TREATY OF VERSAILLES**, which forced Germany to accept sole responsibility for the war, give up its foreign colonies and return Alsace-Lorraine to France, and pay heavy **REPARATIONS** to other countries. Germany was also forced to reduce the size of

REPARATIONS

compensation, usually in the form of money, to someone who has been wronged



its army and navy and eliminate its air force. An area of German land along the **RHINE RIVER** was turned over to occupation by the Allies and declared **DENILITARIZED** in order to prevent German aggression against France.

DENILITARIZE
to deprive of weapons
or fortifications

The Germans were humiliated by the terms of the treaty but had no choice but to accept them.

The Treaty of Versailles also created an international organization called the League of Nations.

LIKE AN EARLY
FORM OF THE UN

It was proposed by U.S. president Woodrow Wilson in the hope of preventing future wars, promoting democracy, and keeping the peace, but it was also opposed by Congress, so the U.S. never joined. The league turned out to be mostly ineffective anyway. Starvation, poverty, and unemployment plagued Europe and set the stage for a second world war.

WORLD

June 28, 1914:

Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his wife Sophie are assassinated in Bosnia by Gavrilo Princip, a Serbian nationalist.



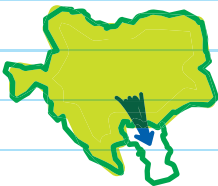
August 1914:

Through a complicated web of alliances, World War I begins.



July 28, 1914:

Austria-Hungary declares War on Serbia in reaction to the archduke's assassination.



September 1914:

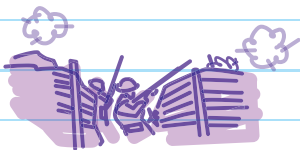
The German invasion of France is stopped at the First Battle of the Marne.



WAR I

October 1914:

The Triple Entente uses trench warfare to hold off the Germans in the First Battle of Ypres.



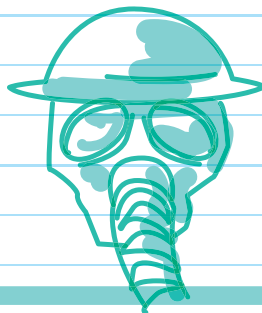
May 7, 1915:

The *Lusitania*, a British passenger ship, is torpedoed by a German U-boat (submarine). Over 1,000 people die.



April-May 1915:

During the Second Battle of Ypres, German forces successfully use poison gas on Allied troops. The death toll forces the Allied armies to withdraw.



WORLD

June–November 1916:

The Battle of the Somme claims the lives of more than 400,000 British soldiers, around 200,000 French soldiers, and anywhere from 460,000 to 650,000 German soldiers. The British are able to advance only six miles.



October 1917:

The Bolsheviks in Russia successfully take over the Russian government and withdraw from the war.



April 1917:

The U.S. declares war on Germany in reaction to Germany's declaration to use unrestricted U-boat attacks again.



November 1918:

Hungary declares independence from Austria and the Czechs take Prague to form Czechoslovakia.



WAR I

November 1918:

Both Kaiser Wilhelm II of Germany and Emperor Karl of Austria abdicate their thrones.

February 1919:

A proposed constitution for the League of Nations is announced.



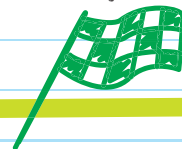
November 11, 1918:

Germany signs an armistice agreement.



June 28, 1919:

Germany and the Allies sign the Treaty of Versailles. World War I on the western front is officially over.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Name the countries that belonged to the Triple Alliance and the Triple Entente.
2. Name the two major European alliances of World War I that had formed by August 1914 and the countries belonging to each side.
3. Archduke Franz Ferdinand was assassinated on:
 - A. August 6, 1918
 - B. June 28, 1914
 - C. September 10, 1914
 - D. November 11, 1918
4. The German invasion of which neutral nation spurred the British to declare war?
 - A. Luxembourg
 - B. the Czech Republic
 - C. Belgium
 - D. France

5. Italian involvement in World War I came as the result of:
- A. Japan's bombing of America
 - B. Germany's submarine warfare
 - C. Russia's withdrawal from World War I
 - D. trench warfare between Germany and France
6. Russia pulled itself out of World War I in order to confront the _____ on its home front.
- A. Treaty of Brest-Litovsk
 - B. revolution
 - C. fall of communism
 - D. Cold War
7. Who was the last czar of Russia and who replaced him with a communist government?
8. What was the Treaty of Versailles?
9. Who came up with the idea of the League of Nations, and what were its core goals?

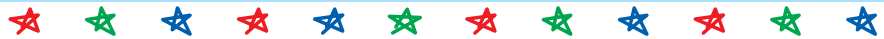
CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



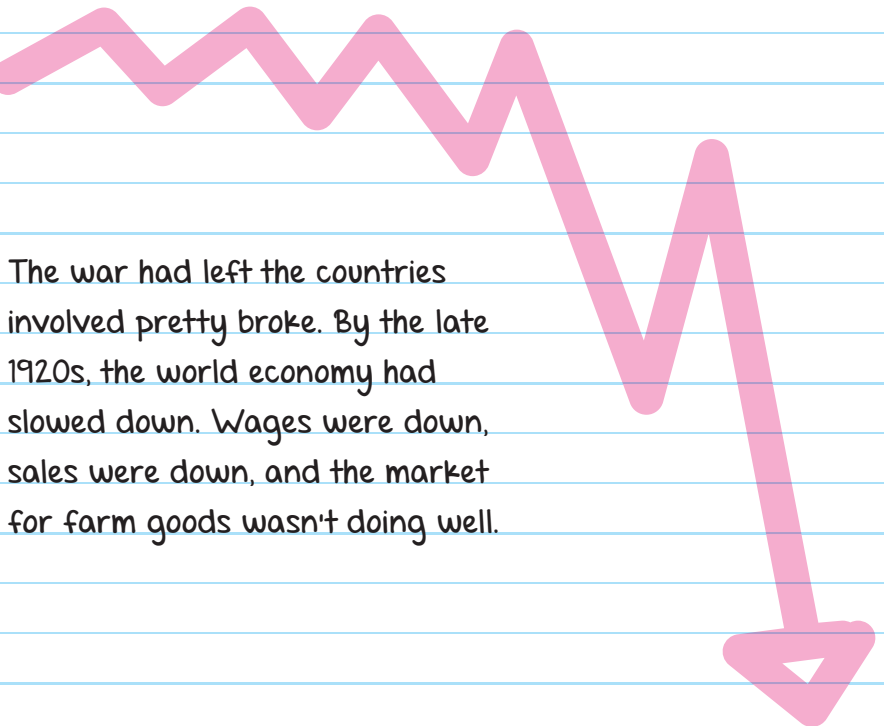
1. The Triple Alliance included Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy. The Triple Entente included Russia, Britain, and France.
2. The Central Powers included Austria-Hungary, Germany, the Ottoman Empire, and Bulgaria. The Allied Powers (the Allies) included Serbia, Russia, France, Britain, and later, Japan and Italy.
3. B. June 28, 1914
4. C. Belgium
5. B. Germany's submarine warfare
6. B. revolution
7. Nicholas II, Lenin
8. The Treaty of Versailles was a treaty that was signed in 1919 that forced Germany to accept full responsibility for the war, reduce its military, give up its foreign colonies, return Alsace-Lorraine to France, turn over land along the Rhine River to the Allies so it could be made into a demilitarized area, and pay a large compensation to other countries in the war.
9. U.S. president Woodrow Wilson came up with the idea for the League of Nations. Its goals were to prevent wars, promote democracy, and keep the peace.

★ Chapter 37 ★

The GREAT



DEPRESSION



The war had left the countries involved pretty broke. By the late 1920s, the world economy had slowed down. Wages were down, sales were down, and the market for farm goods wasn't doing well.

CAUSES of the GREAT DEPRESSION in the U.S.

Britain and France had a huge debt to pay to the U.S. They wanted Germany to pay the U.S. through the reparations Germany owed Britain and France. However, Germany was out of cash too and could only pay reparations by borrowing money from the U.S. to give to Britain and France to give to the U.S. This cycle of borrowing and lending was a problem.

World War I left the U.S. in much better shape than it did Europe. The government had needed war supplies, and this created jobs. During the 1920s, Americans started investing in the stock market. They began making purchases on credit. However, the export market was down because Europeans didn't have money for American goods. When Europeans had trouble paying their debt, American banks crumbled. On October 29, 1929, the American stock market crashed, and severe unemployment followed. This economic crisis was the **GREAT DEPRESSION**.

BANK RUN

Many Americans ran to get money out of their banks when the stock market crashed. The banks told them sorry, but they didn't have the money! President Franklin Roosevelt made laws to ensure protection of citizens' money in banks after that.



ROOSEVELT'S NEW DEAL

Within the first hundred days of his presidency in 1933, U.S. **PRESIDENT FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT (FDR)** created a program called the **NEW DEAL** to combat the economic downturn, including:

the **Federal Emergency Relief Administration (FERA)**: helped the unemployed

the **Agricultural Adjustment Administration (AAA)**: raised food prices to help farmers

the **Public Works Administration (PWA)**: sponsored public works projects and created new jobs (building bridges, post offices, airports, and roads)

In 1935, a second New Deal established a public works program known as the **WORKS PROGRESS ADMINISTRATION (WPA)**, which replaced FERA and created over three million jobs.

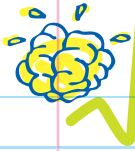


The Second New Deal also created unemployment insurance and social security. FDR also improved the banking system and expanded rights for labor unions. Impressive—but three years later nearly eleven million Americans remained unemployed.

DEPRESSION AROUND the WORLD

To get back on its feet, Great Britain used traditionally conservative policies of balancing budgets and imposing protective tariffs. They also used **ECONOMIC RETRENCHMENT** policies, which basically meant they cut down on unnecessary expenses. Other European countries were less fortunate in facing recovery. Desperate countries turned to leaders who promised to help but who became **DESPOTS**. In Germany, **ADOLF HITLER** came to power as leader of the National Socialist German Workers' Party, or the **NAZIS**. Hitler called for a crusade against communists and Jews, whom he blamed for Germany's defeat in World War I. The Germans knew that one way to get out of debt was to attack the countries they owed money to. World War II was soon to come.

DESPOT
a dictator



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What was the major factor contributing to the decline of the world economy?
2. What happened to American banks when European countries were unable to pay off their debts?
3. What program did FDR create to combat the Great Depression?
 - A. the New Deal
 - B. the Open Door Policy
 - C. the Works Progress Administration
 - D. the League of Nations
4. Explain the details of this program.
5. How did Great Britain attempt to combat the Great Depression?
6. What major historical figure came to power in Germany during this time of economic crisis?
7. What groups of people did this figure blame for Germany's many social and economic problems during this time?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The major factor that harmed the world economy was World War I, because the countries that had been involved were broke by the time it ended. Overall, wages went down, sales went down, and the agricultural market went down.
2. When Europeans had trouble paying their debt, American banks fell apart, and the stock market crashed on October 29, 1929.
3. A. the New Deal
4. The New Deal set up agencies to help people through the financial crisis, such as the Federal Emergency Relief Administration (FERA) to help the unemployed, the Agricultural Adjustment Administration (AAA) to raise food prices to help farmers, and the Public Works Administration (PWA) to sponsor public works projects and create new jobs.
5. Great Britain tried to combat the Great Depression by using economic retrenchment policies, which cut down unnecessary spending and expenses. They also balanced budgets and imposed protective tariffs.
6. Adolf Hitler came to power as the leader of the National Socialist German Workers' Party (the Nazis).
7. Hitler blamed Jews and communists for Germany's problems.

★ Chapter 38 ★

POLITICAL SHIFTS AFTER the WAR

After World War I, some countries changed their form of leadership to

TOTALITARIANISM

In totalitarian states, the government controls every part of a citizen's life: political, social, economic, intellectual, and cultural. They often use mass **PROPAGANDA** techniques to take over their people.

TOTALITARIANISM

a system in which the government acts as absolute ruler with complete control over every element of life

PROPAGANDA

the deliberate spreading of information, ideas, or rumors, whether true or false, to help or harm a person, institution, or cause

TOTALITARIANISM RISES in RUSSIA

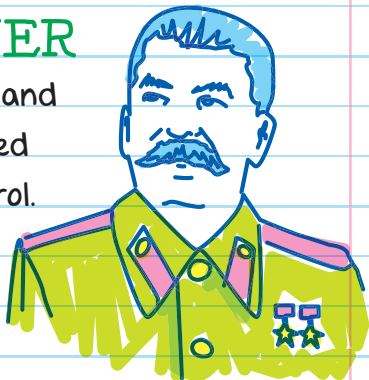
In 1922, Russia (called the Russian Soviet Federative Socialist Republic after the Russian Revolution of 1917) merged with the three other Soviet republics to form a new state called the **UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS** or the **USSR**, also known as the **SOVIET UNION**. Vladimir Lenin, the USSR's first leader, called for a program that he called the **NEW ECONOMIC POLICY (NEP)**, under which peasants could sell their produce in order to end the Russian famine. Meanwhile, heavy industry, banking, and mines were in the hands of the government.

After Lenin's death in 1924, the **POLITBURO**, the main policy-making body of the USSR's Communist Party, had trouble deciding which way to go. **LEON TROTSKY**, a member of the Politburo who had helped Lenin lead the Russian Revolution, wanted to end the NEP, industrialize Russia, and spread communism abroad.

STALIN RISES to POWER

Trotsky's plans didn't really work out, and another member of the Politburo named **JOSEPH STALIN** started to take control.

Stalin appointed his friends to political jobs in cities and towns all over the Soviet Union. In 1928, they exiled Trotsky to Siberia.



JOSEPH STALIN

Stalin replaced the NEP with his **FIVE-YEAR PLAN** to transform the USSR from an agricultural country to an industrial country, and fast. He quadrupled the production of heavy machinery and doubled oil production. He maximized production of military equipment. Rapid industrialization was matched by rapid **COLLECTIVIZATION** of agriculture.

Now the land and farming were controlled by the government. But workers were not taken care of and peasants were unhappy. Wages were low and living conditions were terrible. Stalin told the peasants that their sacrifice was for the good of the new **SOCIALIST** state.

COLLECTIVIZATION

a system that eliminates private farms and puts land in the hands of the government

SOCIALISM

a form of government in which property and industry are collectively owned by the society and controlled by the state

He **EXTERMINATED** anyone who resisted him or banished them to cruel forced labor camps in Siberia. Eight million army officers, intellectuals, citizens, and diplomats were eliminated in this way.

EXTERMINATE

to put to death







SOCIALIST REPUBLIC (R.S.F.S.R.)

THE UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS (USSR)

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. ESTONIAN SSR | 6. UKRAINIAN SSR | 11. KAZAKH SSR |
| 2. LATVIAN SSR | 7. MOLDAVIAN SSR | 12. TURKMEN SSR |
| 3. LITHUANIAN SSR | 8. GEORGIAN SSR | 13. UZBEK SSR |
| 4. RSFSR | 9. ARMENIAN SSR | 14. TAJIK SSR |
| 5. BELORUSSIAN SSR | 10. AZERBAIJAN SSR | 15. KIRGHIZ SSR |

JAPAN EXPANDS

Japan had become a major power and had expanded its overseas territories through wars against China, Russia, and Korea in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. In 1910, Japan annexed Korea. In 1931, Japan invaded Manchuria, driving out locals in order to increase the Japanese population there. Japan also needed oil (which Manchuria had) to support its new military.

Six years later, in 1937, the Japanese invaded mainland China in the second **SINO-JAPANESE WAR**. Japanese soldiers committed the **NANJING MASSACRE**, better known as the **RAPE OF NANJING**, massacring hundreds of thousands of Chinese soldiers and civilians and raping thousands of Chinese women. The U.S. supported China against Japan, and Japan joined Germany and Italy in a military alliance. A totalitarian leader named **HIDEKI TŌJŌ** was elected prime minister of Japan in 1941.

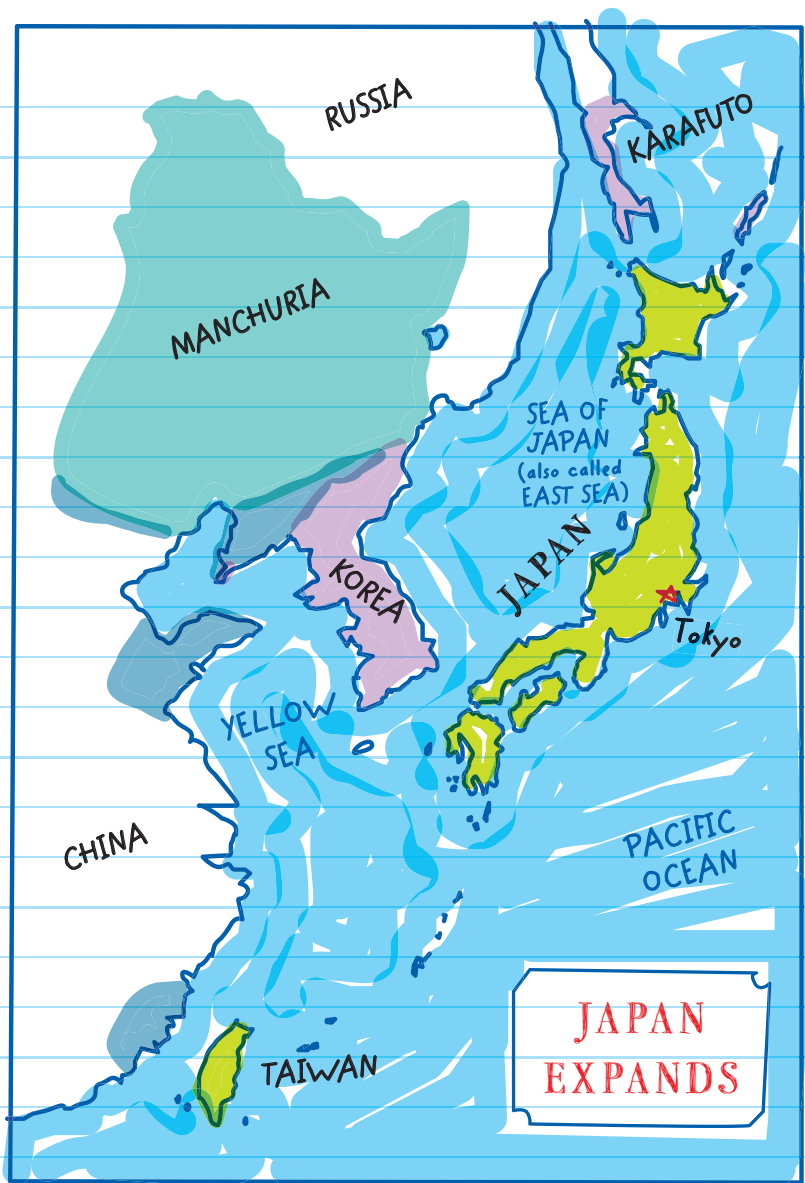
FASCISM in ITALY

Another totalitarian dictator who rose to power after World War I was

BENITO MUSSOLINI of Italy. In 1919, he founded a **FASCIST** political group called the **LEAGUE OF COMBAT**. Italy resented its failure to receive more land under the Treaty of Versailles, and it experienced tremendous economic loss after the war. It has been thought that since many Italians were afraid of

FASCISM

a form of totalitarianism with a dictator who puts the state above the people and forbids disagreement



JAPAN IN 1860

JAPANESE ACQUISITIONS
1860-1900

OCCUPIED BY JAPAN
AFTER 1905

JAPANESE SPHERES
OF INFLUENCE 1914

socialism and communism, they followed the Fascist Party. Mussolini amped up Italian nationalism to get the support of the people.

In 1922, Mussolini and his group of 40,000 fascists marched on Rome. King Emmanuel III was forced to make Mussolini prime



minister. Mussolini then created a dictatorship. He tried to control newspapers, radio, and film. Mussolini held the power to make laws by **DECREE** (just by saying it was so). He organized youth groups to spread his military and fascist values and outlawed all other political parties in 1926. He created his own secret police (called OVRA) to fight against conspiracies. (Dictators are paranoid about conspiracies against them, as they should be, since they're generally so awful that people do form conspiracies against them.)

By 1925, Mussolini had become **IL DUCE**, "The Leader" of Italy; his propaganda declared simply, "Mussolini Is Always Right." By 1936, his official title was "His Excellency Benito Mussolini, Head of Government, Duce of Fascism, and Founder of the Empire." Mussolini was definitely a powerful fascist, but Adolf Hitler in Germany would soon become even more powerful.

TOTALITARIAN EXPANSIONISM RECAP and LOOK AHEAD

Each totalitarian leader believed that his country was superior to all others and had the right to conquer.

In 1910, Japan annexes Korea.

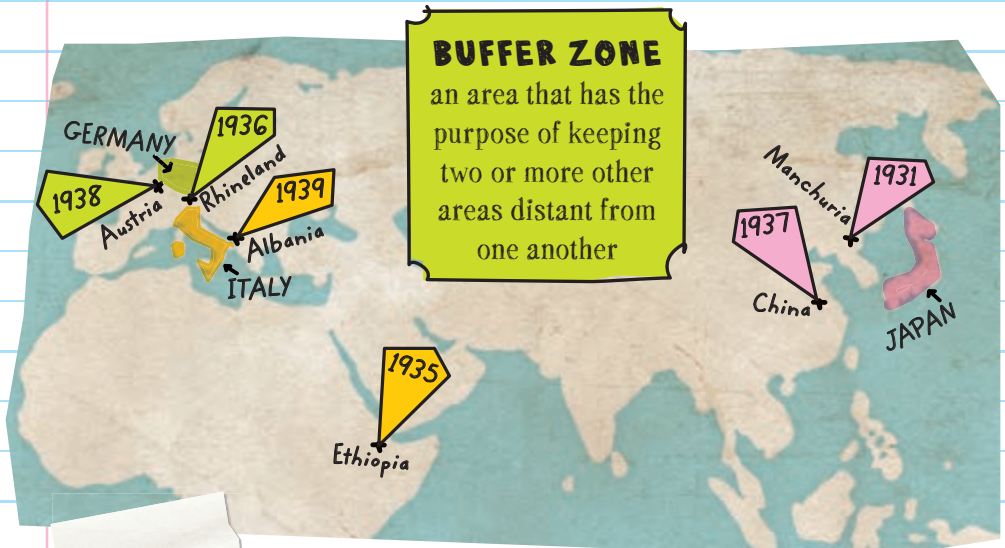
In 1922, the USSR is formed.

JAPAN NEEDED COLONIES WITH THEIR NATURAL RESOURCES TO EXPAND.

In 1931, Japan invades Manchuria; in 1937, Japan invades China, where it perpetrates the Nanjing Massacre.

In 1935, Italy conquers Ethiopia and leaves the League of Nations. In 1939, Italy conquers Albania.

In 1936, Germany annexes the RHINELAND, a coal-rich area that the Treaty of Versailles had declared a neutral **BUFFER ZONE**. In 1938, Germany conquers Austria.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What political system took hold in many countries following World War I?
 - A. absolutism
 - B. communism
 - C. anarchism
 - D. totalitarianism
2. How did these governments influence their citizens? Give an example.
3. What leaders created the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR), and when?
4. Which of the following leaders sought to end the NEP, industrialize Russia, and spread communism abroad after Lenin's death?
 - A. Trotsky
 - B. Stalin
 - C. Politburo
 - D. Mussolini

5. True or false? By 1929, Joseph Stalin had taken over the Communist Party and begun his campaign to transform Russia into an industrial society.
6. The NEP was abandoned in favor of a plan calling for rapid industrialization and rapid collectivization of agriculture. Name this plan.
7. Fascism took hold in Italy under which of the following leaders?
- A. Leon Trotsky
 - B. Benito Mussolini
 - C. King Emmanuel III
 - D. Adolf Hitler

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. D. totalitarianism
2. Totalitarian governments controlled all parts of their citizens' lives. For example, Mussolini controlled newspapers, radio, and film and spread only the information, ideas, and rumors he wanted people to know.
3. Vladimir Lenin and Leon Trotsky led the Russian Revolution that led to the USSR in 1922.
4. A. Trotsky
5. True
6. Stalin's plan for rapid industrialization and collectivization was called the Five-Year Plan.
7. B. Benito Mussolini



#2 has more than one correct answer.

★ Chapter 39 ★

★ WORLD WAR II ★

World War II started only twenty years after World War I ended, when a humiliated Germany sought to boost its image and place the blame for its situation on the Jews and communists. The Germans resented the terms of the Treaty of Versailles from World War I, so they stopped paying reparations and withdrew from the League of Nations. Extremist parties like the Nazis began to rise to power.

HITLER COMES to POWER in GERMANY

Adolf Hitler joined the German Workers' Party in 1919 after fighting in World War I. By 1921, he was in control of the party, which had been renamed the Nazi Party. In 1923, he led an armed uprising called the **BEER HALL PUTSCH** against the government in Munich.

Hitler's earliest uprising wasn't successful, and he was sentenced to a brief stay in prison, during which he wrote **MEIN KAMPF**, or **MY STRUGGLE**. This book outlined the basic ideas of the anti-Semitic (prejudiced against Jews), anticommunist movement Hitler would soon lead. His theory emphasized the "right" of so-called **ARYAN** nations to **LEBENSRAUM** (German for "living space").



ARYAN

a non-Jewish
Caucasian

Instead of an armed uprising, this time Hitler used politics, expanding the Nazi Party until it was the largest in the German **REICHSTAG** (parliament). Hitler promised the people a new Germany with nationalistic and militaristic pride. Germany faced high unemployment and economic difficulties and people needed hope from any source, and the Nazi Party quickly gained power. In 1933, Germany's president, Paul von Hindenburg, declared Hitler **CHANCELLOR** and agreed to the creation of a new government under his lead. Hindenburg signed the **ENABLING ACT** of 1933, which granted Hitler the power to enact laws without the Reichstag. The Nazis dissolved other political parties and became a totalitarian ruling party. Hitler was a good speaker and used propaganda to influence the German people. In 1934, Hitler named himself **FÜHRER** and took control.

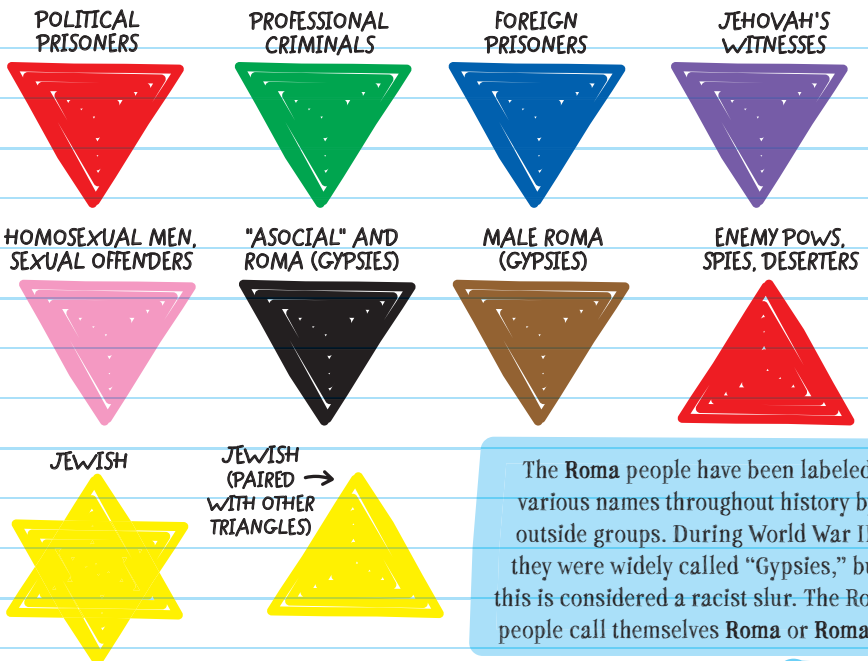
FÜHRER

German for "leader"

The THIRD REICH

Under Hitler's rule, the Nazi Party aimed to dominate Europe by creating the **THIRD REICH**, the "third great empire" (the first two being the Holy Roman Empire and the German Empire of 1871-1918). The Nazis set up **CONCENTRATION CAMPS** for Jews, communists (and other political opponents), homosexuals, Roma and a variety of ethnic groups that Nazis considered inferior (including Poles, Ukrainians, Slavs, and Serbs), and people with mental and physical disabilities. They stripped Jews of their German citizenship under the **NUREMBERG LAWS** of 1935. Hitler violated the Treaty of Versailles with a military draft to expand Germany's army. He made plans to create a new air force.

CONCENTRATION CAMP IDENTIFICATION BADGES



The Roma people have been labeled various names throughout history by outside groups. During World War II, they were widely called "Gypsies," but this is considered a racist slur. The Roma people call themselves Roma or Romani.



In 1936, Hitler sent troops into the Rhineland, the area of Germany that was meant to be a neutral neighbor to France. France was ready to take up arms but wouldn't without support from Great Britain, which took up a policy of **APPEASEMENT** and refused to support the use of force against Germany. Britain believed that even though Germany violated the Treaty of Versailles, it was not being unreasonable in occupying its own territory. But Hitler's

APPEASEMENT

to bring to a state of peace. In Britain at this time, appeasement was a belief that if European states satisfied the reasonable demands of dissatisfied powers, the dissatisfied powers would be content, and that would lead to stability and peace.

plans went far beyond simply occupying the Rhineland. The road to World War II was well under way.

The AXIS

With their similar philosophies, some dictators formed alliances. In 1936, Hitler and Mussolini formed the Rome-Berlin Axis, aka the **AXIS**. Japan joined in 1940. Russia didn't join the Axis, but signed a **NONAGGRESSION PACT** with Germany in which they agreed not to attack each other.

WORLD WAR II BEGINS

In 1938, Hitler declared the unification of Germany and Austria. Later that year he took over the **SUDETENLAND**, a part of Czechoslovakia. A year later, on September 1, 1939, Hitler invaded Poland. The USSR also attacked Poland and then moved on to the Baltic Peninsula and Finland. Britain and France finally saw Hitler as a threat and declared war two days later.

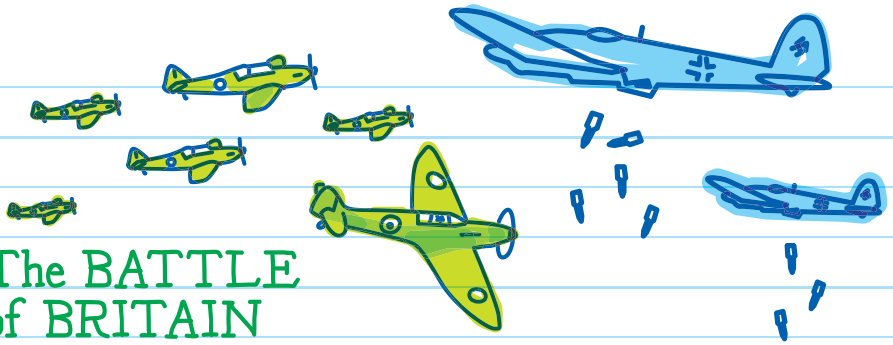
Germany had taken over Denmark and Norway by 1940. The Germans easily invaded Luxembourg, Belgium, and the Netherlands. They fought in North Africa and Italy. Even France was overtaken, and Paris was captured by the Nazis.

But a harsh Russian winter changed everything. Ignoring the nonaggression treaty they'd created with the Soviets, the Germans entered Russian territory in 1941, only to be



defeated by near-freezing temperatures during the Russian winter two years later. In the first major defeat for Germany, 91,000 German troops surrendered at the **BATTLE OF STALINGRAD** (1942-1943).





The BATTLE of BRITAIN

In the summer of 1940, Hitler began his air attack on England. During the **BATTLE OF BRITAIN**, the **LUFTWAFFE** (Germany's air force) heavily bombed London and other parts of England. England, and **BRITISH PRIME MINISTER WINSTON CHURCHILL**, refused to surrender. The **ROYAL AIR FORCE (RAF)** attacked the *Luftwaffe* until the Germans retreated.

MEANS "AIR WEAPON"

A lot of children were evacuated from London during the bombings. This event even appears in the *Chronicles of Narnia* books: The main characters are sent away to live in the English countryside.



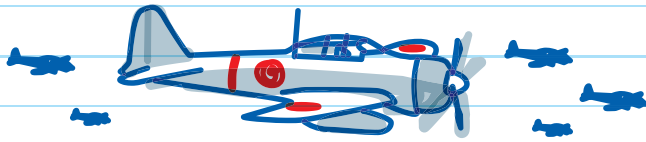
Hitler's bombing of England left many thinking that all of Europe would fall to Germany. However, Winston Churchill wouldn't give up until he stopped Hitler. Surprisingly, Hitler made the same mistake that Napoleon did. He invaded the Soviet Union only to have his troops freeze.

The HOLOCAUST

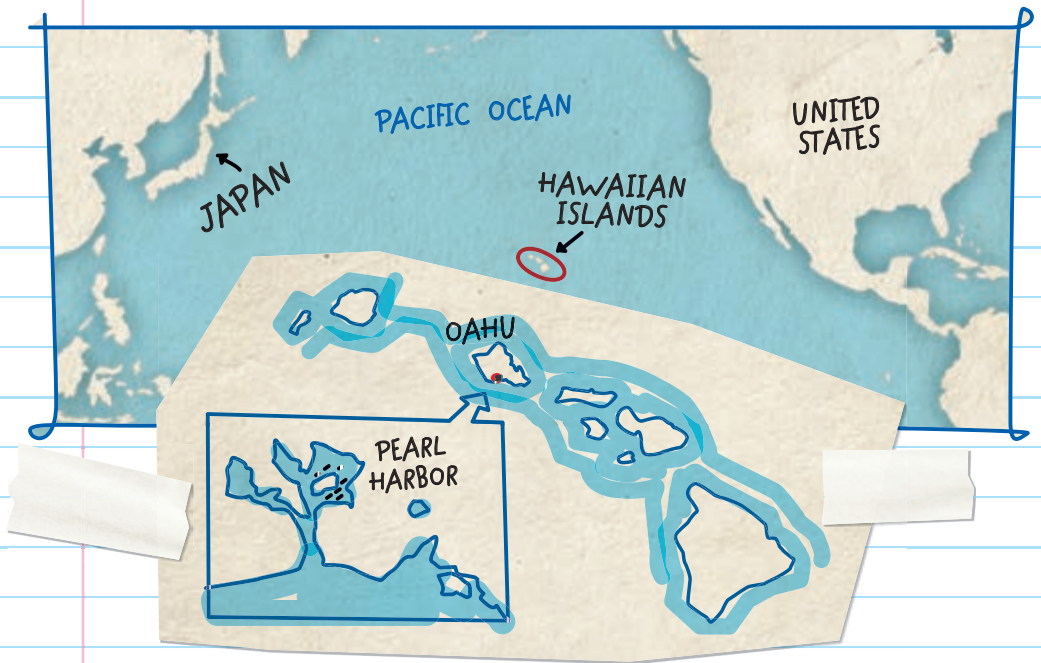


Meanwhile, the policies of Nazi Germany led to the systematic killing of six million Jews and about five million Roma, female and male homosexuals, people with disabilities, political opponents, and anyone else who opposed the Nazis, in what is known as the **HOLOCAUST**. Jews and others were rounded up in every region Hitler conquered and thrown into concentration camps. There were six death camps in Poland; the largest was **AUSCHWITZ**. Some of those sent to Auschwitz went to labor camps, where they were worked or starved to death; others were used as subjects of ghastly medical experiments. The rest were killed immediately in the **GAS CHAMBERS**. People who tried to hide Jews or help them escape to safe countries were also put to death if they were caught.

PEARL HARBOR



Following successful invasions in mainland Asia, Japan decided to add island territory, including the Philippines, which were protected by the U.S. After Japan attacked Indochina, the U.S. stopped selling supplies to Japan and froze any Japanese money that was in U.S. banks. On **DECEMBER 7, 1941**—the day that President Roosevelt famously called **"A DATE WHICH WILL LIVE IN INFAMY"**—Japan launched a surprise attack on the naval base at



PEARL HARBOR, Hawaii. After such an attack on American soil, U.S. isolationism was done for. The next day, FDR asked Congress to declare war on Japan. Three days after that, on **DECEMBER 11, 1941**, Germany and Italy declared war on the U.S. and Congress reciprocated. The U.S. had entered World War II.

The Germans had broken the Allies' code and knew their battle plans. But the U.S. had Navajo men who used their language to fool the Germans and turned the tide of the war.



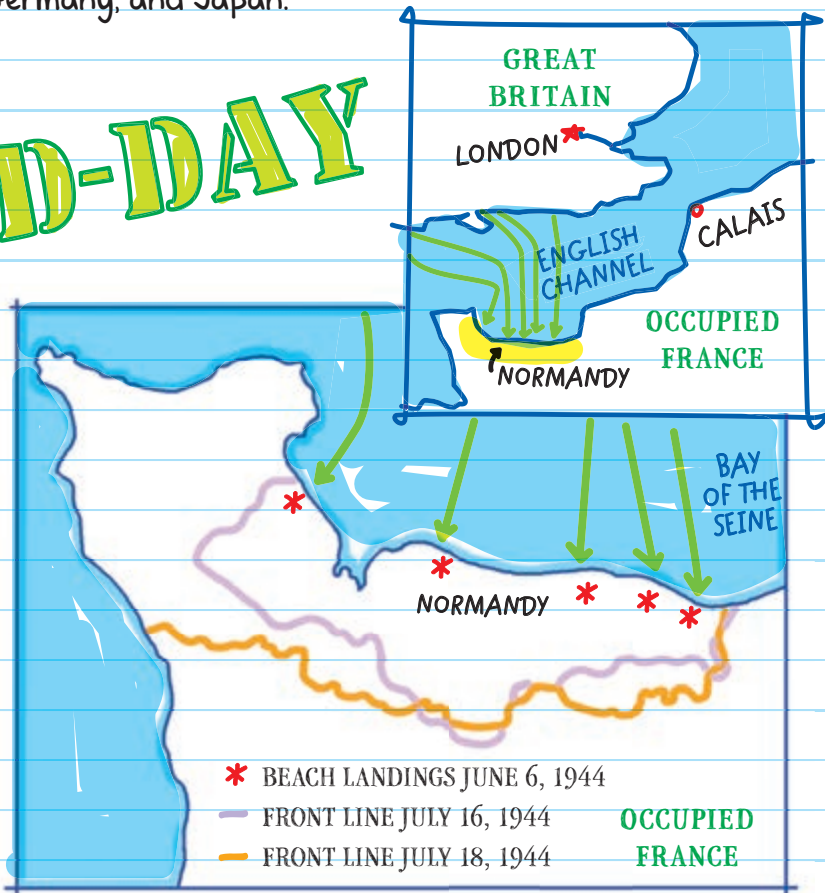
The WAR in EUROPE ENDS

On June 6, 1944, known as **D-DAY**, Allied warships landed in Normandy, France, in the largest **AMPHIBIOUS** landing in history. The Germans, who expected the Allies to land elsewhere, were slow to react, and D-Day marked the start of an offensive movement by the Allies to defeat the Axis powers of Italy, Germany, and Japan.

LIKE A FROG!

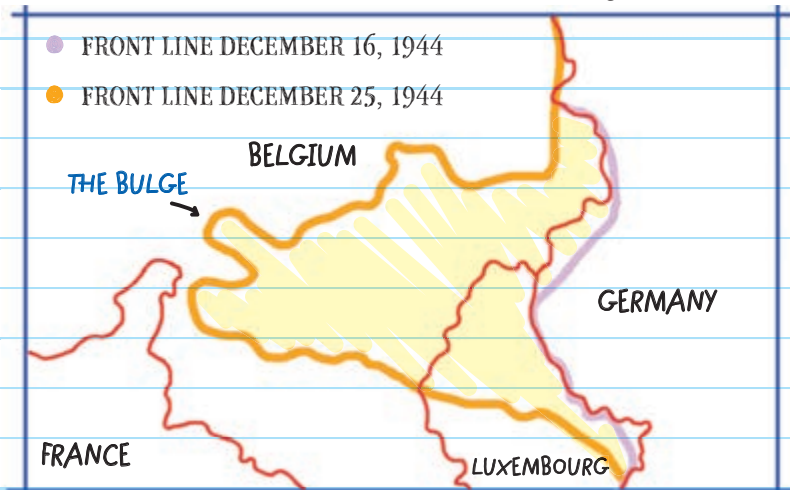
AMPHIBIOUS
belonging to both
water and land

D-DAY





France and other countries captured by the Germans were soon free, and in December 1944, the Allies defeated the Germans in the **BATTLE OF THE BULGE** in Belgium.



THE BATTLE OF THE BULGE

is called that because of the bubble shape the Allied line formed when the Germans pushed them back in one spot. This battle is also called the Ardennes Offensive.

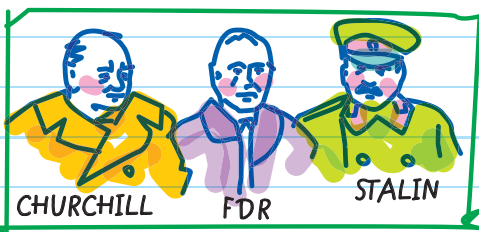
The Allies continued into northern Germany to join forces with the Soviets. The Soviets had advanced steadily by 1943, reoccupying Ukraine and continuing into Poland, Hungary, Romania, and Bulgaria. In January 1945, the Soviets reached Berlin.

Hiding in a bunker under the city of Berlin, Hitler wrote a final political testament, still trying to blame the Jews for World Wars I and II. On April 30, a few days after Italian resistance fighters killed Mussolini, Hitler committed suicide. On May 7, the Germans surrendered, and on May 8, 1945, known as **V-E DAY**, the Allies declared victory. The war was over in Europe, but the U.S. was still fighting Japan.

VICTORY
IN
EUROPE

YALTA and POTSDAM

When it was clear that the Allies would win, the

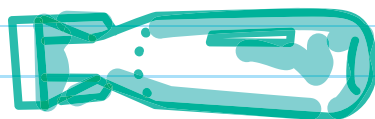


Allied leaders met to discuss ways to prevent another world war. In February 1945, the **BIG THREE**—Churchill, FDR, and Stalin—had met at the **YALTA CONFERENCE** and decided they needed a better peacekeeping group than the League of Nations to prevent war. In July, U.S. **PRESIDENT HARRY S. TRUMAN** (who had been vice president, but became president when FDR died in April) met with Churchill, Clement Attlee (also from Britain), and Stalin at the **POTSDAM CONFERENCE**.



They decided to divide Germany into four zones. The city of Berlin would also be divided in four. The U.S., the UK, France, and the Soviet Union would each control one zone.

The DROPPING of the ATOMIC BOMB



On August 6, 1945, the Americans dropped an **ATOMIC** bomb on Japan on the orders of President Truman. The bomb's power came from a chain reaction of nuclear fission and immediately destroyed the city of **HIROSHIMA**.

When Japan refused to surrender, the U.S. dropped a second bomb on August 9, 1945, this time on **NAGASAKI**. Tens of thousands of ordinary Japanese citizens died in the

explosions, and thousands more died later from exposure to horrible amounts of radiation. On August 14, 1945, **V-J DAY**, the Japanese Emperor, **HIROHITO**, signed a peace agreement accepting unconditional surrender. World War II officially came to an end.

VICTORY OVER JAPAN DAY





WHAT MAKES A NUCLEAR WEAPON NUCLEAR?



The power comes from reactions in the **NUCLEI** of atoms of **RADIOACTIVE** elements, which emit energy. When the particles collide, the result is so strong that a tiny amount of material can create a huge explosion. Atomic bombs, or “A-bombs,” get their power by splitting the nucleus. Even more powerful hydrogen bombs, or “H-bombs,” invented in the 1950s, fuse multiple nuclei together.

The NUREMBERG TRIALS

In November 1945, in Nuremberg, Germany, the **NUREMBERG TRIALS** began, trying Nazis for **CRIMES AGAINST HUMANITY**. In the first round of trials, twenty-two Nazis were found guilty and ten were executed. Over a hundred more were found guilty. A similar **TRIBUNAL** (the **INTERNATIONAL MILITARY TRIBUNAL FOR THE FAR EAST**)

TRIBUNAL
a court

was held in Tokyo, where Hideki Tōjō and six other Japanese leaders were convicted and executed.

COUNTING the AFTERMATH

At least forty million civilians are thought to have died during this time (some estimates are three times higher), plus at least seventeen million combatants estimated to have died in battle (again, new research puts this number much higher), making it the deadliest military conflict in history. And nuclear weapons brought in a new era of threats and warfare.

WORLD

January 30, 1933:

Germany's president Paul von Hindenburg declares Hitler chancellor and signs the Enabling Act. The Nazis begin setting up concentration camps.



1935:

The Nuremberg Laws are enacted.

May 12, 1938:

Hitler declares unification of Germany and Austria. Germany takes over Sudetenland.

March 1933:

The Nazis open Dachau, the first concentration camp.

1936:

Hitler and Mussolini form the Rome-Berlin Axis.



September 1, 1939:

Germany invades Poland, which causes Britain and France to declare war.

WAR II

April-May, 1940:

Germany invades Norway, Denmark, Belgium, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, and France. It also fights in North Africa and Italy.



June 1941:

Germany invades the Soviet Union.



December 11, 1941:

Germany and Italy declare war on the U.S.

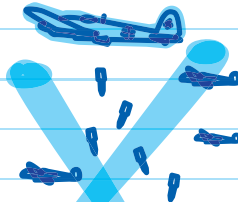
1940:

Japan joins the Axis.



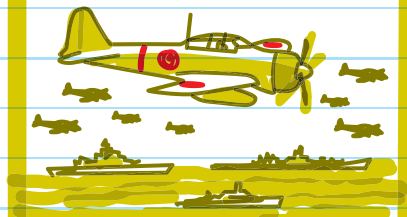
July 1940:

Germany begins intense attacks by bombing England.



December 7, 1941:

Japan launches a surprise attack on Pearl Harbor and the U.S. declares war on Japan.



WORLD

**February
1943:**

After a two-year invasion of the USSR, German troops surrender at the Battle of Stalingrad.

June 1944:

Allied troops invade German-occupied France on D-Day, throwing the German forces off guard.



**September
1943:**

Italy surrenders to the Allies.

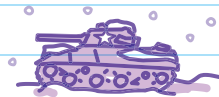
**October
1944:**

The Japanese navy is defeated near the Philippines.



**December
1944:**

The Germans are defeated in the Battle of the Bulge.

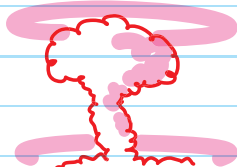


WAR II



January 1945:
The Soviet army reaches Berlin.

April 30, 1945:
Hitler commits suicide.



August 6 and 9, 1945:
The U.S. drops atomic bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

April 28, 1945:
Resistance fighters kill Mussolini.

May 1945:
Germany surrenders to the Allies and the war in Europe is over.



August 14, 1945
Japan surrenders to the U.S. and the war ends in the South Pacific.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. The Nuremberg laws of 1935:
 - A. effectively stripped Jews of their German citizenship
 - B. required all Jews to be sent to concentration camps
 - C. joined Hitler and Mussolini in political power
 - D. gave Hitler free rein to ignore both the president and the Reichstag

2. List the groups sent to concentration camps.

3. Great Britain's initial policy toward Germany's actions in invading the Rhineland is known as:
 - A. trench warfare
 - B. appeasement
 - C. neutrality
 - D. allied reasoning

4. Reichstag is the German word for _____.

5. Britain and France first declared war on Germany following Hitler's invasion of which country in 1939?
 - A. the Sudetenland
 - B. Czechoslovakia
 - C. Poland
 - D. Austria

6. Germany's first major defeat came because of:
- A. a fierce Russian winter
 - B. fierce Russian warriors
 - C. the destruction of a crucial land bridge
 - D. lack of food
7. When was the Battle of the Bulge, and which side was victorious?
8. Which U.S. president authorized the dropping of atomic bombs over Hiroshima and Nagasaki?
9. What were the Nuremberg Trials?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. A. effectively stripped Jews of their German citizenship
2. The Nazis sent Jews, communists (and other political opponents), homosexuals, Roma, and a variety of ethnic groups that Nazis considered inferior (including Poles, Ukrainians, Slavs, and Serbs), and people with mental and physical disabilities to concentration camps.
3. B. appeasement
4. Parliament
5. C. Poland
6. A. a fierce Russian winter
7. The Battle of the Bulge was in 1944, and the Allies defeated the Germans.
8. President Harry S. Truman authorized dropping the atomic bombs over Hiroshima and Nagasaki.
9. The Nuremberg Trials were tribunals meant to hold Nazis responsible for crimes against humanity. Over a hundred Nazis were found guilty during these trials.

Unit 9

Post-World War II: The World from 1945 to Today

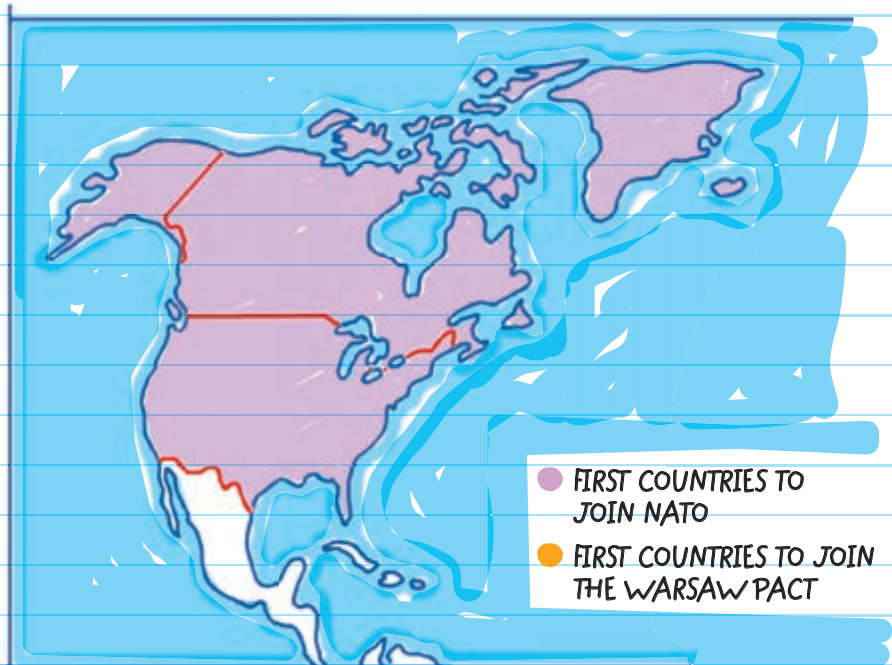
After World War II, the world faced a period of recovery and rebuilding. Alliances from the war didn't entirely fade, and a new "war" began.

This "Cold War" divided the world again and changed the path of economic and political recovery across the globe.



★ Chapter 40 ★

CHANGES IN EUROPE AND THE MIDDLE EAST AFTER WORLD WAR II



Some rivalries didn't end with the war. Some became even more serious. The differences between the U.S. (the capitalist West) and the Soviet Union (the communist East) were hard to ignore.

POST-WORLD WAR II ALLIANCES

After World War II, alliances formed, with the U.S. and the Soviet Union acting as captain of each team. The U.S.'s side—Belgium, Luxembourg, France, the Netherlands, Great Britain, Italy, Denmark, Norway, Portugal, Iceland, Canada, and the U.S.—formed a pact in 1949 called the **NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO)**. The rival team formed the **WARSAW PACT** with much of Eastern Europe in 1955.



These pacts were military alliances that countries joined for security. Sort of a "you scratch my back, I'll scratch your back." (Only, scratching with diplomacy and/or guns and bombs.)

STOPPING the SPREAD of COMMUNISM

The U.S. and Great Britain thought newly liberated nations in Eastern Europe should form their own governments.

The Soviets feared that these new nations would be anti-Soviet—especially Greece, which was in the middle of a civil war. Great Britain provided financial support to Greek anticommunist forces until it ran out of money. U.S. president Harry S. Truman feared that Britain's withdrawal would lead to the creation of a Greek communist country, so he asked Congress for aid for Greece as well as Turkey in 1947. It was a lot of cash to spend on another country, but President Truman made a strong case for it in what is now called the **TRUMAN DOCTRINE**.

The **TRUMAN DOCTRINE** said that the U.S. should always support free people resisting **SUBJUGATION** by armed minorities or outside pressure. The U.S. would also provide aid to countries threatened by communism.

SUBJUGATION

the act of bringing under complete control

That same year, **U.S. SECRETARY OF STATE GENERAL GEORGE MARSHALL** came up with the **MARSHALL PLAN**. Marshall believed communism took hold in countries with economic problems, so he wanted to give impoverished countries money in the hope that communism would fail. The Marshall Plan provided \$13 billion to rebuild Europe after the war.

The EEC FORMS

The Soviet Union and its European **SATELLITE** states (the states dependent on the Soviet Union) refused to accept any funds from the Marshall Plan. In 1949, they created the Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON) to provide financial aid, but they didn't quite have enough cash to make it work.

SATELLITE

describes something that is subordinate to another authority

In Western Europe, an economic plan called the **EUROPEAN ECONOMIC COMMUNITY (EEC)** was formed in 1957. Also known as the **COMMON MARKET** (and later called simply the European Community, or EC), the EEC consisted of France,

THE EC LATER GAVE RISE TO THE EUROPEAN UNION (EU), AND IT WAS DISSOLVED INTO THE EU IN 2009.

West Germany (Germany was divided after World War II), Belgium, the Netherlands, Luxembourg, and Italy. The EEC encouraged economic cooperation among member nations. Britain, Denmark, and Ireland joined the EEC in the 1970s, and Greece, Spain, and Portugal joined in the 1980s.

ORIGINAL MEMBERS OF THE EEC



The UNITED NATIONS

The League of Nations was ineffective, but it laid the groundwork for the **UNITED NATIONS**, or UN, which was officially formed in October 1945 to work for peace and human dignity. The original UN charter was signed by 50 countries, and today nearly 200 countries are members.



The CREATION of ISRAEL

After the Holocaust, many Jews sought a homeland to call their own. In 1947, the UN recommended the partition of British-controlled Palestine to form a Jewish state. In 1948, by UN **MANDATE**, the state of **ISRAEL** was officially formed.

MANDATE
an authoritative
command

The region that was formerly called Palestine (or Judaea) had a mainly Muslim Arab population that was not happy with a new Jewish state taking control.

PALESTINE U.N. PARTITION PLAN (1947)



Neighboring Arab countries attacked the newly formed Israel in 1948, but Israel fought back hard. Thousands of Palestinian Arabs fled the area and sought refuge in the West Bank and the Gaza Strip, two Arab-controlled lands.

Arab forces attacked again in 1967, and this time Israel gained control of the West Bank, the Gaza Strip, and parts of Syria and Egypt.

The conflict between Palestine and Israel continues to this day, despite the efforts of many great thinkers. Peace and resolution have yet to come.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. _____ is a military alliance that formed between the Soviet Union and much of Eastern Europe in 1955.
 - A. the Truman Pact
 - B. NATO
 - C. NAFTA
 - D. the Warsaw Pact
2. What is the full name of the Western military pact, and what is the abbreviation?
3. Which of the following contributed aid toward rebuilding Greece and Turkey in 1947?
 - A. the Truman Doctrine
 - B. the Marshall Plan
 - C. the European Economic Community
 - D. the Warsaw Pact
4. List the countries that were involved in the Common Market.
5. Explain the significance of this economic plan.

6. What is the principal reason why the state of Israel was formed?

7. How did Arab countries respond to the creation of Israel?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

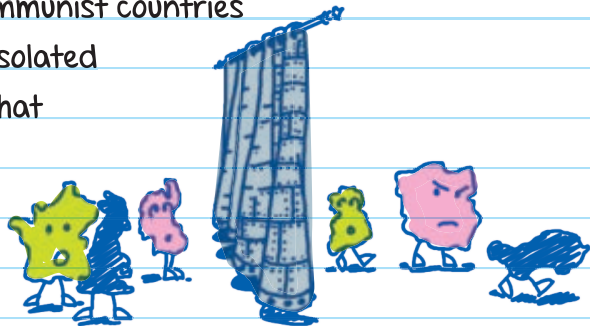


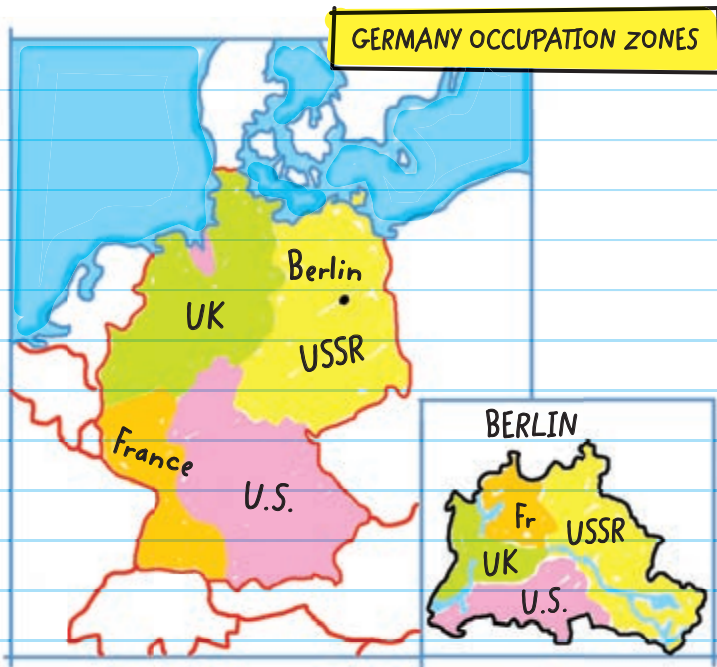
1. D. the Warsaw Pact
2. The Western military pact is called the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO).
3. A. the Truman Doctrine
4. The Common Market countries included France, West Germany, Belgium, the Netherlands, Luxembourg, Italy, Britain, Denmark, Ireland, Greece, Spain, and Portugal.
5. The Common Market encouraged economic cooperation among the nations that were members and was later called the European Community, or EC. It also gave rise to the European Union.
6. After the devastation of the Holocaust and World War II, the state of Israel was formed so that Jews could have an official homeland of their own.
7. Israel was created in a region that had a mainly Muslim Arab population. The surrounding Arab countries were unhappy that a new Jewish state was taking control, so they attacked Israel in 1948 and again in 1967.

★ Chapter 41 ★

THE COLD WAR

The "Cold War" wasn't fought on a battlefield. It was a war of ideologies between Western democracies and Eastern communist countries over the question of communism. The "warring" countries had very different ideas about politics and economics—on one side were communists and the other side were capitalists. Communist countries in Eastern Europe were isolated from the West behind what Winston Churchill called an **IRON CURTAIN** in 1946.





The DIVISION of GERMANY

After World War II, the Allied Powers divided Germany into four zones, each occupied by one of the major powers (Great Britain, France, the U.S., and the Soviet Union).

Great Britain, France, and the U.S. wanted to unify their Western sections into a West German state, but the Soviets disagreed. In June 1948, the Soviets set up the **BERLIN BLOCKADE**, preventing trucks, trains, and barges (and therefore food and supplies) from getting into the three Western zones of Berlin. The Western allies used the **BERLIN AIRLIFT** to deliver supplies to West Berlin by plane. Ten months later, the Soviets finally ended their blockade.

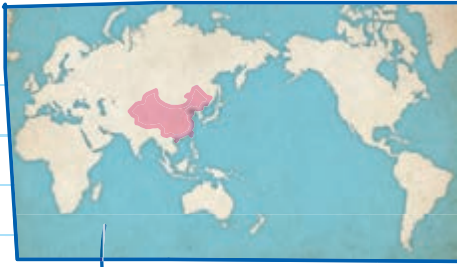
BLOCKADE

the blocking of something (can also be used as a verb)

In 1949, the Allies formally created West Germany, or the **FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY**. Less than a month later, the Soviets set up an East German state called the **GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC**. The capital, Berlin, was divided into East Berlin (under Soviet rule) and West Berlin (with a democratic government). Berlin became a major Cold War source of conflict. East Berlin was much poorer than West Berlin, and many East Berliners escaped and took refuge in West Berlin. To stop this, in 1961 Soviet premier (leader) **NIKITA KHRUSHCHEV** built a wall dividing the city. The **BERLIN WALL** came to symbolize the division and disagreement between communist and democratic superpowers.



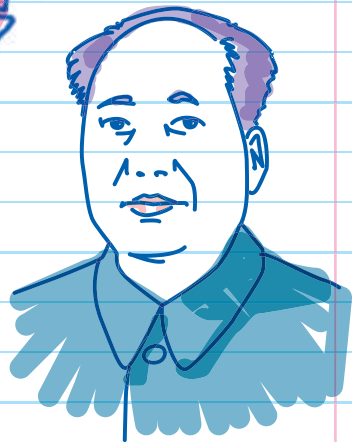
In October 1989, mass demonstrations forced the communist government to open its border. On November 9, 1989, the Berlin Wall was torn down, signaling the end of Soviet-style communism. Germany's unification took place a year later.



COMMUNISM in CHINA

In China, communism thrived. In 1945, there had been two Chinese governments: the nationalists in southern China and the communists in northern China. Civil war between the two sides ended in victory for communist rule under **MAO ZEDONG**.

The People's Republic of China was formed in 1949, and Mao Zedong became its first chairman.

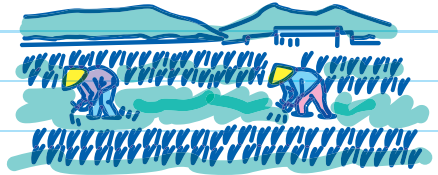


MAO ZEDONG

In 1958, Chairman Mao began a new program called the **GREAT LEAP FORWARD**, which combined small farms into vast **COMMUNES** with more than 30,000 people living and working together. Mao promised more equal rice distribution.

Communes fostered communal child care, so women could work the fields alongside their husbands. Chairman Mao hoped life in the communes would allow China to have a classless

COMMUNE
a community of people who live together and share work and finances



society, but the Great Leap Forward was a great big failure and caused one of the world's worst famines. By 1960, the government abandoned the program.

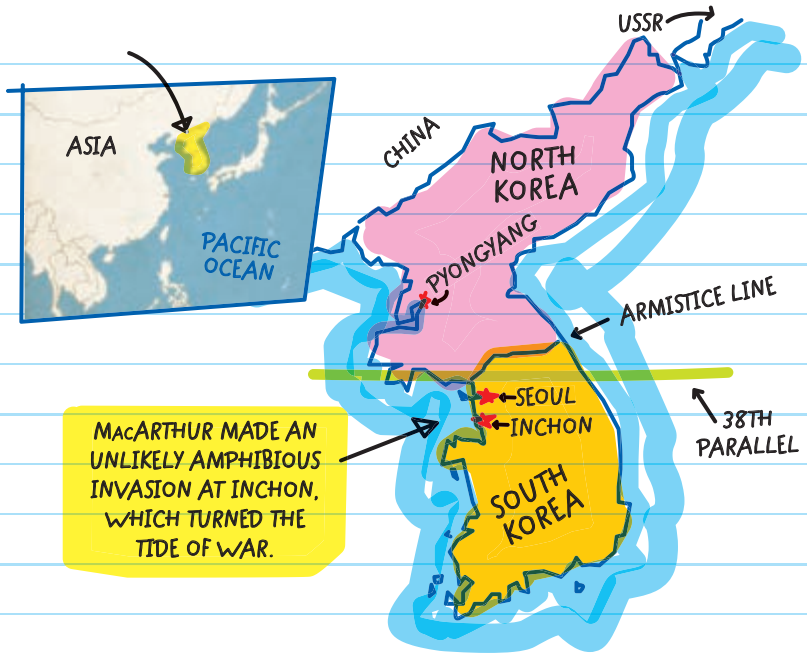
In the late 1970s, Communist Party of China leader **DENG XIAOPING** tried to move China toward a market economy (under the communist political system) in a set of reforms called the **FOUR MODERNIZATIONS**. The Four Modernizations in agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology were intended to make China a major economic power. China's economy improved in the 1980s, when the country finally opened its doors to outside investment from countries like the U.S. When people went abroad and learned more about the West, some began to criticize the Communist Party and call for democracy, and were often put in prison as punishment for speaking up.

In May 1989, student protestors demanded an end to corruption. They wanted the Communist Party leaders to resign. In June, the protestors set up in **TIANANMEN SQUARE** in Beijing. Deng Xiaoping sent tanks and troops; between 500 and 2,000 people were killed. Even though China experienced political conflict, the country has developed into one of the strongest economies in the world in the last several decades.

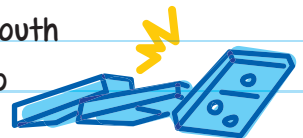
KOREA and VIETNAM

In Korea and Vietnam, there were divisions between communist and noncommunist governments that worsened into military confrontations.

Before World War II, Korea had been a Japanese colony. The U.S. proposed dividing Japanese-occupied Korea near the **38th PARALLEL**. The Soviets helped communists take power in **NORTH KOREA**, and the U.S. supported the democratic government in **SOUTH KOREA**. In June 1950, North Korean communist forces attacked South Korea. The United Nations put together a team of soldiers led by **U.S. GENERAL DOUGLAS MACARTHUR** (who had helped take Japan in World War II and had overseen its occupation) to help South Korea. When MacArthur tried to push the invaders out of South Korea, China sent troops to help their allies in North Korea. Eventually the two sides agreed to disagree—they signed an armistice in July 1953 agreeing to stop fighting and keep the country divided.



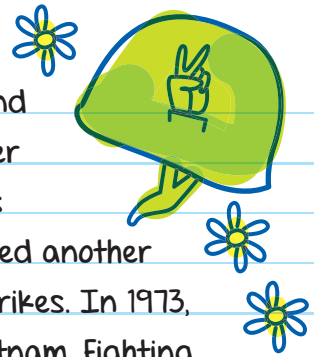
France had once colonized Vietnam as part of **INDOCHINA** (present-day Cambodia, Laos, and Vietnam). French involvement in Indochina continued after World War II until 1954, when a Vietnamese independence movement led by **HO CHI MINH** defeated the French at the **BATTLE OF DIEN BIEN PHU**. Like Korea, Vietnam was divided into a communist north and a noncommunist south. In South Vietnam, communist rebels called the **VIET CONG** tried to unite the entire country under communist rule. Once more the U.S. got involved, sending economic aid as well as military troops. The U.S. was afraid of seeing a **DOMINO EFFECT**: It believed that if the communists won South Vietnam, other Asian countries would also fall (like dominoes) to communism.



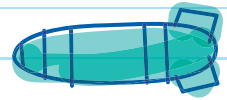


The Vietnam War lasted for years, killing thousands of Americans and Vietnamese. The U.S. launched an aggressive bombing campaign against North Vietnam called **OPERATION ROLLING THUNDER**, plus chemical warfare in which it sprayed the herbicide **AGENT ORANGE** to destroy Vietnamese jungles (to clear terrain for soldiers) and crops. In spite of all its military power, superior equipment, and large numbers of troops, the U.S. failed to defeat the North Vietnamese. Ho Chi Minh and the North Vietnamese waged guerrilla warfare; they would attack before running or hiding in the jungle; and they built underground tunnels.

Antiwar movements in the U.S. protested and called for an end to the war, especially after Americans troops killed Vietnamese civilians in the **MY LAI MASSACRE** of 1968 and entered another country, Cambodia, in 1970 to back up air strikes. In 1973, the U.S. withdrew its troops from South Vietnam. Fighting continued between the north and the south until communist forces captured the capital of South Vietnam, Saigon, and renamed it **HO CHI MINH CITY**. In 1976, they united Vietnam under communist rule.

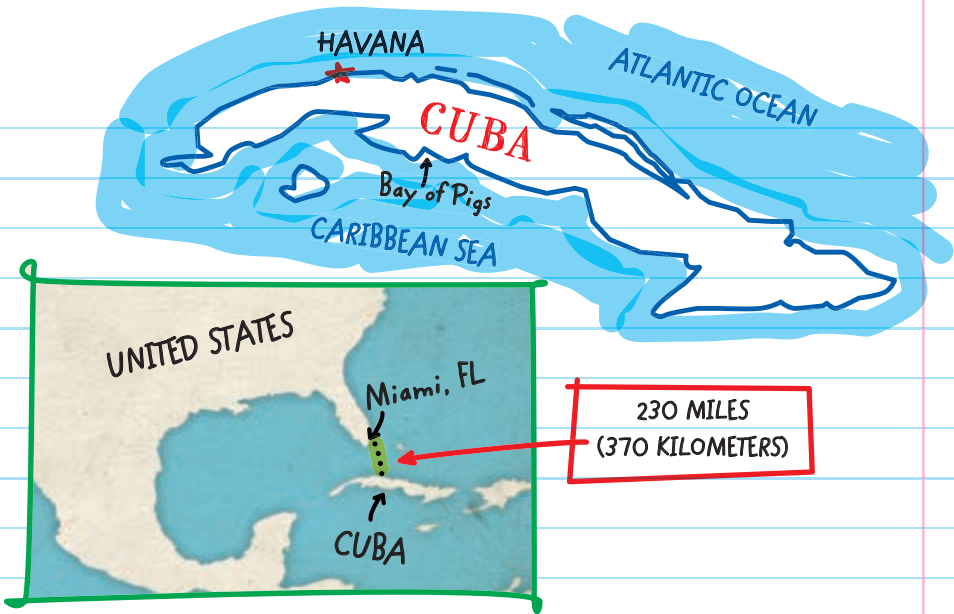


The **ARMS RACE** and the **CUBAN MISSILE CRISIS**



Throughout this time, the U.S. and the Soviet Union built up their armies and weapons just in case they had to go to war against each other. This buildup was known as the **ARMS RACE**. No battles were fought between the two countries during the Cold War, but the arms race led to advancements in airplanes, jets, tanks, and other weapons systems. **NUCLEAR WEAPONS** became increasingly dangerous as each side tried to outdo the other with deadlier and deadlier bombs, until each nation had more than enough bombs to destroy each other several times over.

In Cuba, communist leader Fidel Castro led a revolution of workers and peasants against the right-wing dictatorship of **FULGENCIO BATISTA**. Castro wanted to provide education, health care, and national land rights to the



lower classes that Batista neglected in Cuba. Many of the sugar plantations were owned by foreigners. The U.S. didn't like having communism so close to home, so in April 1961 **PRESIDENT JOHN F. KENNEDY** (also known as JFK) supported an invasion of Cuba by exiled Cuban fighters to overthrow Castro. The **BAY OF PIGS** invasion was a failure and ended in the surrender of the exiled fighters. Castro remained in power, enforcing communist rule in the country, and he turned to the Soviets for support.

A year after the Bay of Pigs invasion, the U.S. discovered Soviet missiles in Cuba, which could have ended up in a nuclear weapons conflict. Luckily, the Soviets agreed to withdraw their missiles after the U.S. blockaded their fleet in the **CUBAN MISSILE CRISIS** of October 1962. Still, the fear of nuclear weapons being used was suddenly very realistic.



The COLD WAR ENDS

The Cold War ended in the early 1990s thanks in part to reforms introduced by **MIKHAIL GORBACHEV**, who became the leader of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union in 1985. Gorbachev called for a radical restructuring of the Soviet economic and political system called **PERESTROIKA**. He also supported **GLASNOST**, a policy of perestroika that encouraged Soviet citizens to speak openly about the Soviet Union's strengths and weaknesses... which led to Soviet Republics demanding independence and the defeat of the Communist Party. In 1987, the Soviets and Americans agreed to eliminate intermediate-range nuclear weapons. The Soviet Union dissolved in 1991. The arms race between the USSR and the U.S., and the Cold War, were over at last.



CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Germany was divided into four zones after World War II. Who controlled these zones?
2. What was the Cold War really about? Was it a war in the traditional sense?
3. What was the arms race? Who was involved?
4. What was the Iron Curtain?
5. The Berlin Wall was built by _____ in 1961 to divide the city.
6. _____ was responsible for China's failed Great Leap Forward.
7. What is the significance of Tiananmen Square?
 - A. It was the site of a major protest against Communist Party corruption.
 - B. It marked the end of Deng Xiaoping's Four Modernizations.
 - C. It was the site of a major protest against democracy.
 - D. It marked the beginning of the Vietnam War.

8. Discuss why the U.S. became involved in the conflicts between North Korea and South Korea and between North Vietnam and South Vietnam.

9. Which of the following was a result of the Bay of Pigs invasion of 1961?

A. The Viet Cong gained a major advantage over American troops.

B. General Douglas MacArthur advanced into South Korea.

C. Fidel Castro was removed from power.

D. The exiled fighters surrendered to communist forces.

10. When did the Soviet Union dissolve?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The four zones were controlled by Great Britain, France, the U.S., and the USSR.
2. The Cold War was a war of ideologies between Western democracies and Eastern communist countries over communism versus capitalism. It wasn't a war in the traditional sense because it wasn't primarily fought on battlefields.
3. The arms race was a period when the U.S. and the Soviet Union built up their armies and weapons just in case a war was declared.
4. The Iron Curtain was a term coined by Winston Churchill to describe how communist countries in Eastern Europe were isolated from the West.
5. Nikita Khrushchev
6. Mao Zedong (Chairman Mao)
7. A. It was the site of a major protest against Communist Party corruption.
8. The U.S. became involved in both conflicts because it was afraid that if the communists took over noncommunist countries, other Asian countries might also become communist.
9. D. The exiled fighters surrendered to communist forces.
10. The Soviet Union dissolved in 1991.

★ Chapter 42 ★

NATIONALIST and INDEPENDENCE MOVEMENTS AFTER WORLD WAR II

Many countries achieved their independence after World War II.



NATIONALISM in INDIA

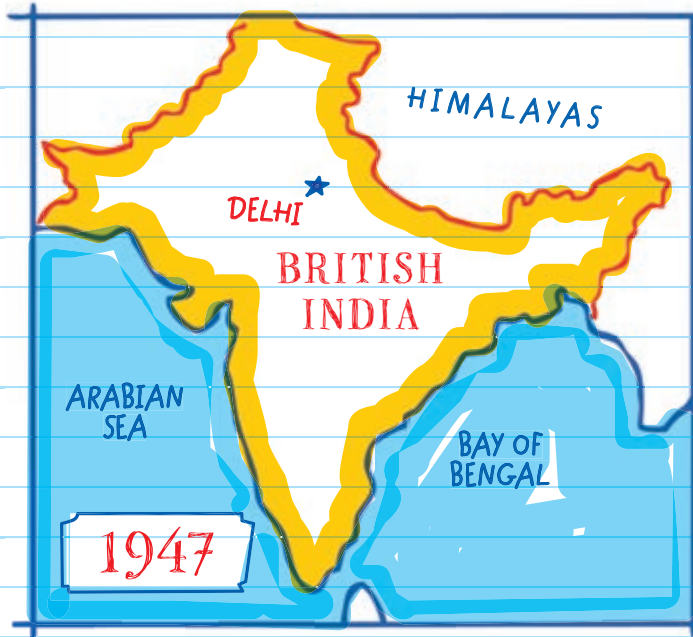
In India, a young Hindu named **MOHANDAS GANDHI** began a movement of nonviolent resistance and **CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE** to improve the lives of India's poor and gain freedom from British rule. He led the **SALT MARCH** with thousands of followers in 1930 to protest the British monopoly and taxes on an essential need, salt. Gandhi's followers called him Mahatma, meaning "great soul." He didn't believe in fighting and war; his peaceful ways eventually led to Indian independence from the British in August 1947. India was partitioned into two countries, one Hindu (India) and one Muslim (Pakistan). As with colonial Africa, this partition divided families and left some Hindus in Pakistan and Muslims in India.

CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE

the act of actively refusing to follow laws, usually in the form of nonviolent protest



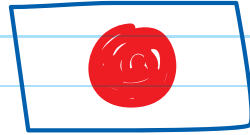
Gandhi's peaceful protests, marches, hunger strikes, and sit-ins influenced and inspired later activists, like **MARTIN LUTHER KING JR.**, in the U.S.



JAPAN after WORLD WAR II

World War II had left Japan crippled; much of the city of Tokyo had been destroyed, and agricultural production was down. After Japan's unconditional surrender in August 1945, Allied forces, led by the U.S., occupied Japan to distribute food, prevent Japan from developing its military, and also to make Japan more like the West. In the spring of 1952, Allied occupation officially ended.

Japan was once again independent.



Beginning in 1949, by selectively borrowing Western ideas and technology, Japan was able to recover, rebuild, and emerge even stronger than before. Japan soon had one of the fastest-growing economies after the war. Its manufacturing, trade, car industry, and electronics development were so great that its electronics industry surpassed America's by the 1970s. Tokyo became a populous, vibrant, exciting—and very modern—city.

INDEPENDENCE for AFRICAN COUNTRIES

On the African continent, the years after World War II were a time of liberation from colonial rule. **LIBYA** became the first newly independent nation after World War II in 1951, and many countries would follow.

49 MORE COUNTRIES!
INCLUDING GHANA,
KENYA, AND
ZIMBABWE. TO
NAME A FEW.



Iwo Jima remained under U.S. control until 1968, and Okinawa remained under U.S. control until 1972.

Some African leaders believed in Western-style capitalism, others in Soviet-style communism. Still others wanted an "African" socialism based on the traditions of community, in which wealth would be put into the hands of the people. European imperialism had divided the continent in random ways and created borders that often caused big problems when nations became independent.

PAN-AFRICANISM is the concept of uniting all Africans regardless of national boundaries. It led to the creation of the **ORGANIZATION OF AFRICAN UNITY (OAU)** in 1963, which supported African groups fighting against colonialism. The OAU became the **AFRICAN UNION (AU)** in 2002, which promotes democracy and economic growth in Africa.

Most of the new African leaders came from the urban middle class and had studied in the West; they believed Western democracy was a useful model for governing. But some new nations fell under military dictatorships, or worse.

In South Africa, **APARTHEID** separated whites and blacks, and only whites (a minority of the population) could vote. Blacks began to protest these laws in the 1950s and '60s.

APARTHEID

a system of racial segregation in which South Africans were assigned to one of four groups (black, white, mixed race, or Asian); the majority (blacks) had fewer rights than the minority (whites).

In 1960, 69 people who had been peacefully protesting

were killed by police in the **SHARPEVILLE MASSACRE**. Evidence shows that most of them had been shot in the back, meaning that they weren't approaching the police or acting aggressively. Then the government arrested **NELSON MANDELA**, the leader of the **AFRICAN NATIONAL CONGRESS (ANC)**, in 1962. He was sentenced to life in prison in 1963. Mandela was kept in high-security prisons before finally being released in 1990. **THAT'S 27 YEARS LATER!**

In 1994, when the government agreed to hold democratic elections for the first time ever, Nelson Mandela became the first president of South Africa to be elected by the majority of all the people, black and white. Mandela's presidency and the work of human rights activist **ARCHBISHOP DESMOND TUTU** finally helped end apartheid.

"IT ALWAYS SEEMS
IMPOSSIBLE UNTIL
IT'S DONE."

—NELSON MANDELA



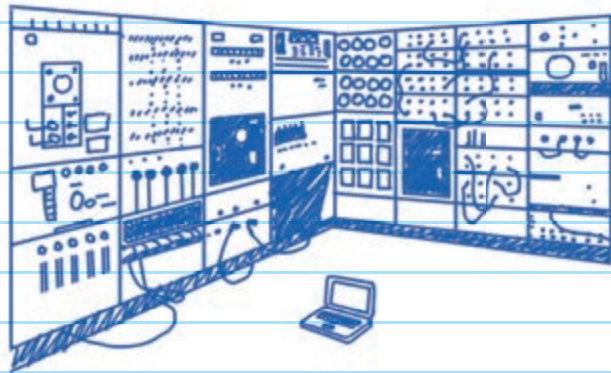
CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Mohandas Gandhi began a movement of nonviolent resistance and civil disobedience in India.
2. B. 1947
3. After independence from Great Britain, India was partitioned into two countries: India (Hindu) and Pakistan (Muslim).
4. C. 1951
5. Pan-Africanism is the concept of uniting all black Africans regardless of national boundaries.
6. Apartheid was the policy in South Africa of segregating whites and blacks, and allowing only the small white minority to vote.
7. False. Nelson Mandela was the national leader held in high-security prisons for nearly 27 years.
8. Nelson Mandela

★ Chapter 43 ★

★ MODERN ★ ★ GLOBAL ★ ★ TRANSFORMATIONS ★



TECHNOLOGY

The first modern computers weighed around thirty tons! They were huge, and only a few places had them. But in the 1940s, these computers changed the way businesses were run; they took only seconds to do what might have taken days to do by hand. Countries around the world had to adapt to new technology to stay up to speed in the global economy.

Even in the average home, computers became incredibly important. Regular people started getting online in the 1980s, and home computers became more popular with the **INTERNET REVOLUTION** in the 1990s. It changed the way people communicated now that they could communicate with anyone, anywhere, at any time, in seconds.

BEFORE:

letters



shouting!



landline
phones



faxes



AFTER:

texting



CAPS LOCK!

DIDN'T YOU SEE
MY TEXT?!?

email



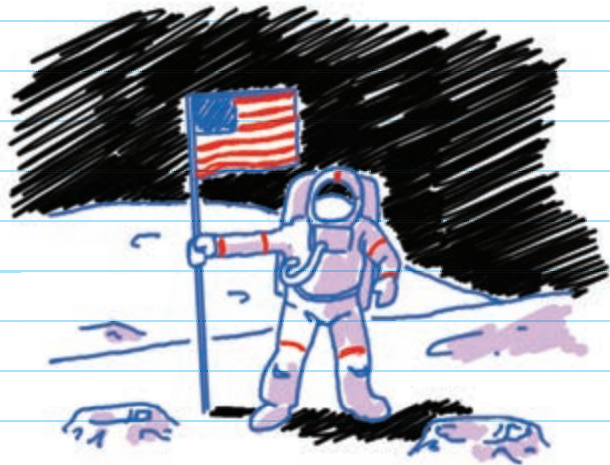
social media



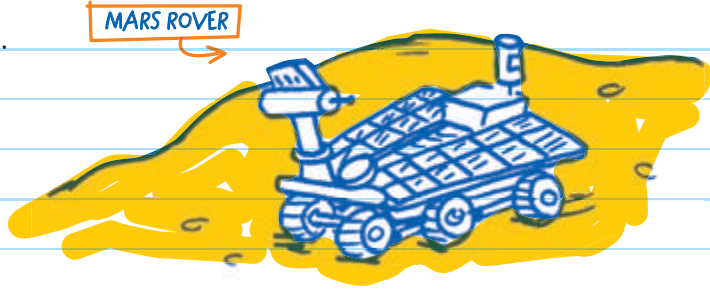
Another important invention of the twentieth century was **TELEVISION**, which became popular in the U.S. after World War II. Networks began broadcasting nightly news segments, and the television quickly replaced the radio as a major news source. The Internet is now a major news source, including sites run by television networks.



The U.S. and USSR were also locked in a **SPACE RACE**, starting when the Soviet Union launched the first artificial satellite, **SPUTNIK**, in 1957. The next year, the U.S. launched a satellite and founded the **NATIONAL AERONAUTICS AND SPACE ADMINISTRATION (NASA)**. The Space Race led to a focus on math and science in American schools. In April 1961, **YURI GAGARIN** of the USSR became the first person to orbit the earth. The U.S.'s **NEIL ARMSTRONG** and **EDWIN "BUZZ" ALDRIN** were the first people to walk on the moon, on July 20, 1969, during the Apollo project.

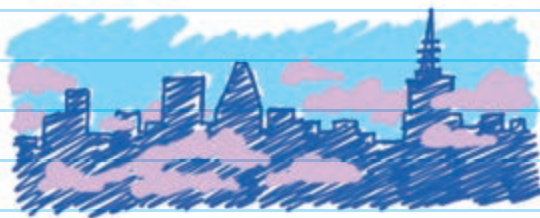


Since then, humans have sent machines into space to explore Mars and other planets. Robots have traveled to the sun, to comets, to asteroids, and past the edge of the solar system.



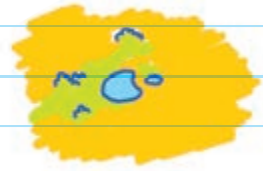
The ENVIRONMENT

Humans made a lot of technological advances in the twentieth century, but they also made some pretty big mistakes. Cities grew too fast and too big. Factories and a desire for expensive products like cars and phones led us to neglect something very important: Mother Nature. We've overused land and soil, leading to **DESERTIFICATION**. We've cleared forests (**DEFORESTATION**) to build houses and factories. Our factories have poured harmful chemicals into our air, creating smoggy skylines, **ACID RAIN**, and **CLIMATE CHANGE**.



DESERTIFICATION

the depletion of plants and topsoil in semi-arid lands, causing them to become deserts; often a by-product of population growth



ACID RAIN

precipitation (such as rain or snow) with high levels of acid-forming chemicals released in the air by factories and motor vehicles

Deforestation has hit tropical **RAIN**

FORESTS, where 50 percent of the world's species of plants and animals live. Rain forests are sometimes called the "lungs" of the planet—they're

crucial to our survival because they remove carbon dioxide from the air and provide us with oxygen to breathe.



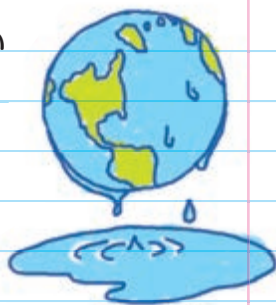
The **GREENHOUSE EFFECT** is the warming of the earth due to carbon dioxide buildup in the atmosphere. The greenhouse effect contributes to **GLOBAL**

WARMING—which doesn't mean that everywhere is hotter all at the same time.

GLOBAL WARMING

an increase in the overall temperature of the earth's atmosphere due to the greenhouse effect

It's a part of overall climate change and can contribute to rising sea levels, the melting of polar ice caps, and severe droughts and storms. Climate change can cause famines when crops can't grow and, in turn, make regions of the planet unlivable, and it can even completely flood inhabited islands.



Some people consider climate change to be the most important issue currently facing humans—even bigger than the wars and political disagreements of history—because it affects the future livability of the entire planet.

SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

is development that meets our needs while also allowing us to conserve natural resources through recycling, water conservation, and other programs to reduce waste and the dumping of toxic materials.



In 2010, nearly two hundred nations made a promise to reduce carbon emissions when they signed an international agreement called the **KYOTO PROTOCOL**. The U.S. (which produces a lot of carbon emissions) didn't ratify this important treaty.

However, in 2015, the **UNITED NATIONS CONFERENCE ON CLIMATE CHANGE** (also known as the **COP21** or the **CMP11**)

was held in Paris, France. The 195 participating countries (including the U.S.) agreed to reduce greenhouse gases. The goal is to keep global warming this century to less than 2 degrees Celsius.

TODAY'S GLOBAL INTERDEPENDENCE

With today's technological advances in communication, nations and communities are more closely connected than ever before. This has led to people and nations becoming more interdependent (relying on each other). In a global economy, multinational corporations do business throughout the world. **GLOBALIZATION** is the process of making something worldwide, or global.

There are advantages to being so connected: Organizations from different countries can work together to solve major issues like poverty, climate change, terrorism, and nuclear **PROLIFERATION**.

A chain of restaurants that is in the U.S. and Australia and Russia and everywhere else is a sign of globalization.

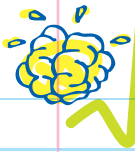
PROLIFERATION
rapid spread or growth

Aside from the UN, other organizations have developed in this era of global interdependence, such as the **WORLD TRADE ORGANIZATION (WTO)**. The WTO was formed in 1995 to increase trade by setting rules for international trade and to address other issues affecting the global economy.



The creation of the **EUROPEAN UNION (EU)** in 1993 established a common currency, the **EURO**, across European member nations. Stemming from the European Community (EC), this economic union was created to strengthen the economies of member nations and encourage trade and travel. Travel between member nations doesn't require a passport, and a person from Spain who wants to move to France can work or study there without a visa.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What were the first modern computers like?
2. How has the Internet revolutionized the modern world?
3. Name some of the downsides of all our rapid improvements in technology.
4. What is the greenhouse effect?
5. What are the consequences of climate change?
6. What document was signed in 2010 by nearly two hundred nations as a promise to reduce carbon emissions?
7. What is globalization?
8. The European Union stems from:
 - A. the EC
 - B. the WTO
 - C. NAFTA
 - D. the UN

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. The first modern computers were huge and weighed around thirty tons.
2. The Internet has revolutionized the way people communicate. There's instant communication and access to news around the world. (The Internet has ushered in online shopping, education, crime, gaming, and more!)
3. Some of the downsides of rapidly improving technology are that cities have grown too fast and products were being created without understanding their effects on the planet. Now there is desertification and deforestation, as well as smog, acid rain, and climate change.
4. The greenhouse effect is the warming of the earth due to carbon dioxide buildup in the atmosphere. The greenhouse effect contributes to global warming and climate change.
5. Climate change has many consequences: rising sea levels, melting polar ice caps, severe droughts and storms, famines, floods, and much more.
6. The Kyoto Protocol was signed in 2010 by nearly two hundred nations (but not the U.S.) as a promise to reduce carbon emissions.
7. Globalization is the process of making something worldwide, or global.
8. A. the EC

★ Chapter 44 ★

GLOBAL SECURITY and MAJOR WORLD EVENTS of TODAY

In the early 2000s, the threat of **TERRORISM** moved high on the list of global concerns.

New Yorkers, and all Americans,

felt the effects of terrorism on **SEPTEMBER 11, 2001 (9/11)**,

when two hijacked planes were flown into the World Trade Center, killing thousands and creating a major worldwide scare. A third hijacked plane crashed into the

Pentagon, and

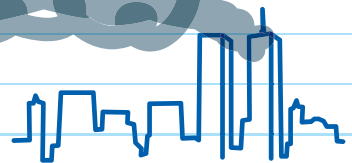
a fourth crashed in Pennsylvania

when passengers brought it

down to stop the terrorists' plans.

TERRORISM

the deliberate use of violence to spread fear and achieve one's political or other goals



Similarly violent attacks have occurred in Britain, Spain, Egypt, Indonesia, and elsewhere.

These attacks were carried out by **AL-QAEDA**, a radical Islamist terrorist group. Al-Qaeda are **EXTREMISTS**. Most Muslims

CONDEMN these attacks.

EXTREMIST

a person who has extreme religious or political viewpoints, especially someone who argues for illegal, violent, or extreme action

CONDEMN

to express disapproval

WAR on TERROR

Al-Qaeda and its leader, **OSAMA BIN LADEN**, were being protected by the **TALIBAN**, the **FUNDAMENTALIST** party in power in Afghanistan. On October 7, 2001, the U.S. and its allies attacked, beginning the **WAR IN AFGHANISTAN**.

The Taliban was thrown from power.

FUNDAMENTALIST

a person or movement that believes in strictly and literally following a set of rules or principles

U.S. forces killed Osama bin Laden on May 2, 2011, in Pakistan.

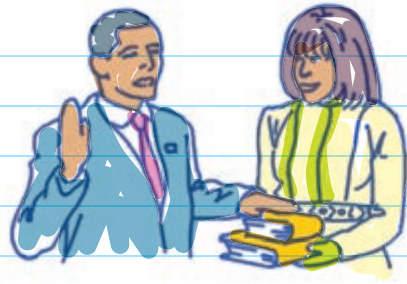
Other threats to global security came under attack during this time—including aggressive military dictators and the spread of nuclear weapons. After 9/11, **PRESIDENT GEORGE W. BUSH** of the U.S. claimed that Iraqi president **SADDAM HUSSEIN** had **WEAPONS OF MASS DESTRUCTION (WMDs)** in Iraq. He also thought Iraq was linked to Al-Qaeda, but many believed he was wrong. Although many allies asked the U.S.



to allow UN weapons inspectors more time to look for WMDs, the U.S. (with the help of Britain) began the **WAR IN IRAQ** in March 2003. Baghdad was occupied and Saddam was ousted. The war in Iraq officially continued for more than seven years, but American troops remained in this unstable region longer.

↑ HE WAS LATER TRIED AND EXECUTED.

In 2008, when **BARACK OBAMA** was elected the forty-fourth president of the U.S. (and the first African American president), he promised to bring troops home. In 2010, President



Obama also agreed with Russia to reduce the number of long-range nuclear weapons in U.S. and Russian arsenals. Fear of nuclear weapons remains. North Korea, for instance, announced in 2005 that it had nuclear weapons and periodically holds tests of them. In 2015, China, France, Russia, the UK, and the U.S. struck a historic deal with Iran to cap (limit) its nuclear program in exchange for eased **SANCTIONS**. There continue to be worries about nuclear proliferation in India, Pakistan, the Middle East, and elsewhere.

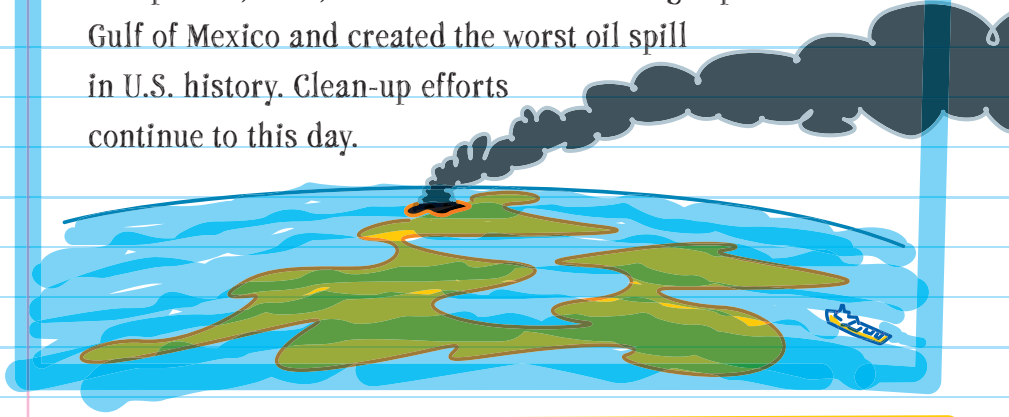
WHAT ELSE?

As the world moves further into the twenty-first century, it will face issues that divide, enrich, and redefine it. While many nations and international groups have made big strides in recent history, like sequencing the human genome, many challenges are still to come. These are some of the more recent major world events that continue to shape history:

SANCTIONS

measures (typically restrictions on trade) taken by nations to force another nation to follow international rules or norms

On April 20, 2010, a British Petroleum oil rig exploded in the Gulf of Mexico and created the worst oil spill in U.S. history. Clean-up efforts continue to this day.



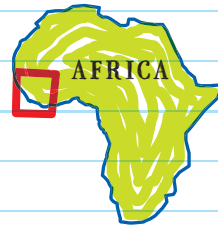
Starting with protests in Tunisia that began on December 18, 2010, the Arab world has gone through a series of major upheavals and revolutions called the **ARAB SPRING**. Antigovernment protests, uprisings, and rebellions spread across the Middle East to Egypt, Yemen, Syria, and Libya.



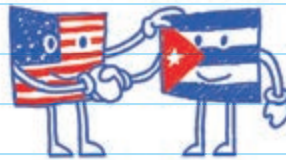
The most powerful earthquake ever recorded hit Japan on March 11, 2011, followed by a massive tsunami that damaged the Fukushima nuclear power plant and endangered many lives.

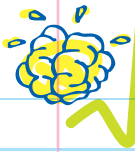


The deadliest outbreak of Ebola virus began in 2014 in West Africa and spread rapidly, creating a global epidemic.



After more than 50 years of no diplomatic relations, the U.S. and Cuba began restoring diplomatic relations in 2015.





CHECK YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What major threat did global policy leaders have to deal with in the early 2000s?
2. What happened on September 11, 2001?
3. What group was responsible for events that occurred on September 11, 2001?
4. Define an extremist. Give an example of an extremist group.
5. What sort of weapons did President Bush claim Saddam Hussein had hidden away in Iraq?
6. What did North Korea claim it had in its country in 2005?
7. What marked the start of the Arab Spring?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS



1. Terrorism was the major issue that global policy leaders dealt with in the early 2000s.
2. On September 11, 2001, a terrorist attack on the U.S. occurred: Two planes were flown intentionally into New York's World Trade Center and a third plane was flown into the Pentagon. The terrorists on a fourth plane failed when passengers crashed the plane in a field in Pennsylvania.
3. These attacks were carried out by Al-Qaeda, a radical Islamist terrorist group.
4. An extremist is a person who has extreme religious or political viewpoints and will argue for illegal, violent, or extreme actions. Al-Qaeda is an extremist group.
5. President Bush claimed Saddam Hussein had hidden weapons of mass destruction (WMDs) in Iraq.
6. North Korea announced it had nuclear weapons in 2005.
7. Protests in Tunisia that began on December 18, 2010, marked the start of the Arab Spring.




INDEX



A

- abolitionism, 315–318
- Abraham (Israelite leader), 68, 69
- absolute power, 38
- aces (pilots), 395
- acid rain, 488, 489
- Act of Supremacy, 228
- Adams, John, 291
- Aeschylus, 116
- Afghanistan, War in, 496
- Africa. *See also individual countries*
 - ancient, 43–62
 - countries of, 481
 - Ebola virus outbreak in West Africa, 500
 - European colonies in, 353–358
 - independence movements in, 478–482
 - Islamic kingdoms in West Africa, 154–156
 - Neolithic agriculture in, 18
 - Portuguese exploration of, 237–238
 - rebellion against colonization in, 382–383
 - Scramble for Africa, 353–358
 - West Africa in 1400s, 238
 - World War II in North Africa, 431
- African National Congress (ANC), 482
- African Union (AU), 480
- Agent Orange, 468
- Age of Chivalry (1200s–1400s), 193
- Age of Exploration (1400–1800), 235–252, 251–261
- Age of Pericles, 118
- Age of Reason, 272
- agrarian, 326
- Agricultural Revolution, 19
- agriculture
 - in ancient China, 90
 - in ancient Egypt, 58–59
 - of Mayans, 160
 - in Neolithic Era, 17–19
- Akbar, 172
- Akhenaten, 52
- Akkadia, 36
- Aldrin, Edwin “Buzz,” 487
- Alexander the Great, 120–121
- Allied Powers (Allies)
 - World War I, 392, 395
 - World War II, 436–438, 462, 478
- Al-Qaeda, 496
- amendments (U.S. Constitution), 294
 - Bill of Rights, 294
 - Nineteenth, 340
 - Thirteenth, 322
- American Civil War (1861–1865), 315–322
- American colonies (1607–1776), 255–261
- American Revolution (1775–1783), 287–294, 298
- the Americas. *See also Central America; Mesoamerica; South America*
 - in Age of Exploration, 235–261
 - colonies in, 255–261
 - Columbian Exchange, 244
 - early civilizations in, 159–166
- Amon-Re, 45
- ancient religions and philosophies, 142–143
- ancient Rome, 126–138
- Anglican Church, 228
- Anthony, Susan B., 339
- anthropologists, 2
- anti-Semitic, 201, 428
- apartheid (in South Africa), 480, 482
- Aphrodite, 108, 109
- appeasement, 430
- Appomattox Court House, Virginia, 322
- aqueducts, 134, 162, 165
- Arab Spring, 499
- archeology, 2
- architecture
 - in ancient Greece, 116–117
 - in ancient Rome, 131–134
 - Gothic, 220
 - of Incas, 165
- Aristarchus, 268
- aristocracy and aristocrats, 91, 115, 187
- Aristotle, 115
- armada, Spanish, 230–231
- armistice (World War I), 399
- arms race, 469–471
- Armstrong, Neil, 487
- art
 - in ancient Africa, 60–61
 - in ancient Egypt, 53
 - in ancient Greece, 116–117
 - in medieval China, 181

- in medieval Europe, 202
 - in Neolithic era, 22
 - in Paleolithic era, 14
 - Renaissance, 218–220
 - rock art, 60–61, 358
 - Articles of Confederation, 293
 - artifacts, 2
 - Aryan, 428
 - Aryans, 76
 - Asia, European exploration of, 248–252.
 - See also individual countries*
 - Aśoka, 85
 - assembly line, 334
 - Assyria, 38–39
 - astronomy, 22, 40, 267–269
 - of Chaldeans, 40
 - in Neolithic era, 22
 - during Scientific Revolution, 267–269
 - Atahualpa, 239, 244
 - atheists, 144
 - Athens, ancient, 118–119
 - atomic bomb, 439–441
 - Augustus, emperor of Rome, 130, 133
 - Auschwitz, 434
 - Australopithecus*, 4, 5
 - Austria, 281–282, 308, 431
 - Austria-Hungary, in World War I, 388–405
 - Axis, in World War II, 431, 436
 - Axum, 62
 - Aztecs, 161–163, 239
- B** 
- Babur, 171–172
 - Babylon and Babylonian empire, 36–38, 40
 - Bacon, Francis, 266–267
 - Bahai, 144
 - balance of trade, 252
 - Balboa, Vasco Núñez, 242
 - Balkans, 389
 - Bantu and Bantu migration, 58, 59–60
 - barter, 20, 252
 - Bastille, 300
 - Battle of Antietam, 320
 - Battle of Britain, 433
 - Battle of the Bulge, 437
 - Battle of Bull Run, 320
 - Battle of Gettysburg, 321
 - Battle of San Juan Hill, 371
 - Battle of Saratoga, 292
 - Battle of Stalingrad, 432
 - Battle of Trafalgar, 304
 - Battle of Waterloo, 304
 - Battle of Yorktown, 293
 - Bay of Pigs invasion, 470
 - Beer Hall Putsch, 427
 - Belgium
 - African colonies of, 353–357
 - in European Economic Community, 454
 - formation of, 309
 - in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
 - World War I, 392
 - World War II, 431, 437
 - Bell, Alexander Graham, 333
 - Berlin airlift, 462
 - Berlin blockade, 462
 - Berlin Conference (1884–1885), 355
 - Berlin Wall, 463
 - Bessemer steel process, 332
 - Big Three, 438
 - Bill of Rights
 - English, 284
 - in United States Constitution, 294
 - bin Laden, Osama, 496
 - Bismarck, Otto von, 310
 - black death, 201–202
 - “Bleeding Kansas,” 317
 - Boer War (1899), 357–359
 - Boleyn, Anne, 228
 - Bolívar, Simón, 312
 - Bolsheviks, 397
 - Bonaparte, Napoleon, 303–304, 308
 - Boston Massacre, 289
 - Boston Tea Party, 290
 - bourgeoisie, 299
 - Boxer Rebellion, 380–382
 - Brahma, 78
 - Brahmans, 76, 77, 79
 - Brazil, 255
 - British Petroleum oil spill, 499
 - bronze, 20
 - Brown, John, 317
 - Brunelleschi, Filippo, 220
 - bubonic plague, 201–202
 - Buddhism, 79–81, 142–144, 189
 - buffer zone, 423
 - Bulgaria, in World War II, 438
 - Bush, George W., 496
 - bushido, 188
 - Byzantine Empire (330 CE–1400s), 146–148

C

- Cabral, Pedro Alvarez, 255
Calvin, John, and Calvinism, 227
Canada
 French settlement in, 258–260
 in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
Cape Colony, 357
capitalism, 252, 274, 480
cars, 334
Carthage, 62, 67
caste system, 76–77
Castro, Fidel, 370, 469–470
Catherine the Great, czarina of Russia, 281
Catholic Reformation, 224–232
Cavaliers, 283
cavalry, 371
census, 164
Central America. *See also specific countries*
 Aztecs in, 162–163
 Columbian Exchange, 244
 Columbus's exploration of, 239
 European colonies in, 255
 first civilizations in, 26
 Mayans in, 160–161
 Neolithic agriculture in, 18
Central Powers (w/WI), 392, 395
Chaldeans, 40
Champlain, Samuel de, 258
Charlemagne, 194, 198
Charles I, King of Scotland, 282
Charles I, King of Spain, 278
Charles II, King of England, 284
Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor, 226
Charles X, King of France, 308
charter, 198
checks and balances, 294
child labor, during Industrial Revolution, 331
China
 ancient, 90–102
 Boxer Rebellion in, 380
 communism in, 464–466
 European trade with, 250–251, 348–350
 First Sino-Japanese War, 363
 golden age of, 177–182
 Iran nuclear program and, 498
 Neolithic agriculture in, 18
 Open Door Policy and, 380–382
 Opium War, 347–349
 Sino-Japanese War, 420
Christianity, 142–144
 in ancient Rome, 135–137
 in Byzantine Empire, 148
 Crusades, 205–210
 in medieval Europe, 194, 200
 Reformation, 224–232
Churchill, Winston, 433, 438, 461
Church of England, 228
circumnavigate, 242
city-states, 35, 107, 118–119
civil disobedience, 476
civilian, 289
civilization, 22
Cleopatra, 51–52, 135
climate change, 488–491
Cold War, 461–471
 arms race during, 469–471
 Cuban missile crisis, 470
 division of Germany, 462–463
collectivization, 471
Colombia, 312
colony(-ies)
 American, 255–261
 European colonies in Africa, 353–358
 rebellions against colonization, 377–383
 in South America, 312
Colosseum, 131
Columbian Exchange, 244
Columbus, Christopher, 238–241
Committee of Public Safety, 302
Common Market, 453
commonwealth, 283
communes, 465
communism
 in Africa, 480
 in China, 464–466
 during Cold War, 461–471
 in Germany, 462–463
 in Russia, 397, 416
 stopping spread of, 452–453
computers, 485–486
concentration camps, in Germany, 429
Concord, Massachusetts, 290
Confederate States of America (Confederacy), 316, 318–319
Confucianism, 99–100, 142–143
Congress of Vienna (1814–1815), 307, 308
Constantine, emperor of Rome, 137
Constitution of the United States, 293–294
consuls, 128

Continental Army, 291
Continental Congresses, 290–291
Cooper, Peter, 329
Copernicus, Nicolaus, 267, 268
Cortés, Hernán, 163, 239
cotton gin, 329, 330
Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON), 453
Council of Trent, 229
Counterreformation, 229
Cranmer, Thomas, 228
Creoles, 312
Crete, 106
crimes against humanity, 441
Cromwell, Oliver, 283
Crusades, 148, 197, 205–210
Cuba
 Bay of Pigs invasion, 470
 Castro's victory in, 469–470
 Columbus's exploration of, 239
 Cuban missile crisis, 470
 diplomatic relations with U.S., 500
 Spanish-American War, 369–372
Cuban missile crisis, 470
cuneiform, 34, 35
Cuzco, 164
Czechoslovakia, in World War II, 431

D

da Gama, Vasco, 238
Dark Ages, 106
Davis, Jefferson, 318
D-Day, 436
decimal system, 86
Declaration of Independence (United States), 291–292
Declaration of Rights and Sentiments (Elizabeth Cady Stanton), 340
Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen, 301
Delhi Sultanate, 170–171
delta, 43
demilitarize, 401
democracy
 in Africa, 480
 American Revolution and, 298
 in ancient Greece, 107
 Aristotle on, 115
 during Cold War, 461–471
 direct, 118

 in France, 301, 304
 in Germany, 462–463
 Justinian Code and, 147
 in South Africa, 482
Deng Xiaoping, 465
Denmark
 Congress of Vienna, 308
 in European Economic Community, 454
 in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
 World War II, 431
Descartes, René, 269
despotism and despots, 304, 412
Dessalines, Jean-Jacques, 311
Dewey, George, 370
dharma, 79
Dias, Bartolomeu, 238
Dingane, king of Zulu people, 383
direct democracy, 118
Directory (France), 303
direct rule, 379
divine right, 21
division of labor, 20, 327
Djoser, 50
domestication (of animals and plants), 19
Dominican Republic, 239, 311
Donatello, 219
Douglass, Frederick, 317
Dutch. *See* the Netherlands

E

early civilizations (3500 BCE–300 CE), 31
 in Americas, 159–166
 ancient Africa, 43–62
 ancient China, 90–102
 ancient Greece, 105–121
 ancient India, 73–86
 ancient religions and philosophies, 142–143
 ancient Rome, 126–138
 Israelites, 68–70
 Mesopotamia, 31–40
 in Neolithic era, 22–23, 26
 Phoenicians, 65–67
 world religions, 144
early 20th century (1914–1945), 387
 Great Depression, 409–412
 post-WWI, 415–423
 World War I, 388–405
 World War II, 427–445
Eastern Front (WWI), 395–397

Eastern Roman Empire, 146. *See also*
Byzantine Empire
East India Company, 346
Ebola virus outbreak, 500
economic issues
 Great Depression, 409–412
 World Trade Organization, 491
economic theory
 capitalism, 252
 in the Enlightenment, 274
 laissez-faire, 274
Edict of Milan, 137
Edict of Nantes, 231
Edict of Worms, 226
Edison, Thomas, 333
Edward VI, king of England, 228–229
Egypt
 ancient, 43–57
 Arab Spring, 499
 terrorist attacks in, 496
Eightfold Path, 80, 81
Einstein, Albert, 272
Elizabeth I, queen of England, 228–230
El Salvador, temple-pyramids in, 151
Emancipation Proclamation, 320
Enabling Act (1933), 428
Enclosure Acts (British), 326
encomienda system, 255–256
England
 African colonies of, 353–358
 American colonies of, 256–258
 American Revolution, 287–294
 Hundred Years' War, 199
 Reformation in, 228–229
 Seven Years' War, 259–260
 Stuart monarchy, 282–284
 trade during Age of Exploration, 249–251
 World War II, 433
Enlightenment, 272–274
entente, 388
environmental issues, 488–490
epic poetry, 34
Erasmus, 277
estates-general, 298–299
ethnocentricity, 382
Etruscans, 127
EU (European Union), 492
Euphrates River, 31
Euripides, 116
euro, 492

Europe. *See also specific countries*
African colonies of, 353–358
Age of Exploration by, 235–261
 under Charlemagne, 194
Council for Mutual Economic
 Assistance, 453
Crusades, 148, 197, 205–210
development of towns in, 197
European Economic Community, 453–454
feudal system in, 195–197
imperialism in, 344–350
Iron Curtain, 461
Marshall Plan, 453
in Middle Ages, 193–202
nation building in, 198–200
plague in, 201–202
post-World War II, 451–455
Reformation in, 224–232
religions in, 232
rise of monarchies in, 277–284
World War I, 388–405
World War II, 427–434, 436–439,
 441–445
European Community (EC), 453, 492
European Economic Community (EEC), 453–454
European Union (EU), 492
evolution. *See* human evolution
excommunicated, 200
executive branch (U.S.), 294
exodus, 68
extraterritoriality, 348
extremist, 496

F

fascism, 420, 422
FDR. *See* Roosevelt, Franklin D.
Federal Emergency Relief Administration
 (FERA), 411
Federal Republic of Germany, 463
feminism, 338
Ferdinand, Archduke and Duchess, 391
Fertile Crescent, 31
feudalism, 188, 195–197, 210
fiefs, 195
Fillmore, Millard, 361
First Battle of the Marne, 393
First Continental Congress, 290
first humans, 3–14
First Sino-Japanese War, 363
Five Pillars of Islam, 151–152

- Five-Year Plan (USSR), 417
- Flemish, 220
- food surplus, 20
- Ford, Henry, 334
- Forum Romanum, 132–133
- Four Modernizations (China), 465
- Four Noble Truths, 80
- Fourteen Points, 398
- France
 - African colonies of, 353–357
 - American colonies of, 248
 - Congress of Vienna, 308
 - Hundred Years' War, 199
 - in Indochina, 467
 - Iran nuclear program and, 498
 - July Revolution, 308
 - monarchies in, 278–280
 - in NATO, 451
 - Reformation in, 231
 - Seven Years' War, 259–260
 - trade during Age of Exploration, 249
 - World War I, 388–405
 - World War II, 430, 431, 436, 437
- Franco-Prussian War, 310
- Franklin, Benjamin, 291
- Franks, 194
- Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, 281
- French and Indian War (1756), 259–260
- French Revolution (1789–1799), 297–304
- French Revolutionary Wars (1792–1802), 302
- fresco, 147
- führer, 428
- Fujiwara clan, 188
- Fukushima nuclear power plant, 500
- Fulton, Robert, 329
- fundamentalist, 496
- G**
 - Gagarin, Yuri, 487
 - Galileo Galilei, 268–269
 - Gandhi, Mohandas, 476
 - Ganges River and Valley, 74, 76
 - Garibaldi, Giuseppe, 310
 - gas chambers, 434
 - Gemmei, empress of Japan, 187
 - geocentric theory, 267
 - George III, King of England, 289
 - German Democratic Republic, 463
 - Germany
 - African colonies of, 353–357
 - Boxer Rebellion, 381–382
 - division of, 439, 454, 462–463
 - Hitler and Nazis in, 412
 - Reformation in, 226–227
 - totalitarian expansionism by, 423
 - unification of, 310
 - World War I, 388–405
 - World War II, 427–439, 441–445
 - Gettysburg Address, 321
 - Ghana, 154, 155, 478
 - glasnost, 471
 - globalization, 491–492
 - global warming, 489, 491
 - Glorious Revolution (England), 284
 - gold, exploring for, 236–244
 - Golden Age (ancient Greece), 108
 - golden age of China, 177–182
 - Gorbachev, Mikhail, 471
 - gospels, 136
 - government. *See also specific forms of government; e.g.:* democracy
 - absolute power, 38
 - of ancient China, 93–94, 98
 - of ancient Egypt, 45, 50–53
 - of ancient Greece, 107, 108, 118
 - of ancient Rome, 127–130, 134–135, 137
 - Enlightenment thought on, 273–274
 - of France, 298–304
 - in medieval China, 177–182.
 - in medieval Europe, 195–200
 - in medieval Japan, 187–189
 - monarchies in Europe, 277–284
 - nation building, 198–200
 - in Neolithic era, 21–22
 - ruling class in Sumeria, 33–34
 - of Russia, 397
 - as social contract, 292
 - of the United States, 293–294
 - Grand Canal (China), 177–178
 - Grant, Ulysses S., 322
 - gravity, 272
 - Great Biological Exchange, 244
 - Great Britain. *See also* England
 - in European Economic Community, 454
 - Industrial Revolution in, 326
 - in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
 - Opium War, 348–349
 - Sepoy Rebellion, 377–379
 - in stopping spread of communism, 452
 - terrorist attacks in, 496

trade with India, 346
War in Iraq, 497
World War I, 388–405
World War II, 430, 431, 433
Great Depression, 409–412
Great Exodus, 68
Great Leap Forward, 464–465
Great Migration, 10–11
Great Mughal (Mongol) Empire, 172, 173
Great Wall of China, 93–95
Great War. *See* World War I
Greece
 ancient, 105–121
 in European Economic Community, 454
 financial support to, 452
greenhouse effect, 489
Guatemala, temple-pyramids in, 151
guerrilla warfare, 260
guilds, 197
guillotine, 302
Gulf of Mexico oil spill, 499
Gupta dynasty (India), 85–86
Gutenberg, Johannes, 217

H

haiku, 190
Haiti, 239, 311
hajj, 152
Hammurabi's Code, 36, 37
Han dynasty, 93, 98–99
Hapsburg Empire, 281
Harappa, India, 74
Harvey, William, 272
Hatshepsut, 50–51
Heian period (Japan), 188–190
heliocentric theory, 267–268
Hellenistic, 121
helots, 119
Henry IV (Henry of Navarre), King of France, 231
Henry the Navigator, prince of Portugal, 237
Henry VIII, King of England, 228
hieratic script, 54
hieroglyphics, 54–55
Himalayas, 73
Hinduism and Hindus, 78–79, 142–144, 476, 477
Hippocrates, 118
Hirohito, emperor of Japan, 440
Hiroshima, Japan, 439–440

Hispaniola, 239, 311
Hitler, Adolf, 412, 427–431, 433–434, 438
Ho Chi Minh, 467
Ho Chi Minh City, 469
Holocaust, 434
Holy Roman Empire, 198
Homer, 107, 117
hominids, 5–7
Honduras, temple-pyramids in, 151
Huguenots, 231, 280
human evolution, 3–14, 24–25
humanism, 215, 217
Hundred Years' War, 199
Hungary, in World War II, 438
Huns, 86
Huron tribe, 260
Hussein, Saddam, 496, 497

I

Ice Age, 10–11
Iceland, 451
Ides of March, 129
Il Duce, 420, 422
Iliad (Homer), 107, 117
Imhotep, 50
immunity, 244
imperialism
 era of (1800–1914), 343
 in Europe, 344–350
 European colonies in Africa, 353–358
 in Japan, 361–366
 rebellions against colonization, 377–383
 Spanish-American War, 369–373
 World War I and, 388–389
inalienable rights, 291
Incas, 161, 164–166, 239, 244
independence movements, 311–312
 in Africa, 478–482
 American Revolution, 287–294
 in Haiti, 311
 in South America, 312
India
 in Age of Exploration, 238, 248
 ancient, 73–86
 Great Britain's trade with, 346
 medieval, 170–174
 nationalism in, 476–477
 rebellion against British, 377–379
Indian Mutiny, 377–379
indigenous, 345

individual rights
 Enlightenment theories on, 273–274
 in United States Bill of Rights, 291
 in United States Declaration of Independence, 294

Indochina, 467

Indonesia, terrorist attacks in, 496

indulgences, 225

Indus River Valley, 26, 73–76

Industrial Revolution, 325–334

inflation, 138

Innocent III, Pope, 209

inquisition, 278

International Military Tribunal for the Far East, 441

Internet, 486, 487

inventions. *See also* technology
 of Industrial Revolution, 329–330, 332–334
 in Neolithic Era, 20
 printing press, 217

Iran nuclear program, 498

Iraq War, 496–497

Ireland, 454

Iron Curtain, 461

Iroquois, 260, 261

irrigation systems, 19

Isabella, queen of Spain, 238

Isis, 45

Islam, 142–144. *See also* Muslims
 rise of, in Middle Ages, 151–156
 teachings of, 152–153
 West African Islamic kingdoms, 154–156

Israel
 ancient, 68–70
 conflict with Palestine, 456–457
 creation of, 455

Italy
 African colonies of, 353–357
 in European Economic Community, 454
 fascism in, 420, 422
 independence of, 310
 in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
 totalitarian expansionism by, 423
 World War I, 388–405
 World War II, 431

Iwo Jima, 479

J

Jackson, Stonewall, 320

Jacobins, 302

Jamaica, Columbus's exploration of, 239

James I, King of Scotland, 282

James II, King of England, 284

Jameson Raid, 358

Jamestown, Virginia, 256

Japan
 Dutch trade with, 251
 2011 earthquake in, 500
 in era of imperialism, 361–366
 expansion by, 420, 421, 423
 medieval, 185–190
 Meiji Restoration, 362
 post-World War II period in, 478, 479
 Russo-Japanese War, 364–366
 Sino-Japanese War, 420
 in World War II, 431, 434–435, 439–445

Jefferson, Thomas, 291

Jerusalem, 68–69, 148, 205–210

Jesuits, 229

Jesus, 136

Jews, 144
 blame for bubonic plague put on, 201
 in German concentration camps, 429
 Holocaust, 434
 Israel, 455–457
 Judaism, 69–70, 142–144

Joan of Arc, 200

Judaism, 69–70, 142–144

judicial branch (U.S.), 294

Julius Caesar, 129, 135

July Revolution, 308

Justinian Code, 147

K

kaiser, 310

Kalidasa, 85

Kamakura shogunate, 189, 190

karma, 78–79

Kemet, 43, 45

Kennedy, John F., 470

Kenya, 478

Kepler, Johannes, 268

Khafra, 50

Khrushchev, Nikita, 463

Khufu, 50

King, Martin Luther, Jr., 476

King Tut, 51

Kitty Hawk, North Carolina, 333

Kongo, 238

Korean War, 466–467
Kublai Khan, 182
Kush (Nubia), 50, 59, 62
Kyoto Protocol, 490

L

Lafayette, Marquis de, 292
laissez-faire, 274
Laozi (Lao-Tzu), 101
League of Combat, 420
Lebensraum, 428
Lee, Robert E., 321, 322
Legislative Assembly (France), 301
legislative branch (U.S.), 294
Lenin, Vladimir, 397, 416
Leonardo da Vinci, 218
Leopold II, King of Belgium, 354
Lepidus, 129
Lexington, Massachusetts, 290
Libya, 478, 499
limited monarchy, 282
Lincoln, Abraham, 317, 320, 321
Lin Zexu, 348
Liu Bang, 93
Livingstone, David, 354
Locke, John, 273
locomotive, 329
Louis-Philippe, King of France, 308
Louis XIII, King of France, 278
Louis XIV, King of France (Sun King), 279–280
Louis XVI, King of France, 298, 299
Lowell, Massachusetts, 328
Lower Egypt, 43, 44
Loyalists, 290
Loyola, Ignatius, 229
Lucy, 5
Luftwaffe, 433
Luther, Martin, 226–227
Luxembourg
 in European Economic Community, 454
 in North Atlantic Treaty Organization,
 451
Lyceum, 115

M

Macao, China, 250
MacArthur, Douglas, 466
Macedonia, 120, 121
Magellan, Ferdinand, 242
Magna Carta, 198

Maine, USS, 370
maize, 170
Mali, 154–156
Mandate of Heaven, 98
Mandela, Nelson, 482
Manifest Destiny, 346
manorialism, 197
Mansa Musa, 155
Mao Zedong, 464–465
March to the Sea, 322
Marcus Antonius (Mark Antony), 129, 135
Maria Theresa, queen of Hapsburg Empire,
281–282
Marie Antoinette, 299
Marshall Plan, 453
Mars rover, 488
martyrs, 137
Mary, queen of England, 229
Mary II, queen of England, 284
mass production, 329
mathematics
 in ancient India, 86
 during Scientific Revolution, 269, 272
 effect of Crusades on, 210
 in Neolithic Era, 22
Maurya Empire (India), 84–85
Mayans, 160–161
Mazarin, Cardinal, 279
McKinley, William, 370
Meade, George C., 321
Mecca, 152
Medici family, 215, 278
medicine
 during Scientific Revolution, 272
 effect of Crusades on, 210
Medieval Age, 145. *See also* Middle Ages
Meiji Restoration (1868–1912), 362
Mein Kampf (My Struggle) (Adolf Hitler), 428
Memphis, Egypt, 48
Menes, King of Egypt, 48
Menkaura, 50
mercantilism, 252
Meroe, Island of, 59
Mesoamerica
 Aztecs in, 162–163
 Mayans in, 160–161
Mesopotamia (4000 BCE–612 BCE), 31–40
 Attakadia, 36
 Assyria, 38–39
 Babylon, 36–38, 40

Chaldeans, 40
 first civilizations in, 26
 Sumeria, 33–35
 Meuse–Argonne Offensive, 399
 Mexico
 Aztecs in, 162–163
 Zimmerman Telegram, 396
 Michelangelo, 219
 Middle Ages (400 CE–1500 CE), 145
 Byzantine Empire, 146–148
 early civilization in Americas, 159–166
 in Europe, 193–202
 European Crusades in Muslim world, 205–210
 golden age of China, 177–182
 medieval India, 170–174
 medieval Japan, 185–190
 rise of Islam in, 151–156
 Middle East. *See also individual countries*
 Arab Spring, 499
 Palestine–Israel conflict, 456–457
 Middle Kingdom (ancient Egypt), 50
 militarism, World War I and, 388–389
 Ming dynasty, 250
 Minoans, 106
 missionaries, 346, 381
 Mohenjo–Daro, India, 74
 monarchies
 Aristotle on, 115
 in Europe, 277–284
 in Neolithic era, 21
 monastic, 216
 Mongols, 170, 182
 monotheism, 52
 Montezuma, 163, 239
 moon landing, 487
 Morse, Samuel F. B., 329
 Morse Code, 329
 Moses, 68
 Mughal Empire, 172
 mummies, 51
 Muslims, 144
 Crusades, 205–210
 partitioning of India, 476, 477
 Mussolini, Benito (Il Duce), 420, 422
 Mycenaean, 106
 My Lai Massacre, 469

N ~~~~~
 Nagasaki, Japan, 439–440

Nanjing Massacre, 420
 Napoleon I, emperor of France, 303–304, 308
 Napoleonic Code, 304
 Nara period (Japan), 187, 190
 NASA (National Aeronautics and Space Administration), 487
 Natal, 357
 National Assembly (France), 300
 National Convention (France), 302
 nationalism
 across Europe (1500–1865), 307–310
 defined, 308
 in India, 476–477
 World War I and, 388–389
 nation building, in medieval Europe, 198–200
 Native Americans
 advancements of, 261
 in the American Revolution, 291
 and British settlements, 256
 and colonial settlements, 255–260
 encomienda system, 255–256
 NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization), 451–452
 Nazis, 412, 427–434, 441
 Ndongo, 238
 Neanderthals, 7
 Nefertiti, 52
 Neolithic era, 17–26
 the Netherlands (Dutch)
 African colonies of, 357–358
 American colonies of, 257
 in European Economic Community, 454
 in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
 trade during Age of Exploration, 249–251
 World War II, 431
 New Deal, 411–412
 New Economic Policy (NEP), 416
 New Kingdom (ancient Egypt), 50–53
 Newton, Isaac, 272
 Nicholas II, czar of Russia, 396
 Nile River, 43, 44
 Nineteenth Amendment (U.S. Constitution), 340
 95 Theses, 226
 Nineveh, 39
 Nirvana, 80
 nobles (lords), 77, 195
 Nobles' Crusade, 208
 Nok people, 62
 nomads, 9

nonaggression pact, 431
Norman Conquest, 198
North Africa, in World War II, 431
North Korea
 Korean War, 466
 nuclear weapons of, 498
Norway
 Congress of Vienna, 308
 in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
 World War II, 431
Nubia, 59
nuclear weapons, 441
 arms race, 469–471
 atomic bomb, 439–441
 Russia–United States weapons
 agreement, 498
Nuremberg Laws (1935), 429
Nuremberg Trials, 441

O

Obama, Barack, 498
Octavian, 129, 130
Odyssey (Homer), 117
Oedipus Rex (Sophocles), 116
oil spill, 499
Okinawa, 479
Old Kingdom (ancient Egypt), 48
Olive Branch Petition, 291
Olympic Games, 112–113
Open Door Policy, 380–382
Operation Rolling Thunder, 468
Opium War, 347–349
oracles, 109
oral tradition
 in ancient Africa, 62
 in Neolithic era, 23
Orange Free State, 357
Organization of African Unity (OAU), 480
Osiris, 45
Otis, James, 288

P

Pakistan, 476
Paleolithic era, 8–14
Palestine, 455–457
Pan-Africanism, 480
pandemic, 399
papacy, 200
papyrus, 54–55
Paris Commune, 301

Parliament, English, 198, 283
Parthenon, 117
partitioning
 in Africa, 355–357
 of Germany, 439, 454, 462–463
 of India, 476, 477
patriarchy, 38
patricians, 128
Patriots, 290
patrons of the arts, 215
Pearl Harbor (December 7, 1941), 434–435
Peloponnesian War, 120
peninsulares, 312
perestroika, 471
Pérez, José Martí, 369–370
Pericles, 117
Perry, Matthew, 361
Persians, 69
Peter I, czar of Russia (Peter the Great), 281
Petraarch (Francesco Petrarca), 216
petroglyphs, 14
pharaohs, 45, 50–53
Philip, king of Macedonia, 120
Philip II, king of Spain, 230, 278
Philippines, 370–372
philosophy(-ies)
 ancient, 142–143
 in ancient China, 99–101
 in ancient Greece, 114–115
 of Descartes, 269
Phoenicians, 65–67
piety, 98
Pilgrims, 257
Pitt, William the Elder, 260
Pizarro, Francisco, 166, 239, 244
Place de la Concorde, 302
plagues, 138
 black death, 201–202
Plato, 114
plebeians, 128
Plymouth colony, 257
Poland, 309, 431, 438
polis, 107
Politburo (USSR), 416
polytheism, 33
Portugal
 African colonies of, 353–357
 Congress of Vienna, 308
 in European Economic Community, 454
 exploration by, 237–238

in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
South American colonies of, 312
trade during Age of Exploration, 239, 250
Poseidon, 108, 109
post-World War II (1945–present), 449
changes in Europe and Middle East,
450–457
Cold War, 461–471
global security and major world events,
495–500
modern global transformations, 485–492
nationalist and independence
movements, 475–482
Potsdam Conference, 438–439
prehistory, 1–2, 14, 17–26
Princip, Gavrilo, 391
proliferation (nuclear), 491
propaganda, 415
prophets, Jewish, 70
protectorate, 372
Protectorate period (1653–1659), 283
Protestant Reformation, 224–232
Prussia, 308
Ptolemy, 267
Public Works Administration (PWA), 411
Puritans, 282
pyramids, 48–50, 161

Q

Qin (ancient China), 93
Qing dynasty, 250–251, 349
Quetzalcóatl, 239
quipu, 164
Quran, 151

R

RAF (Royal Air Force), 433
rain forests, 489
Ramadan, 152
Ramses the Great, 53
Rape of Nanjing, 420
ratify, 294
Rebels, 318
Redcoats, 289
Reformation, 224–232
regent, 50
Reichstag, 428
Reign of Terror (1793–1794), 302
reincarnation, 78
relics, 225


religion(s). *See also specific religions*
ancient, 142–143
in ancient Egypt, 46–47
in ancient Greece, 108–111
in ancient India, 78–81
in ancient Rome, 135–137
of Aztecs, 162–163
Crusades, 148, 205–210
in early and medieval Japan, 189
in Europe, 232
in France under Louis XII and Louis XIV,
278–280
Judaism, 69–70
of Mayans, 161
in Neolithic era, 21
in Sumeria, 33–34
world, 144
Renaissance, 213–220
art of, 218–220
humanism of, 217
literature of, 216–217
reparations, 400
republic(s), 127, 214
Boer, 357–358
England as, 283
France as, 302
Roman, 127–128, 130
Restoration, English, 284
Revere, Paul, 290
Rhineland and Rhine River, 401, 423
Rhodes, Cecil, 357–358
Richard I, King of England (Richard
the Lionheart), 209
Richelieu, Armand Jean du Plessis de,
278–279
Richthofen, Manfred von (Red Baron), 394
Rickenbacker, Eddie, 394
Robespierre, Maximilien, 302
rock art, 60–61, 358
Roman Catholic Church
Catholic Reformation, 224–232
Ptolemy's theory accepted by, 267–269
in Spanish colonies, 256
Roman Empire, 127, 133
Romania, in World War II, 438
Roman Republic, 127
Rome. *See* ancient Rome
Roosevelt, Franklin D. (FDR)
Great Depression and, 410–412
New Deal and, 411–412

World War II, 434, 435, 438
Roosevelt, Theodore, 371
Rough Riders, 371
roundheads, 282–283
Rousseau, Jean-Jacques, 273–274
Royalists, 283
Rump Parliament, 283
Russia. *See also* Union of Soviet Socialist Republics
Congress of Vienna, 308
czars of, 281
Iran nuclear program and, 498
nuclear weapons agreement with U.S., 498
Russo-Japanese War, 364–366
totalitarianism in, 416–419
World War I, 388–405
World War II, 431–432, 438
Russian Revolution, 396–397
Russo-Japanese War (1904–1905), 364–366

S

Saint-Domingue, 311
Saladin, 209
Salt March, 476
samurai, 188
sanctions, 498
San Martín, José de, 312
Sanskrit, 76
Sargon, I, king of Akkadia, 36
Sargon II, king of Assyria, 38
satellite nations, 453
satellites, artificial, 487
schism, 153
Schlieffen Plan, 391
scientific method, 266–267
Scientific Revolution (1500–1700), 266–272
Scott, Dred, 318
Scramble for Africa (1870s–1941), 353–358
scribes, 34
Second Battle of the Marne, 399
Second Continental Congress, 291
Second Industrial Revolution, 332–333
secularism, 215
sedentary communities, Neolithic era, 19–20
Seljuk Turks, 205
Semitic language, 36
Sepoy Rebellion, 377–379
September 11, 2001 (9/11), 495
serfs, 197
Seven Years' War, 259–260
Shah Jahan, 172–173
Shaka Zulu, 382
Shakespeare, William, 217
Shang dynasty, 91–92
Sharpeville Massacre, 482
Sherman, William Tecumseh, 322
Shiites, 153
Shinto, 189
Shiva, 78
shogun, 188
Siddhartha Gautama, 79–80
Sikhs, 144
Silk Road, 96–97
Sino-Japanese War (1937), 420
Sistine Chapel, 219
slash-and-burn farming, 170
Slater, Samuel, 328
slavery
American Civil War and, 314–318
in Neolithic era, 22
Smith, Adam, 274
Smith, John, 256
smuggling, in American colonies, 288
social class
aristocracy, 91, 115, 187
caste system, 76–77
in Neolithic era, 22
ruling class in Sumeria, 33–34
social contract, 274, 292
The Social Contract (Jean-Jacques Rousseau), 274
socialism, 417
social structure
in ancient China, 98–99
of ancient India, 76–77
in medieval Japan, 188
Society of Righteous and Harmonious Fists, 380
Socrates and the Socratic method, 114
Solon, 108
Song dynasty, 180–182
Songhai, 156
sonnets, 216
Sophocles, 116
South Africa
apartheid in, 480, 482
Zulu rebellion in, 382–383
South America. *See also individual countries*
Columbus's exploration of, 239

European colonies in, 255
Incas in, 164–166
independence movements, 312
South Korea, 466
Soviet Union. *See* Union of Soviet Socialist Republics
Space Race, 487
Spain
African colonies of, 353–357
American colonies of, 255–256
Congress of Vienna, 308
in European Economic Community, 454
exploration by, 238–244
monarchs of, 278
South American colonies of, 312
Spanish–American War, 369–373
terrorist attacks in, 496
trade during Age of Exploration, 249
Spanish–American War, 369–373
Spanish Armada, 230–231
Spanish flu, 399
Sparta, ancient, 118–119
spheres of influence, 349, 380
spinning jenny, 330
Sputnik, 487
Stalin, Joseph, 416–417, 438
Stamp Act (1765), 288–289
Stanley, Henry Morton, 354
Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 339–340
staple crops, 17
steam engines, 329
stipulation, 251
Stuart monarchy (England), 282–284
subjugation, 452
submarine warfare, 395–396
Sudetenland, 431
suffrage (voting rights), 301
in France, 301
in the United States, 339–340
for women, 339–340
suffragists, 339
Sugar Act (1753), 288
Sui dynasty, 177–178
sultans, 170, 171
Sumeria, 33–35
Sundiata (Lion King), 155
Sunnis, 153
sustainable development, 490
Sweden, Congress of Vienna and, 308
Syria, Arab Spring and, 499

T 
taille, 299
Taiping Rebellion, 349–350
Taiwan, 363
Taj Mahal, 173
Taliban, 496
Tamerlane (Timur the Lame), 170
Tang dynasty, 179
Taoism, 101, 142–143
taxation
leading to American Revolution, 288–290
in medieval Japan, 187
without representation, 289
Tea Act (1773), 289
technology. *See also* inventions
effect of Crusades on, 210
of Industrial Revolution, 325, 329–330, 332–334
modern global transformation and, 485–488
Ten Commandments, 69–70
Tennis Court Oath, 300
Tenochtitlán, 162
terrorism, 495–498
theocracy, 34
therianthropes, 60
Third Crusade, 209
Third Reich (Germany), 429–430
Thirteenth Amendment (U.S. Constitution), 322
38th Parallel, 466
Three Pillars (Catholic Reformation), 229
Thutmose III, king of Egypt, 50–51
Tiananmen Square, 466
Tigris River, 31
Timbuktu, 155
Timur the Lame, 170
Tōjō, Hideki, 420, 441
Tokugawa period (Japan), 189–190
tools, in Paleolithic era, 8–9
Torah, 68
totalitarianism, 415
after World War I, 415
fascism in Italy, 420, 422
Japanese expansion, 420, 421
post–World War I, 415–423
in Russia, 416–419
totalitarian expansionism, 423
total war, 321, 322
Toussaint–Louverture, François–Dominique, 311

Townshend Acts, 289

trade

in Age of Exploration, 236–238, 248–252
with American colonies, 259, 260

in ancient Egypt, 59, 62

in ancient India, 75

balance of, 252

barter, 20, 252

effect of Crusades on, 210

between European countries and China,
348–350

by Ghana, 155

between Great Britain and India, 346

by Mali, 155

in medieval Japan, 189

by Phoenicians, 65, 67

Silk Road, 96–97

transatlantic telegraph, 332

Transvaal, 357

treason, 283

Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, 397

Treaty of Nanjing, 348

Treaty of Paris (1763), 260

Treaty of Paris (1783), 293

Treaty of Paris (1898), 372–373

Treaty of Portsmouth, 364

Treaty of Versailles, 400–401

trench warfare, 393–394

tribunal, 441

Triple Alliance (W/WI), 388, 390

Triple Entente (W/WI), 388, 390

triumvirates, in ancient Rome, 129

Trojan War, 107

Trotsky, Leon, 416

Truman, Harry S., 438, 452

Truman Doctrine, 452

Tubman, Harriet, 318

Tudor dynasty, 282

Tunisia, protests in, 499

Tutankhamen, King of Egypt (King Tut), 51

Tutu, Desmond, 482

tyrant, 127

U

ultimatum, 391

Underground Railroad, 318

The Union (United States), 316

Union of South Africa, 358

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR,
Soviet Union), 416–419

Cold War, 462–463, 470–471

Council for Mutual Economic Assistance,
453

Cuban missile crisis, 470

Korean War, 466–467

post-World War II alliances, 451–453

Space Race, 487

United Kingdom. *See* Great Britain;
individual countries

United Nations, 455

United Nations Conference on Climate
Change (COP21, CMP11), 490–491

United States

American Civil War, 315–322

American Revolution, 287–294

Bay of Pigs invasion, 470

Cold War, 462, 466–471

Constitution of, 293–294

Cuban missile crisis, 470

diplomatic relations with Cuba, 500

Great Depression in, 409–412

Industrial Revolution in, 328

Iran nuclear program and, 498

Korean War, 466–467

Kyoto Protocol and, 490

neutrality in W/WI, 392

in North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 451
nuclear weapons agreement with Russia,
498

occupation of Japan, 478, 479

post-World War II alliances, 451–453

September 11, 2001 attacks, 495

Space Race, 487

Spanish-American War, 369–373

in stopping spread of communism, 452

United Nations Conference on Climate
Change and, 490–491

Vietnam War, 467–469

War in Afghanistan, 496

War in Iraq, 496–497

War on Terror, 496–498

in World War I, 398–399

in World War II, 435

untouchables, 77

Upanishads, 78

Upper Egypt, 43, 44

Urban II, Pope, 205–207

USSR. *See* Union of Soviet Socialist Republics

usury, 215

ʿUthmān ibn ʿAffān, 153

V

van Eyck, Jan, 220
vassals, 195
V-E Day, 438
Venezuela, 312
Versailles, 279, 280
Vespucci, Amerigo, 242
viceroys, 256
Victor Emmanuel II, king of Italy, 310
Victoria, queen of England, 348
Viet Cong, 467
Vietnam War, 467-469
Vikings, 194
villages, in Neolithic era, 20-21
Vishnu, 78
V-J Day, 440
voting rights. *See* suffrage

W

War in Afghanistan, 496
War in Iraq, 496-497
War of the Austrian Succession (1740-1748), 281
War on Terror, 496-498
warring states (ancient China), 93
Warsaw Pact, 451-452
Wars of Religion (1562-1598), 231
Washington, George, 291
The Wealth of Nations (Adam Smith), 274
weapons of mass destruction (WMDs), 496, 497
West Africa
 Ebola virus outbreak, 500
 in 1400s, 238
 Islamic kingdoms in, 154-156
Western Front (W/WI), 394
West Germany, 454
West Indies, 239
Whitney, Eli, 329
Wilhelm, king of Prussia (William I), 310
Wilhelm II, emperor of Germany, 382
William III, king of England (William of Orange), 284
William the Conqueror, 198
Wilson, Woodrow, 392, 398
Wollstonecraft, Mary, 338-339
women's movement, 338-340
World Trade Organization (WTO), 491
World War I (W/WI; Great War), 388-405, 410

 alliances in, 392
 causes of, 388-391
 Eastern Front, 395-397
 end of, 400-401
 Fourteen Points, 398
 trench warfare, 393-394
 Western Front, 394
World War II (W/WII), 427-445
 aftermath of, 441
 atomic bomb dropped, 439-441
 Axis in, 431
 Battle of Britain, 433
 end of war in Europe, 436-438
 Hitler's rise to power, 427-428
 Holocaust, 434
 Nuremberg Trials, 441
 Pearl Harbor, 434-435
 Third Reich in Germany, 429-430
 Yalta and Potsdam conferences, 438-439
WPA (Works Progress Administration), 411
Wright, Orville and Wilbur, 333
writing
 in ancient China, 92
 in ancient Egypt, 54-55
 in ancient India, 76
 in Neolithic era, 23
 of Phoenicians, 67
 in Sumeria, 34
Wudi, 93
W/WI. *See* World War I
W/WII. *See* World War II

Y

Yalta Conference, 438
Yankees, 318
yellow journalism, 370
Yemen, Arab Spring and, 499
yin and yang, 101
Yoritomo, Minamoto, 188-189
Yucatán Peninsula, 160

Z

Zen Buddhism, 189
zero, 86
Zeus, 108, 109
Zhou dynasty, 92-93
ziggrats, 33
Zimbabwe, 478
Zimmerman Telegram, 396
Zulu people, 382-383